MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 77

The Deeds of the Saxons

Widukind of Corvey
Hrotsvitha of Gandersheim

Res Gestae Saxonicae
Gesta Ottonis
Primordia Coenobii Gandeshemensis

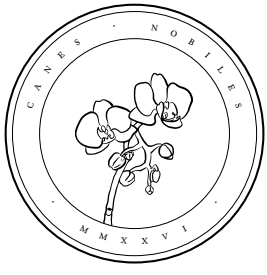
The Deeds of the Saxons

Widukind's Chronicle, Hrotsvitha's Deeds of Otto,
and the Founding of Gandersheim

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

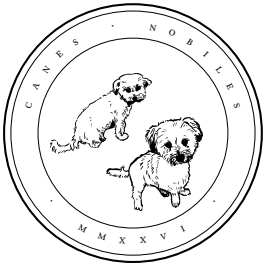


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 77 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Karl Andreas Kehr's text of Widukind (Hanover and Leipzig, 1904) and Karl Strecker's of Hrotsvitha (Leipzig, 1906)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

WIDUKIND OF CORVEY · RES GESTAE SAXONICAE

Preface to Mathilda 11
The Chapters of Book One 12
I.1–7 · Origins and the Thuringians 17
I.8–9 · Britain and the Fall of Thuringia 23
I.10–12 · Hathagat 35
I.13–17 · Iring, the Saxon Law, and Henry 42
I.18–22 · The Hungarians and Bishop Hatto 48
I.23–27 · Conrad's Death and Henry's Election 56
I.28–32 · Lotharingia and the Nine Years' Peace 62
I.33–35 · The Hand of Saint Denis and the Fortified Towns 68
I.36–38 · Lenzen and Riade 75
I.39–41 · Henry's Death 85
Preface to Book Two 89

The Chapters of Book Two 90
II.1–3 · The Coronation at Aachen 94
II.4–10 · The First Civil Wars 102
II.11–14 · Thankmar 108
II.15–17 · Birten 114
II.18–24 · Henry's Surrender and the Slav Wars 120
II.25–31 · Andernach and the Easter Plot 126
II.32–37 · Portents and the Brothers 134
II.38–41 · Hadamar and Edith's Death 140
Preface to Book Three 143
The Chapters of Book Three 144
III.1–10 · France, Italy, and Adelheid 151
III.11–18 · Liudolf's Revolt 158
III.19–32 · The War in Bavaria 165
III.33–44 · Regensburg and the Lechfeld 173
III.45–50 · The Victory on the Lech 182
III.51–54 · The Raxa 188
III.55–64 · Stoinef's Head and the Emperor's Triumphs 194
III.65–69 · Poppa's Ordeal and Wichmann's Death 200
III.70–74 · The Greek Marriage and Mathilda's Death 207
III.75–76 · Otto's Death 214

HROTSVITHA OF GANDERSHEIM · GESTA OTTONIS

Hrotsvitha's Letter to Gerberga 221
Preface to Otto the Great 224
Preface to Otto II 227
1–120 · Henry and His Sons; Edith 230
121–245 · Otto's Reign and the First Revolt 238
246–377 · Andernach and Henry's Penance 247
378–506 · Edith's Death; Adelheid Imprisoned 256
507–627 · Adelheid's Escape 265
628–747 · The Marriage and Liudolf's Grief 273
748–1517 · The Fragments and the Close 281

HROTSVITHA OF GANDERSHEIM
PRIMORDIA COENOBII GANDESHEMENSIS

Prologue 291
1–124 · Liudolf, Oda, and the Promise 292
125–247 · Relics from Rome and the Lights in the Wood 300
248–374 · The Dove and the Stone 309
375–500 · The Dedication and Gerberga's Rule 318
501–594 · The Deaths of Otto and Oda 327

WIDUKIND OF CORVEY

Res Gestae Saxonicae

The Deeds of the Saxons

Ad dominam Mathildam imperatoris filiam libri primi incipit prephatio

PREFACE TO MATHILDA

Widukind, monk of Corvey, dedicates his work to Mathilda, daughter of the emperor, so that reading of her father's and grandfather's deeds she may become better and more glorious. He writes briefly and in parts, and adds a little on the origin of the Saxons, among whom Henry first reigned.

Flore virginali cum maiestate imperiali ac sapientia
with-the-flower virginal with majesty imperial and wisdom
singulari fulgenti dominae Mahthildi ultimus servulorum
singular shining to-the-lady Mathilda the-last of-the-little-servants
Christi martyrum Stephani atque Viti, Corbeius Widukindus,
of-Christ of-the-martyrs Stephen and Vitus of-Corvey Widukind
totius servitutis devotissimum famulatum veramque in salvatore
of-all servitude most-devoted service and-true in the-savior
salutem. Quamvis te paternae potentiae gloria singularis
salvation although you paternal of-power the-glory singular
magnificet ac clarissima decoret sapientia, nostra tamen
magnifies and most-brilliant adorns wisdom our nevertheless
humilitas presumit de proxima sceptris semper clementia, quia
humility presumes from nearest to-the-scepters always clemency that
nostra devotio a tua pietate suscipiatur, etiam si non mereatur.
our devotion by your piety may-be-received even if not it-should-deserve
Nam cum nostro labore patris potentissimi avique tui
for when by-our labor of-the-father most-mighty and-of-grandfather your
gloriosissimi res gestas memoriae traditas legeris,
most-glorious the-things done to-memory handed-down you-shall-have-read
habes, unde ex optima et gloriosissima melior gloriosiorque
you-have whence from best and most-glorious better and-more-glorious

efficiaris. Nec tamen omnia eorum gesta nos posse
you-may-be-made nor nevertheless all their deeds we to-be-able
comprehendere fatemur, sed strictim et per partes scribimus,
to-comprehend we-confess but briefly and by parts we-write
ut sermo sit legentibus planus, non fastidiosus. Sed et
that the-speech may-be for-the-readers plain not wearisome but also
de origine statuque gentis, in qua ipse rerum dominus
about the-origin and-state of-the-people in which himself of-things the-lord
Heinricus primus regnavit, pauca scribere curavi, ut
Henry first reigned a-few-things to-write I-have-taken-care that
ea legendo animum oblectes, curas releves, pulchro
them by-reading the-mind you-may-delight the-cares you-may-relieve with-beautiful
otio vaces. Legat igitur tua claritas istum libellum ea
leisure you-may-be-free let-read therefore your brightness this little-book with-that
pietate nostri memor, qua est conscriptus devotione. Vale.
piety of-us mindful with-which it-was written with-devotion farewell

Incipiunt capitula

THE CHAPTERS OF BOOK ONE

Kehr's list of the forty-one chapters of Book One, from the origin of the Saxons and their war with the Thuringians to King Henry's victories, death, and burial.

I. Quia alios libellos scripserit preter istum.
I that other little-books he-has-written besides this
II. De origine gentis Saxonice variam opinionem multorum
II about the-origin of-the-people Saxon the-varied opinion of-many
narrat.
he-relates

III. Quod navibus advecti sint in locum qui dicitur
III that in-ships carried they-were into a-place which is-called
Hathalaon.
Hadeln
IIII. Quod graviter adventum eorum Thuringi ferant et
IIII that heavily the-arrival their the-Thuringians bear and
cum eis pugnent.
with them fight
V. Quomodo adolescens terram auro comparavit.
V how a-youth land with-gold bought
VI. Thuringi accusant Saxones de rupto foedere; Saxones
VI the-Thuringians accuse the-Saxons of broken treaty the-Saxons
autem victores existunt.
however victors stand-out
VII. Unde Saxones dicantur.
VII whence the-Saxons are-named
VIII. Nomen Saxonum celebrę fit, et a Brettis in
VIII the-name of-the-Saxons famous becomes and by the-Britons into
auxilium sumuntur.
help they-are-taken
VIIII. Thiadricus in regem eligitur et Saxones vocat in
VIIII Theuderic as king is-chosen and the-Saxons calls into
auxilium contra Hyrminfridum.
help against Irminfrid
X. Iring Thiadricum contra Saxones instigat.
X Iring Theuderic against the-Saxons incites
XI. Hathagath Saxones ad bellandum provocat.
XI Hathagat the-Saxons to fighting rouses
XII. Saxones capta urbe deponunt aquilam.
XII the-Saxons with-taken city set-down the-eagle

XIII. Thiadricus Saxonibus terram tradit, et Hirminfridus
XIII Theuderic to-the-Saxons land hands-over and Irminfrid
occiditur.
is-killed
XIIII. Qualiter Saxones agros dividunt, et quia triformi
XIIII how the-Saxons the-fields divide and that in-threefold
genere ac lege vivunt.
kind and law they-live
XV. Qualiter eos Magnus Carolus Christianos fecit.
XV how them the-Great Charles Christians made
XVI. De Luthuvico et Brunone et Oddone et Conrado
XVI about Louis and Bruno and Otto and Conrad
rege.
the-king
XVII. De rege Heinrico.
XVII about king Henry
XVIII. De Ungariis, qui et Avares dicuntur.
XVIII about the-Hungarians who also Avars are-called
XVIIII. Ungarii a Magno Carolo clausi, sed ab Arnulfo
XVIIII the-Hungarians by the-Great Charles shut-in but by Arnulf
dimissi.
let-loose
XX. Qualiter Ungarii Saxoniam vastabant.
XX how the-Hungarians Saxony laid-waste
XXI. Heinricus fit dux Saxoniae.
XXI Henry becomes duke of-Saxony
XXII. De Heinrico et ępiscopo Hathone et comite
XXII about Henry and the-bishop Hatto and the-count
Adelberhto.
Adalbert
XXIII. De Conrado et eius fratre Evurhardo.
XXIII about Conrad and his brother Eberhard

XXIIII. Conradus obsedit Heinricum.

XXIIII Conrad besieged Henry

XXV. Conradi regis sermo ante mortem.

XXV of-Conrad of-the-king the-speech before death

XXVI. Evurhardus regem constituit Heinricum.

XXVI Eberhard as-king sets-up Henry

XXVII. Heinricus autem rex factus confusum in brevi

XXVII Henry however king made the-confused in short-time

colligit regnum.

gathers realm

XXVIII. De Luthuvico et filiis eius.

XXVIII about Louis and sons his

XXVIIII. De Carolo et Odone et posteris eorum.

XXVIIII about Charles and Odo and posterity their

XXX. Qualiter Heinricus rex regnum Lothariorum obtinuit.

XXX how Henry the-king the-realm of-the-Lotharingians obtained

XXXI. De filiis regis Heinrici et regina Mathilda et

XXXI about the-sons of-king Henry and queen Mathilda and

genealogia eius.

genealogy her

XXXII. De Ungariis et de captivo eorum, et quia pax

XXXII about the-Hungarians and about captive their and that peace

per eum novem annis firmata sit.

through him for-nine years made-firm was

XXXIII. De manu Dyonisii martyris.

XXXIII about the-hand of-Denis the-martyr

XXXIIII. De sancto martire Vito.

XXXIIII about the-holy martyr Vitus

XXXV. Qualiter rex Heinricus novem annos pacis habuerit.

XXXV how king Henry nine years of-peace had

XXXVI. De Redariis quomodo victi sunt.

XXXVI about the-Redarii how conquered they-were

XXXVII. De nuptiis filii regis.

XXXVII about the-wedding of-the-son of-the-king

XXXVIII. Contio regis, et quomodo Ungarios publico bello vicit.

XXXVIII the-assembly of-the-king and how the-Hungarians in-public war he-conquered

XXXVIIII. Quomodo victor reversus est, et de moribus eius.

XXXVIIII how victor returned has and about the-manners his

XL. Quomodo Danos vicit.

XL how the-Danes he-conquered

XLI. Quomodo morbo gravatur et moritur et ubi sepelitur.

XLI how by-sickness he-is-weighed-down and dies and where he-is-buried

Incipit liber primus rerum gestarum Saxonicarum

I.1–7 · ORIGINS AND THE THURINGIANS

Widukind turns from the triumphs of the saints to the deeds of his own people. Some say the Saxons came from the Danes and Northmen, some from the remnants of Alexander's army. They land at Hadeln, and a youth trades his gold for a lapful of Thuringian earth, scatters it over the fields, and claims them. At a parley the Saxons draw the long knives hidden under their cloaks and kill the unarmed Thuringian princes; from these knives, some say, they take their name.

I. Post operum nostrorum primordia, quibus summi
I after of-works our the-beginnings in-which of-the-highest
imperatoris militum triumphos declaravi, nemo me miretur
emperor of-the-soldiers the-triumphs I-declared let-no-one me wonder
principum nostrorum res gestas litteris velle commendare;
of-princes our the-things done to-letters to-wish to-commit
quia in illo opere professioni meae, ut potui, quod debui
because in that work to-profession my as I-could what I-owed
exolvi, modo generis gentisque meae devotioni, ut queo,
I-paid now of-the-race and-of-the-people my to-the-devotion as I-am-able
elaborare non effugio.
to-labor not I-shun

II. Et primum quidem de origine statuque gentis
II and first indeed about the-origin and-state of-the-people
pauca expediam, solam pene famam sequens in hac parte,
a-few-things I-shall-set-out the-sole almost report following in this part
nimia vetustate omnem fere certitudinem obscurante.
with-too-great antiquity all almost certainty obscuring
Nam super hac re varia opinio est, aliis arbitrantibus de
for over this matter varied opinion is with-some judging from
Danis Northmannisque originem duxisse Saxones, aliis
the-Danes and-Northmen origin to-have-drawn the-Saxons with-others

autem aestimantibus, ut ipse adolescentulus audivi quendam
however reckoning as I as-a-young-lad heard a-certain-man
predicantem, de Graecis, quia ipsi dicerent Saxones reliquias
preaching from the-Greeks because they said the-Saxons the-remnants
fuisse Macedonici exercitus, qui secutus Magnum
to-have-been of-the-Macedonian army which having-followed the-Great
Alexandrum inmatura morte ipsius per totum orbem sit
Alexander with-untimely death his through the-whole world was
dispersus. Ceterum gentem antiquam et nobilem fuisse non
dispersed for-the-rest the-people ancient and noble to-have-been not
ambigitur; de quibus et in contione Agrippae ad Iudaeos in
is-doubted about whom also in the-assembly of-Agrippa to the-Jews in
Iosepho oratio contexitur, et Lucani poetae sententia probatur.
Josephus a-speech is-woven and of-Lucan the-poet the-sentence is-proved
III. Pro certo autem novimus Saxones his regionibus
III for certain however we-know the-Saxons to-these regions
navibus advectos et loco primum applicuisse qui usque
in-ships carried and at-the-place first to-have-landed which until
hodie nuncupatur Hadolaun.
today is-named Hadeln
IIII. Incolis vero adventum eorum graviter ferentibus,
IIII with-the-inhabitants however the-arrival their heavily bearing
qui Thuringi traduntur fuisse, arma contra eos movent;
who Thuringians are-handed-down to-have-been arms against them they-move
Saxonibus vero acriter resistentibus portum obtinent.
with-the-Saxons however keenly resisting the-port they-hold
Diu deinde inter se dimicantibus et multis hinc
long then among themselves with-fighting and with-many on-this-side
inde cadentibus, placuit utrisque de pace tractare,
on-that falling it-pleased both about peace to-treat
foedus inire. Actumque est foedus eo pacto, quo
a-treaty to-enter and-made was the-treaty on-that pact by-which

haberent Saxones vendendi emendique copiam, ceterum
should-have the-Saxons of-selling and-of-buying the-opportunity but
ab agris, a caede hominum atque rapina abstinerent.
from the-fields from the-slaughter of-men and robbery they-should-abstain
Stetitque illud foedus inviolabiliter multis diebus. Cumque
and-stood that treaty inviolably for-many days and-when
Saxonibus defecisset pecunia, quid venderent aut emerent
for-the-Saxons had-failed money what to-sell or to-buy
non habentibus, inutilem sibi pacem esse arbitrabantur.
not having useless for-themselves the-peace to-be they-judged
V. Ea igitur tempestate contigit adolescentem quendam
V at-that therefore time it-happened a-youth a-certain
egredi de navibus oneratum multo auro, torque aurea
to-go-out from the-ships laden with-much gold with-a-torque golden
simulque armillis aureis. Cui obvius quidam
and-at-the-same-time with-bracelets golden to-whom meeting a-certain-one
Thuringorum: 'Quid sibi vult', inquit, 'tam ingens aurum
of-the-Thuringians what for-itself wishes he-says so huge gold
circa tuum famelicum collum?' 'Emptorem', inquit, 'quaero; ad
around your starving neck a-buyer he-says I-seek for
nichil aliud istud aurum gero. Qui enim fame periclitor,
nothing else this gold I-carry one-who for with-hunger am-in-danger
quo auro delecter?' At ille qualitatem quantitatemque
with-what gold should-I-be-delighted but he the-quality and-quantity
pretii rogat. 'Nullum', inquit, 'michi est', Saxo, 'discrimen
of-the-price asks none he-says for-me is the-Saxon difference
in pretio: quicquid dabis gratum teneo'. Ille vero subridens
in price whatever you-will-give welcome I-hold he however smiling
adolescentem: 'Quid si' inquit, 'de isto pulvere sinum tibi
at-the-youth what if he-says of this dust the-lap for-you
inpleo?' Erat enim in presenti loco egesta humus plurima.
I-fill there-was for in the-present place dug-out earth very-much

Saxo nichil cunctatus aperit sinum et accipit humum,
the-Saxon nothing delaying opens the-lap and receives the-earth
ilicoque Thuringo tradidit aurum. Laetus uterque ad suos
and-at-once to-the-Thuringian handed-over the-gold glad each to his-own
repedat. Thuringi Thuringum laudibus ad caelum tollunt,
returns the-Thuringians the-Thuringian with-praises to heaven raise
qui nobili fraude Saxonem deceperit, fortunatumque eum
who by-noble fraud the-Saxon had-deceived and-fortunate him
inter omnes mortales fuisse, qui vili pretio tam ingens
among all mortals to-have-been who for-cheap price so huge
aurum possederit. Ceterum certi de victoria, de Saxonibus
gold had-possessed for-the-rest certain about victory over the-Saxons
iam quasi triumphabant. Interea Saxo privatus auro,
already as-if they-triumphed meanwhile the-Saxon deprived of-gold
oneratus vero multa humo, appropiat navibus. Sociis
laden however with-much earth approaches the-ships with-the-companions
igitur ei occurrentibus et quid ageret admirantibus,
therefore to-him running-to-meet and at-what he-was-doing wondering
alii eum irridere coeperunt amicorum, alii arguere, omnes
some him to-mock began of-the-friends others to-reprove all
pariter amentem eum crediderunt. At ille postulato silentio:
equally mad him believed but he with-silence asked
'Sequimini', inquit, 'me, optimi Saxones, et meam vobis
follow he-says me best Saxons and my to-you
amentiam probabitis utilem'. At illi, licet dubii, sequuntur
madness you-will-prove useful but they though doubtful follow
tamen ducem. Ille autem sumpta humo per vicinos agros
nevertheless the-leader he however with-taken earth through the-neighboring fields
quam potuit subtiliter sparsit et castrorum loca occupavit.
as he-could finely scattered and of-camps the-places occupied

VI. Ut autem viderunt Thuringi castra Saxonum,
VI when however saw the-Thuringians the-camp of-the-Saxons
intolerabilis res eis visa est. Et missis legatis conquesti
unbearable the-thing to-them seemed was and with-sent envoys complained
sunt de rupto foedere ac violato pacto ex parte Saxonum.
they-have about broken treaty and violated pact from the-part of-the-Saxons
Saxones respondent se hactenus foedus inviolabiliter
the-Saxons answer themselves hitherto the-treaty inviolably
servasse: terram proprio auro comparatam cum pace velle
to-have-kept the-land with-own gold bought with peace to-wish
obtinere aut certe armis defendere. His auditis incolae
to-hold or certainly with-arms to-defend with-these heard the-inhabitants
iam maledicebant aurum Saxonicum, et quem paulo ante
now cursed the-gold Saxon and him-whom a-little before
felicem esse predicabant, auctorem perditionis suae suaeque
fortunate to-be they-proclaimed the-author of-the-ruin their-own and-of-their
regionis fatentur. Ira deinde accensi caeco marte sine
region they-confess with-anger then kindled with-blind war without
ordine et sine consilio irruunt in castra. Saxones vero
order and without counsel they-rush into the-camp the-Saxons however
parati hostes excipiunt sternuntque. Et rebus prospere
ready the-enemies receive and-lay-low and with-things prosperously
gestis proxima circumcirca loca iure belli obtinent.
done the-nearest round-about places by-the-right of-war they-hold
Diu itaque crebroque cum ab alterutris pugnatum foret,
long therefore and-often when by each-side fought it-had-been
et Thuringi Saxones sibi superiores fore pensarent,
and the-Thuringians the-Saxons to-themselves superior to-be reckoned
per internuntios postulant utrosque inermes convenire et
through intermediaries they-ask both unarmed to-meet and
de pace iterum tractare condicto loco dieque. Saxones
about peace again to-treat at-agreed place and-day the-Saxons

postulatis se obedire respondent. Erat autem illis
to-the-demands themselves to-obey answer there-was however in-those
diebus Saxonibus magnorum cultellorum usus, quibus usque
days for-the-Saxons of-great knives the-use which until
hodie Angli utuntur, morem gentis antiquae sectantes.
today the-English use the-custom of-the-people ancient following
Quibus armati Saxones sub sagis suis procedunt castris
with-which armed the-Saxons under cloaks their advance from-the-camp
occurruntque Thuringis condicto loco. Cumque viderent
and-meet the-Thuringians at-the-agreed place and-when they-saw
hostes inermes et omnes principes Thuringorum adesse,
the-enemies unarmed and all the-princes of-the-Thuringians to-be-present
tempus rati totius regionis obtinendae, cultellis abstractis
the-time thinking of-the-whole region to-be-held with-knives drawn
super inermes et inprovisos irruunt et omnes fundunt, ita
upon the-unarmed and unforeseeing they-rush and all rout so
ut ne unus quidem ex eis superfuerit. Saxones clari existere
that not one even of them survived the-Saxons famous to-stand-out
et nimium terrorem vicinis gentibus incutere coeperunt.
and excessive terror on-the-neighboring peoples to-strike began
VII. Fuerunt autem et qui hoc facinore nomen
VII there-were however also those-who from-this deed the-name
illis inditum tradant. Cultelli enim nostra lingua ‘sahs’
to-them given relate knives for in-our tongue sahs
dicuntur, ideoque Saxones nuncupatos, quia cultellis tantam
are-called and-therefore the-Saxons named because with-knives so-great
multitudinem fudissent.
multitude they-had-routed

The Britons, abandoned by Rome, ask the Saxons for help; the Saxons drive out the Scots and Picts, then turn on the Britons and take the island, which is why its people are called Anglo-Saxons. In Francia Theuderic, son of a concubine, becomes king; Irminfrid of Thuringia, urged by his wife and by Iring, calls him a slave and refuses him. Theuderic wins at Runibergun, calls in the Saxons, and they burn the town outside Scheidungen and fight its defenders all day at the east gate, losing six thousand men.

VIII. Dum ea geruntur apud Saxoniam quae ita modo
VIII while these-things are-done in Saxony which thus now
vocitatur regionem, Brittannia a Vespasiano principe iam olim
is-called the-region Britain by Vespasian the-prince now long-ago
inter provincias redacta et sub clientela Romanorum multo
among the-provinces reduced and under the-clientship of-the-Romans for-much
tempore utiliter degens a vicinis nationibus inpugnatur,
time profitably living by the-neighboring nations is-attacked
eo quod auxilio Romanorum destituta videretur. Populus
on-that because by-the-help of-the-Romans abandoned it-seemed the-people
namque Romanus, Martiali imperatore a militibus interfecto,
for Roman with-Martial the-emperor by the-soldiers killed
externis bellis graviter fatigatus non sufficiebat solita
by-external wars heavily wearied not sufficed the-wonted
auxilia administrare amicis. Extructo tamen ingenti opere
aids to-supply to-friends with-built nevertheless a-huge work
ad munimen regionis inter confinia a mari usque ad
for the-fortification of-the-region between the-borders from sea all-the-way to
mare, ubi inpetus hostium videbatur fore, relinquebant
sea where the-onset of-the-enemies seemed to-be left
regionem Romani. Sed hosti acriori et ad bellandum
the-region the-Romans but for-an-enemy keener and for fighting

prompto, ubi gens mollis et pigra belli resistit, nulla
ready where a-people soft and sluggish in-war resists no
difficultas in destruendo opere fuit. Igitur fama prodente
difficulty in destroying the-work was therefore with-report betraying
de rebus a Saxonibus prospere gestis, supplicem mittunt
about the-things by the-Saxons prosperously done a-suppliant they-send
legationem ad eorum postulanda auxilia. Et procedentes legati:
embassy for their to-be-asked help and advancing the-envoys
'Optimi', inquiunt, 'Saxones, miseri Bretti crebris hostium
best they-say Saxons the-wretched Britons by-frequent of-the-enemies
incursionibus fatigati et admodum contriti, auditis victoriis
incursions wearied and very worn-down with-heard the-victories
a vobis magnifice patratis, miserunt nos ad vos, supplicantes,
by you magnificently accomplished have-sent us to you supplicating
ut ab eis vestra auxilia non subtrahatis. Terram latam
that from them your help not you-withdraw a-land broad
et spatiosam et omnium rerum copia refertam vestrae
and spacious and of-all things with-abundance crammed to-your
mandant ditioni parere. Sub Romanorum hactenus clientela
they-command dominion to-obey under of-the-Romans hitherto clientship
ac tutela liberaliter viximus; post Romanos vobis meliores
and protection freely we-have-lived after the-Romans than-you better-ones
ignoramus, ideo sub vestrae virtutis alas fugere quaerimus.
we-know-not therefore under of-your valor the-wings to-flee we-seek
Vestra virtute, vestris armis hostibus tantum superiores
by-your valor by-your arms than-the-enemies only superior
inveniamur, et quicquid inponitis servitii, libenter sustinemus'.
may-we-be-found and whatever you-impose of-service gladly we-bear
Patres ad haec pauca respondent: 'Certos amicos
the-fathers to these-things a-few-things answer sure friends
Brettis Saxones sciatis et eorum necessitatibus atque
to-the-Britons the-Saxons you-may-know and their necessities and

commodis aeque semper affuturos'. Legati laeti redierunt in
advantages equally always about-to-stand-by the-envoys glad returned into
patriam, exoptato nuntio socios laetiores reddentes. Deinde
the-homeland with-longed-for message the-allies gladder making then
promissus in Brittaniam mittitur exercitus, et gratanter ab
the-promised into Britain is-sent army and thankfully by
amicis susceptus, in brevi liberat regionem a latronibus,
the-friends received in brief it-frees the-region from the-robbers
restituens patriam incolis. Neque enim in id agendo
restoring the-homeland to-the-inhabitants nor for in this doing
multum laboris fuit, quippe qui iam olim audita fama
much of-labor was since those-who now long-ago with-heard the-report
Saxonum perculsi terrebantur, dummodo presentia eorum
of-the-Saxons struck were-terrified provided-that by-presence their
procul pelluntur. Erant enim hae gentes Brettis adversae
far they-are-driven were for these peoples to-the-Britons hostile
Scotti et Pehtti, adversus quos militantes Saxones accipiebant
the-Scots and the-Picts against whom campaigning the-Saxons received
a Brettis omnia ad usum necessaria. Manserunt itaque in
from the-Britons all-things for use necessary they-stayed therefore in
illa regione aliquanto tempore, vicaria Brettorum bene
that region for-some time with-the-reciprocal of-the-Britons well
usi amicitia. Ut autem viderunt principes exercitus
having-used friendship when however saw the-princes of-the-army
terram latam ac fertilem et incolarum manus ad bellandum
the-land broad and fertile and of-the-inhabitants the-hands for fighting
pigras, se vero ac maximam partem Saxonum sine
sluggish themselves however and the-greatest part of-the-Saxons without
certis sedibus, mittunt ad revocandum maiorem exercitum,
fixed seats they-send for recalling a-greater army
et pace facta cum Scottis et Pehttis, in commune contra
and with-peace made with the-Scots and the-Picts in common against

Brettos consurgunt eosque regione propellunt, suae ditioni
the-Britons they-rise and-them from-the-region drive to-their dominion
regionem distribuunt; et quia illa insula in angulo quodam
the-region they-distribute and because that island in a-corner a-certain
maris sita est, Anglisaxones usque hodie vocitantur. De
of-the-sea placed is Anglo-Saxons until today they-are-called about
quibus omnibus si quis plenius scire voluerit, historiam
which all if anyone more-fully to-know shall-wish the-history
gentis eiusdem legat, et ibi inveniet, quomodo aut
of-the-people same let-him-read and there he-will-find how or
sub quibus ducibus haec omnia acta sint, vel qualiter
under which leaders these all done were or how
ad Christianitatis nomen per virum suis temporibus
to the-name of-Christianity through a-man in-his times
sanctissimum, papam videlicet Gregorium, pervenerint. Nos
most-holy the-pope namely Gregory they-came we
vero coeptam historiae viam recurramus.
however the-begun of-history way let-us-run-back
VIIII. Post haec moritur Huga rex Francorum, nullumque
VIIII after these-things dies Hugo king of-the-Franks and-no
alium heredem regni relinquens preter unicam filiam nomine
other heir of-the-realm leaving besides an-only daughter by-name
Amalbergam, quae nupserat Irminfrido regi Thuringorum.
Amalberga who had-married Irminfrid king of-the-Thuringians
Populus autem Francorum a seniore suo humane clementerque
the-people however of-the-Franks by lord their humanely and-mercifully
tractatus, pro gratiarum actione rependenda filium quem
treated for of-thanks the-rendering to-be-repaid the-son whom
ex concubina genuit nomine Thiadricum ungunt sibi
from a-concubine he-begot by-name Theuderic anoint for-themselves
in regem. Thiadricus autem designatus rex mittere curavit
as king Theuderic however designated king to-send took-care

legationem ad Irminfridum pro pace atque concordia. Et
an-embassy to Irminfrid for peace and concord and
ingressus legatus ad Irminfridum: 'Mortalium', inquit,
having-entered the-envoy to Irminfrid of-mortals he-says
'optimus maximus, dominus meus Thiadricus misit me
the-best greatest lord my Theuderic has-sent me
ad te, exoptans te bene valere et lato magnoque diu
to you longing you well to-fare and in-broad and-great long
imperio vigere, seque tibi non dominum, sed amicum,
empire to-thrive and-himself to-you not as-lord but as-friend
non imperatorem, sed propinquum, propinquitatisque iura
not as-commander but as-kinsman and-of-kinship the-rights
inviolabiliter tibi finetenus velle servare demandat; tantum
inviolably for-you to-the-end to-wish to-keep he-sends-word only
ut a populi Francorum concordia non discordes, rogat:
that from of-the-people of-the-Franks the-concord not you-differ he-asks
ipsum namque sibi regem sequuntur constitutum'. Ad
him for for-themselves king they-follow established to
haec Irminfridus, iuxta quod regalem decuit dignitatem,
these-things Irminfrid according-to what royal befitted dignity
clementer legato respondit placita sibi placere
mercifully to-the-envoy answered the-pleasing-things to-him to-please
populi Francorum, ab eorum concordia non discordare,
of-the-people of-the-Franks from their concord not to-differ
pace omnimodis indigere; super negotio vero regni
of-peace in-all-ways to-need about the-business however of-the-realm
responsionem suam in amicorum presentiam velle differre.
answer his into of-friends the-presence to-wish to-defer
Virumque honorifice tractans fecit eum secum aliquamdiu
and-the-man honorably treating he-made him with-himself for-some-while
manere. Audiens autem regina legatum fratris supervenisse
to-stay hearing however the-queen the-envoy of-her-brother to-have-arrived

et locutum cum rege super negotio regni, suasit
and to-have-spoken with the-king about the-business of-the-realm urged
Iringo, ut pariter persuaderent viro, quia sibi regnum
Iring that equally they-should-persuade the-man that to-her the-realm
cessisset iure hereditario, utpote quae filia regis erat
had-fallen by-right hereditary since she daughter of-a-king was
et filia reginae; Thiadricum vero suum servum tamquam
and daughter of-a-queen Theuderic however her slave as
ex concubina natum, et ideo indecens fore proprio servo
from a-concubine born and therefore unseemly to-be to-own slave
umquam manus dare. Erat autem Iring vir audax, fortis
ever hands to-give was however Iring a-man bold strong
manu, acer ingenio, acutus consilio, pertinax in agendis rebus,
in-hand keen in-wit sharp in-counsel persistent in doing things
facilis ad suadendum quae vellet, hisque rebus animum
easy for persuading what he-wished and-by-these things the-mind
sibi Irminfridi connexerat. Convocatis principibus et
to-himself of-Irminfrid he-had-bound with-summoned princes and
necessariis amicis Irminfridus verba legati in presentiam
close friends Irminfrid the-words of-the-envoy into presence
eorum contulit. At illi unanimiter suadebant quae pacis
their brought but they unanimously urged the-things-which of-peace
atque concordiae sunt eum sentire, quia inpetus Francorum
and of-concord are him to-think because the-onset of-the-Franks
ferre non posset, maxime qui acrioribus hostium armis ex
to-bear not he-could especially who by-keener of-enemies arms from
alia parte premeretur. Iring vero votis lascivae mulieris
another side was-pressed Iring however the-wishes of-the-wanton woman
satisfaciens, suasit Irminfrido Francis cedere non debere,
satisfying persuaded Irminfrid to-the-Franks to-yield not to-be-obliged
super negotio regni iustiorem causam se habere, latum
about the-business of-the-realm a-juster cause himself to-have broad

preterea imperium, militum manus et arma ceterasque belli
moreover empire of-soldiers the-hand and arms and-the-other of-war
copias sibi ac Thiadrico parum procedere. Secundum
resources for-himself and to-Theuderic little to-avail according-to
haec verba Irminfridus respondit legato amicitiam quidem
these words Irminfrid answered to-the-envoy the-friendship indeed
sui et propinquitatem Thiadrico non negare, mirari tamen
his and kinship to-Theuderic not to-deny to-wonder however
non posse, quomodo usurpare vellet prius imperium
not to-be-able how to-usurp he-wished before empire
quam libertatem; servum natum, et quomodo sui quaereret
than liberty a-slave born and how his he-should-seek
dominium? proprio servo non posse manus dare. Legatus
the-lordship to-own slave not to-be-able hands to-give the-envoy
contra haec satis commotus: 'Mallem', inquit, 'hoc caput
against these-things much moved I-would-prefer he-says this head
meum tibi tradere quam huiuscemodi verba a te audire,
my to-you to-hand-over than of-this-kind words from you to-hear
sciens ea multo sanguine Francorum atque Thuringorum
knowing them by-much blood of-the-Franks and of-the-Thuringians
diluenda'. Et haec dicens reversus est ad Thiadricum;
to-be-washed-out and these-things saying returned has to Theuderic
quae audivit non celat. Thiadricus autem nimiam iram vultu
what he-heard not he-hides Theuderic however excessive anger with-face
celans sereno: 'Oportet nos', inquit, 'ad servitium Irminfridi
hiding serene it-behooves us he-says to the-service of-Irminfrid
festinare, quatinus, qui libertate privamur, inani saltem
to-hasten so-that we-who of-liberty are-deprived empty at-least
vita fruamur'. Et cum gravi exercitu appropians terminis
life may-enjoy and with heavy army approaching the-borders
Thuringorum invenit cum valida quoque manu generum
of-the-Thuringians he-found with strong also band brother-in-law

suum se expectantem in loco qui dicitur Runibergun.
his him awaiting in the-place which is-called Runibergun
Et commisso certamine pugnatum est ancipiti bello una
and with-joined contest fought it-was in-doubtful war one
die et secunda. Tertia vero die victus Irminfridus cessit
day and a-second on-the-third however day conquered Irminfrid yielded
Thiadrico et fugiens tandem se recepit cum reliquo
to-Theuderic and fleeing at-last himself betook with the-remaining
comitatu in urbe quae dicitur Scithingi, sita super
retinue into the-city which is-called Scheidungen placed on
fluvium quod dicitur Unstrod. Thiadricus autem congregatis
the-river which is-called Unstrut Theuderic however with-gathered
ducibus ac militum principibus exercitus sui, rogat
dukes and of-the-soldiers princes of-the-army his asks
sententiam, utrumnam censerent Irminfridum persequendum,
the-opinion whether they-judged Irminfrid to-be-pursued
an patriam remeandum. Inter quos Waldricus consultus:
or to-the-homeland to-be-returned among whom Waldric consulted
'Censeo', inquit, 'causa caesos sepeliendi, vulneratos curandi,
I-judge he-says for-the-sake the-slain of-burying the-wounded of-tending
maiorem exercitum congregandi patriam remeandum; neque
a-greater army of-gathering to-the-homeland to-be-returned nor
enim arbitror multis milibus tuorum amissis sufficere nos
for I-think with-many thousands of-yours lost to-suffice us
posse ad peragendum presens bellum. Si enim barbarae
to-be-able for carrying-through the-present war if for barbarous
nationes innumerae in nos consurgant, multis nostrorum
nations countless against us should-rise with-many of-ours
debilitatis, per quos vincis?' Erat autem Thiadrico
weakened through whom do-you-conquer there-was however to-Theuderic
servus satis ingeniosus, cuius consilium expertus est saepius
a-slave very ingenious whose counsel found he-had quite-often

probum, eique propterea quadam familiaritate coniunctus.
upright and-to-him therefore by-a-certain familiarity joined
Hic rogatus sententiam dare: 'In rebus', inquit, 'honestis
this-one asked an-opinion to-give in things he-says honorable
pulcherrimam semper esse arbitror perseverantiam, quam
most-beautiful always to-be I-judge perseverance which
ita coluerunt maiores nostri, ut a ceptis negotiis raro
so cultivated our ancestors that from begun affairs rarely
vel numquam deficerent. Nec tamen labores nostros
or never they-should-fall-away nor nevertheless labors our
eorum aequandos putaverim, qui parvis copiis ingentes
with-theirs to-be-equaled would-I-think who with-small forces the-huge
gentium copias superaverunt. Nunc terra in nostra est
of-peoples forces overcame now the-land in our is
potestate, et discessione nostra victis occasionem
power and by-departure our to-the-conquered the-occasion
vincendi prestabimus? Amplecterer et ipse patriam redire,
of-conquering we-shall-offer I-would-embrace also myself the-homeland to-return
familiarem necessitudinem videre, si hostem nostrum eo
the-familiar ties to-see if the-enemy our for-that
spatio scirem otio vacare. Sed vulnerati nostri forsitan
space I-knew in-leisure to-be-free but the-wounded our perhaps
hac re indigent. Castrorum esto labor, inpigris animis,
this thing need of-the-camp be-it the-labor to-tireless minds
reor, pro maxima voluptate est. Ergo caesa multitudine
I-reckon for greatest pleasure is therefore with-slain multitude
exercitus est vehementer attenuatus. Hostesne omnes
the-army is vehemently thinned the-enemies-whether all
evaserunt? certe rarissimus. Ipse namque dux ut quaedam
escaped certainly most-rare he for the-duke as a-certain
bestiola suo munitur latibulo, urbis circumdatur claustro,
little-beast in-his is-fortified lair of-the-city is-surrounded by-the-bar

nec ipsum caelum secure audet inspicere, nostro cogente
nor the-very sky securely dares to-look-at with-our compelling
timore. Sed non desunt ei pecuniae, quibus conducantur
fear but not are-lacking to-him monies with-which may-be-hired
nationes barbarae, non deest militum manus, licet lassa;
nations barbarous not is-lacking of-soldiers the-hand though weary
quae tamen omnia nostra absentia redintegrantur. Indecorum
which nevertheless all by-our absence are-restored unseemly
est victoribus victis vincendi locum dare. Num singulis
it-is for-the-victors to-the-conquered of-conquering room to-give whether for-single
urbibus administranda sufficimus presidia? Et eas omnes
cities to-be-supplied do-we-suffice garrisons and them all
perdimus, dum imus et redimus'. Haec eo prosequente
we-lose while we-go and we-return these-things with-him pursuing
placuit Thiadrico omnibusque gloria victoriae avidis manere
it-pleased Theuderic and-to-all of-the-glory of-victory eager to-stay
in castris et mittere ad Saxones, qui iam olim erant
in the-camp and to-send to the-Saxons who now long-ago were
Thuringis acerrimi hostes, quatinus ei essent in
to-the-Thuringians the-keenest enemies so-that to-him they-might-be for
auxilio: si quidem vincerent Irminfridum urbemque
help if indeed they-should-conquer Irminfrid and-the-city
caperent, terram eis in possessionem aeternam traderet.
should-take the-land to-them into possession eternal he-would-hand-over
Saxones nichil cunctati novem duces cum singulis milibus
the-Saxons nothing delaying nine dukes with single thousands
militum destinare non dubitant. Et ingressi duces in castra,
of-soldiers to-dispatch not hesitate and having-entered the-dukes into the-camp
singuli cum centenis militibus, reliqua multitudine
each with hundred soldiers with-the-remaining multitude
extra castra dimissa, salutant Thiadricum verbis pacificis.
outside the-camp sent-away greet Theuderic with-words peaceful

Quod cum Thiadricus hilarior suscepisset, dextris
which when Theuderic more-cheerfully had-received with-right-hands
datis et acceptis, copiam viris fandi concessit. At illi:
given and received the-chance to-the-men of-speaking he-granted but they
'Populus', aiunt, 'Saxonum tibi devotus et tuis parens
the-people they-say of-the-Saxons to-you devoted and to-your obeying
imperiis misit nos ad te; et ecce assumus parati ad omne
commands has-sent us to you and behold we-are-present ready for every
quodcumque tibi voluntas suggesserit, parati, ut aut hostes
whatever to-you will may-suggest ready that either the-enemies
tuos vincamus aut, si fortuna aliud iusserit, pro te
your we-may-conquer or if fortune other-thing shall-have-ordered for you
moriamur. Aliam enim causam nullam Saxonibus esse scias,
we-may-die other for cause none for-the-Saxons to-be know
nisi vincere velle aut certe vivere nolle. Neque enim
unless to-conquer to-wish or certainly to-live to-be-unwilling nor for
gratiam maiorem amicis exhibere possumus, quam ut pro eis
favor greater to-friends to-show we-can than that for them
mortem contempnamus. Et ut hoc experimento discas,
death we-despise and that this by-experiment you-may-learn
omnino desideramus'. Illis haec loquentibus mirati sunt
wholly we-desire with-them these-things speaking wondered have
Franci prestantes corpore et animo viros, mirati sunt
the-Franks at-the-outstanding in-body and in-mind men wondered have
et novum habitum, arma quoque et diffusos scapulas
and at-the-new dress the-arms also and spread-over the-shoulders
caesarie et supra omnia ingentem animi constantiam. Nam
with-the-hair and above all-things the-huge of-mind constancy for
vestiti erant sagis et armati longis lanceis et subnixi
clothed they-were in-cloaks and armed with-long lances and propped
stabant parvis scutis, habentes ad renes cultellos magnos.
they-stood on-small shields having at the-loins knives great

Erant etiam qui dicerent tantis ac talibus amicis
there-were also those-who said of-so-great and such friends
Francos non indigere; indomitum genus hominum fore,
the-Franks not to-need an-untamed race of-men to-be-about-to-be
et si presentem terram inhabitarent, eos procul dubio esse,
and if the-present land they-should-inhabit them without doubt to-be
qui Francorum imperium quandoque destruerent. Thiadricus
who of-the-Franks the-empire some-day would-destroy Theuderic
vero propriis utilitatibus consulens suscepit in fide viros,
however to-his-own advantages looking-to received into faith the-men
demandans, ut ad obpugnandam urbem prepararentur. Illi
ordering that for assaulting the-city they-be-prepared they
a rege regressi castra metati sunt ad meridianam
from the-king having-returned camp measured-out have toward the-southern
plagam urbis in pratis fluvio contiguis; et postera
side of-the-city in the-meadows to-the-river adjoining and on-the-next
die prima luce surgentes sumptis armis obpugnant oppidum
day at-first light rising with-taken arms they-assault the-town
incenduntque. Capto oppido et incenso aciem ordinant ex
and-burn-it with-taken town and burned the-line they-draw-up from
adverso portae orientalis. Clausi muris dum acies vident
opposite the-gate eastern the-shut-in by-walls when the-lines they-see
ordinatas ac se in ultimis necessitatibus constitutos,
drawn-up and themselves in the-last necessities placed
audacter erumpunt portis caecoque furore irruunt in
boldly burst-out from-the-gates and-with-blind fury rush on
adversarios, et telis emissis gladiis proinde res
the-adversaries and with-weapons thrown with-swords thereupon the-thing
agitur. Cumque grave bellum oriretur, plures hinc, plures
is-done and-when heavy war arose many on-this-side many
inde sternuntur. Istis pro patria, pro uxoribus ac natis,
on-that are-laid-low with-these for homeland for wives and children

postremo pro ipsa vita pugnantibus, Saxonibus vero pro
finally for very life fighting with-the-Saxons however for
gloria et pro terra adquirenda certantibus, attollitur clamor
glory and for land to-be-acquired striving is-raised the-shout
virorum invicem exhortantium, fragor armorum et gemitus
of-men one-another exhorting the-crash of-arms and the-groaning
morientium, talique spectaculo tota dies illa trahitur.
of-the-dying and-by-such spectacle whole day that is-drawn-out
Cumque ubique fierent caedes, ubique ululatus, et neuter
and-when everywhere were-made slaughters everywhere wailing and neither
agmen loco cessisset, iam tardior hora prelium diremit.
column from-place had-yielded now later hour the-battle broke-off
Eo die ex Thuringis multi interfecti, multi sauciati, de
on-that day of the-Thuringians many killed many wounded of
Saxonibus vero numerati sunt sex milia caesa.
the-Saxons however counted were six thousand slain

I.10–12 · HATHAGAT

Iring, sent with Irminfrid's treasures to beg peace, wins Theuderic over with bribes, and he promises to receive Irminfrid and cast off the Saxons; a falconer betrays the plan. The old warrior Hathagat seizes the sacred standard and urges a night attack; the Saxons storm the sleeping city, and Irminfrid escapes. They set up the eagle at the east gate and an altar of victory.

X. Mittitur igitur Iring ab Irminfrido cum supplici legatione
X is-sent therefore Iring by Irminfrid with a-suppliant embassy
et omnibus suis thesauris ad Thiadricum pro pace ac
and with-all his treasures to Theuderic for peace and
spontanea deditione. Et accedens Iring: 'Haec', ait, 'misit
voluntary surrender and approaching Iring these-things he-says has-sent

tibi quondam tuus propinquus, modo servus, ut, si non
to-you once your kinsman now slave that if not
sui miserearis, miserae saltem tuae sororis miserearis,
on-him you-may-take-pity on-the-wretched at-least your sister you-may-take-pity
nepotum quoque tuorum in ultima necessitate constitutorum'.
on-the-nephews also your in the-last necessity placed
Dum haec lacrimans dixisset, interpellatio principum
when these-things weeping he-had-said the-interposition of-the-princes
auro corruptorum adiecit, quia decens foret clementiae
by-gold corrupted added that seemly it-would-be for-clemency
regali, quo talem supplicationem non sperneret, communium
royal that such supplication not it-should-spurn of-the-common
quoque naturae rerum non oblivisceretur, utiliusque esse
also of-nature things not it-should-forget and-more-useful to-be
eum in fide suscipere, quem iam superatum haberet
him into faith to-receive whom already overcome he-held
tamque contritum, ut numquam se contra eum possit
and-so crushed that never himself against him could
levare, quam illud genus hominum indomabile et ad omnem
to-raise than that race of-men untamable and for every
laborem perdurabile, a quo nichil expectaret Francorum
labor enduring from which nothing could-expect of-the-Franks
imperium nisi solum periculum. In peracto quoque bello
the-empire except only danger in-the completed also war
considerare posset, quam duri et insuperabiles existerent
to-consider it-could how hard and unconquerable stood-out
Saxones, ideoque melius esse, ut susceptis Thuringis pariter
the-Saxons and-therefore better to-be that with-received Thuringians together
eos eicerent de finibus suis. His dictis, licet
them they-should-cast-out from borders their with-these said though
invitus, flectitur tamen Thiadricus, promisitque postera die
unwilling is-bent nevertheless Theuderic and-promised on-the-next day

generum suum se suscepturum Saxonesque abiecturum.
brother-in-law his himself about-to-receive and-the-Saxons about-to-cast-off
His auditis Iring vestigiis prosternitur regis, laudavitque
with-these heard Iring at-the-footsteps is-prostrated of-the-king and-praised
sententiam clementiae imperialis, et misso ad dominum
the-sentence of-the-clemency imperial and with-sent to the-lord
optato nuntio laetum eum omnemque urbem securiorem
longed-for message glad him and-the-whole city more-secure
reddidit; mansitque ipse in castris, ne quid adversi nox
made and-stayed he in the-camp lest anything adverse the-night
ipsa moliretur. Interea urbe ex pace promissa securiore
itself should-contrive meanwhile with-the-city by the-peace promised more-secure
reddita, egressus est quidam cum accipitre victum quaeritans
made gone-out has a-certain-man with a-hawk food seeking
supra litus fluvii supradicti. Emisso vero volucre,
on the-bank of-the-river aforesaid with-sent-off however bird
quidam ex Saxonibus in ulteriore ripa ilico eum suscepit.
a-certain-one of the-Saxons on the-farther bank at-once it caught
Quo rogante, ut remitteretur, Saxo dare negavit. Ille
with-him asking that it-be-sent-back the-Saxon to-give refused he
autem: 'Da', inquit, 'et secretum tibi sociisque utile
however give-it he-says and a-secret to-you and-to-the-companions useful
prodam'. Saxo econtra: 'Dic, ut accipias quod quaeris'.
I-will-betray the-Saxon in-turn speak that you-may-receive what you-seek
'Reges', inquit, 'inter se pace facta decretum tenent,
the-kings he-says between themselves with-peace made a-decree hold
si cras inveniamini in castris, capiamini aut certe
if tomorrow you-are-found in the-camp you-are-to-be-captured or certainly
occidamini'. Ad haec ille: 'Serione haec an ludo
you-are-to-be-killed to these-things he in-earnest-whether these or in-jest
ais?' 'Secunda hora', ait, 'sequentis diei probabit, quia
do-you-say the-second hour he-says of-the-following day will-prove that

vos oporteat sine ludis agere. Quapropter consulite vobis
you it-behooves without jests to-act wherefore take-counsel for-you
ipsis et fuga salutem quaerite'. Saxo statim emittens
yourselves and by-flight safety seek the-Saxon at-once sending-off
accipitrem, sociis retulit quae audivit. Illi satis commoti
the-hawk to-the-companions reported what he-heard they much moved
in promptu non inveniebant, quid super hoc agere debuissent.
at hand not found what about this to-do they-ought
XI. Erat autem tunc in castris quidam de veteranis
XI there-was however then in the-camp a-certain-one of the-veteran
militibus iam senior, sed viridi senectute adhuc vigens, qui
soldiers now older but in-green old-age still thriving who
merito bonarum virtutum pater patrum dicebatur, nomine
by-merit of-good virtues father of-fathers was-called by-name
Hathagat. Hic arripiens signum, quod apud eos habebatur
Hathagat he seizing the-standard which among them was-held
sacrum, leonis atque draconis et desuper aquilae volantis
sacred of-a-lion and of-a-dragon and above of-an-eagle flying
insignitum effigie, quo ostentaret fortitudinis atque
marked with-the-image by-which he-might-show of-bravery and
prudentiae et earum rerum efficatiam, et motu corporis
of-prudence and of-those things the-efficacy and by-motion of-body
animi constantiam declarans ait: 'Hucusque inter optimos
of-mind the-constancy declaring said hitherto among the-best
Saxones vixi, et ad hanc fere ultimam senectutem aetas
Saxons I-have-lived and to this almost last old-age age
me perduxit, et numquam Saxones meos fugere vidi;
me has-brought and never Saxons my to-flee have-I-seen
et quomodo nunc cogor agere quod numquam didici?
and how now am-I-compelled to-do what never I-learned
Certare scio, fugere ignoro nec valeo. Si fata non sinunt
to-contend I-know to-flee I-know-not nor am-I-able if the-fates not allow

ultra vivere, liceat saltem, quod michi dulcissimum
longer to-live let-it-be-allowed at-least what to-me sweetest
est, cum amicis occumbere. Exempli michi paternae virtutis
is with friends to-fall examples to-me of-paternal valor
sunt amicorum corpora circa nos prostrata, qui maluerunt
are of-friends the-bodies around us laid-low who preferred
mori quam vinci, inpigras animas amittere quam coram
to-die than to-be-conquered tireless souls to-lose than before
inimicis loco cedere. Sed quid necesse habeo exhortationem
enemies from-place to-yield but what need have-I exhortation
protrahere tantisper de contemptu mortis? Ecce ad securos
to-draw-out for-so-long about the-contempt of-death behold to the-secure
ibimus, ad caedem tantum, non ad pugnam. Nam de
we-shall-go to slaughter only not to battle for about
promissa pace ac nostro gravi vulnere nichil suspicantur
the-promised peace and our heavy wound nothing they-suspect
adversi, hodierno quoque prelio fatigati quemadmodum sunt,
adverse by-today's also battle wearied as they-are
sine metu, sine vigiliis et solita custodia manent. Irruamus
without fear without watches and wonted guard they-remain let-us-rush
igitur super inprovisos et somno sepultos, parum laboris
therefore upon the-unwary and in-sleep buried little of-labor
est; sequimini me ducem, et hoc canum caput meum
it-is follow me as-leader and this gray head my
vobis trado, si non evenerit quod dico'. Illius igitur
to-you I-hand-over if not shall-have-happened what I-say by-his therefore
optimis verbis erecti quod supererat diei in reficiendis suis
best words roused what remained of-the-day in refreshing their
corporibus expendebant; deinde prima vigilia noctis dato
bodies they-spent then at-the-first watch of-the-night with-given
signo, qua solet sopor gravior occupare mortales, sumptis
signal at-which is-wont sleep heavier to-seize mortals with-taken

armis, precedente duce irruunt super muros, invenientesque
arms with-going-before the-leader they-rush upon the-walls and-finding-them
sine vigiliis ac custodiis, ingressi sunt urbem cum clamore
without watches and guards entered have the-city with shout
valido. Quo excitati adversarii, alii fuga salutem quaesierunt,
strong by-which roused the-adversaries some by-flight safety sought
alii per plateas et muros urbis ut ebrii erraverunt,
others through the-streets and walls of-the-city as drunk wandered
alii in Saxones, cives suos putantes, inciderunt. Illi vero
others into the-Saxons citizens their thinking fell they however
omnes perfectae aetatis morti tradiderunt, inpuberes predae
all of-full age to-death delivered the-under-age for-booty
servaverunt. Eratque nox illa plena clamoribus, caede atque
kept and-was night that full of-shouts of-slaughter and
rapina, nullusque locus in omni urbe quietus, donec aurora
of-plunder and-no place in whole city quiet until dawn
rutilans surgit et incruentam declarat victoriam. Cumque penes
glowing rises and bloodless declares the-victory and-when with
regem, videlicet Irminfridum, summa victoria esset, requisitus
the-king namely Irminfrid the-sum of-victory was sought-for
cum uxore ac filiis ac raro comitatu evasisse repertus est.
with wife and sons and scant retinue to-have-escaped found he-was
XII. Mane autem facto ad orientalem portam ponunt
XII morning however made at the-eastern gate they-place
aquilam, aramque victoriae construentes secundum errorem
the-eagle and-an-altar of-victory building according-to the-error
paternum sacra sua propria veneratione venerati sunt: nomine
paternal the-rites their with-own veneration venerated have in-name
Martem, effigie columpnarum imitantes Herculem, loco
Mars in-the-likeness of-columns imitating Hercules in-place
Solem, quem Graeci appellant Apollinem. Ex hoc apparet
the-Sun whom the-Greeks call Apollo from this appears

aestimationem illorum utcumque probabilem, qui Saxones
the-estimation of-those somehow probable who the-Saxons
originem duxisse putant de Graecis, quia Hirmin vel
origin to-have-drawn think from the-Greeks because Hirmin or
Hermis Graece Mars dicitur; quo vocabulo ad laudem vel
Hermis in-Greek Mars is-called which word for praise or
ad vituperationem usque hodie etiam ignorantes utimur. Per
for blame until today even not-knowing we-use for
triduum igitur dies victoriae agentes et spolia hostium
three-days therefore the-days of-victory spending and the-spoils of-the-enemies
dividentes exequiasque caesorum celebrantes laudibus
dividing and-the-funeral-rites of-the-slain celebrating with-praises
ducem in caelum attollunt, divinum ei animum inesse
the-leader to heaven they-raise divine in-him spirit to-be-within
caelestemque virtutem acclamantes, qui sua constantia tantam
and-heavenly valor acclaiming who by-his constancy so-great
eos egerit perficere victoriam. Acta sunt autem haec
them had-driven to-accomplish victory done were however these
omnia, ut maiorum memoria prodit, die Kal.
all as of-the-ancestors memory hands-down on-the-day of-the-Kalends
Octobris, qui dies erroris religiosorum sanctione virorum
of-October which days of-error by-the-religious sanction of-men
mutati sunt in ieiunia et orationes, oblationes quoque
changed were into fasts and prayers offerings also
omnium nos precedentium Christianorum.
of-all us preceding Christians

Theuderic gives the Saxons the land. He lures Irminfrid back and Iring kills him at the king's feet; branded a traitor, Iring kills Theuderic too and lays his lord's body on him, a tale Widukind leaves to the reader's belief, though the Milky Way bears Iring's name. The Saxons divide into three classes under three princes. Charles the Great makes them Christians and brothers of the Franks. Duke Otto, Liudolf's son, refuses the crown, and Conrad is anointed on his advice; Otto's son Henry grows up foremost in valor.

XIII. His itaque omnibus peractis reversi sunt ad
XIII with-these therefore all completed returned have to
Thiadricum in castra, et ab eo suscepti satisque laudati
Theuderic into the-camp and by him received and-much praised
et terra presenti in aeternam possessionem donati sunt.
and with-the-land present into eternal possession presented were
Socii quoque Francorum et amici appellati urbem, cui ab
allies also of-the-Franks and friends called the-city which from
igne ut propriis moeniis pepercere, primum incoluerunt. Qui
fire as their-own walls they-had-spared first they-inhabited what
autem finis reges secutus sit, quia memorabilis fama est,
however end the-kings followed has because memorable the-report is
prodere non negligo. Missus denique Iring ad Thiadricum
to-hand-down not I-neglect sent finally Iring to Theuderic
eo die, quo capta est civitas, proxima nocte susceptus
on-that day on-which captured was the-city on-the-next night received
ab eo permansit in castris. Audito autem, quia elapsus
by him he-remained in the-camp with-heard however that escaped
esset Irminfridus, egit, ut dolo revocaretur, et Iring
had Irminfrid he-acted that by-guile he-be-recalled and Iring
eum interficeret, tamquam claris muneribus ab ipso
him should-kill as-if with-brilliant gifts by him

donandus ac magna potestate in regno honorandus; ipse
to-be-presented and with-great power in the-realm to-be-honored himself
vero Thiadricus caedis illius quasi alienus existeret. Quod
however Theuderic of-that slaughter as-if a-stranger should-stand which
cum Iring aegre suscepisset, falsis promissionibus corruptus
when Iring grudgingly had-accepted by-false promises corrupted
tandem cessit seque parere voluntati illius confessus est.
at-last he-yielded and-himself to-obey the-will of-him confessed has
Revocatus itaque Irminfridus prosternitur vestigiis Thiadrici;
recalled therefore Irminfrid is-prostrated at-the-footsteps of-Theuderic
Iring vero tamquam armiger regalis stans secus evaginato
Iring however as-if armor-bearer royal standing beside with-drawn
gladio prostratum dominum trucidavit. Statimque ad eum
sword the-prostrate lord slaughtered and-at-once to him
rex: 'Tali facinore omnibus mortalibus odiosus factus,
the-king by-such deed to-all mortals hateful made
dominum tuum interficiendo, viam habeto apertam a nobis
the-lord your by-killing the-way have open from us
discedendi; sortem vel partem tuae nequitiae nolumus
of-departing the-lot or part of-your wickedness we-do-not-wish
habere'. 'Merito', inquit Iring, 'odiosus omnibus mortalibus
to-have deservedly says Iring hateful to-all mortals
factus sum, quia tuis parui dolis; antequam tamen exeam,
made I-am because your I-obeyed guiles before nevertheless I-go-out
purgabo hoc scelus meum vindicando dominum meum'.
I-shall-purge this crime my by-avenging lord my
Et ut evaginato gladio stetit, ipsum quoque Thiadricum
and when with-drawn sword he-stood himself also Theuderic
obtruncavit, sumensque corpus domini posuit super cadaver
he-cut-down and-taking the-body of-the-lord he-placed-it on the-corpse
Thiadrici, ut vinceret saltem mortuus, qui vincebatur
of-Theuderic that he-might-conquer at-least dead who was-conquered

vivus. Viamque ferro faciens discessit. Si qua fides his dictis
alive and-a-way with-iron making departed if any faith to-these sayings
adhibeatur, penes lectorem est. Mirari tamen non possumus
be-given with the-reader it-is to-wonder nevertheless not we-can
in tantum famam prevaluisse, ut Iringis nomine, quem ita
into so-much the-report to-have-prevailed that of-Iring by-name which so
vocitant, lacteus caeli circulus usque in presens sit notatus.
they-call the-milky of-heaven circle until into the-present is marked
XIIII. Saxones igitur possessa terra summa pace quieverunt,
XIIII the-Saxons therefore with-possessed land in-highest peace rested
societate Francorum atque amicitia usi. Parte quoque
the-fellowship of-the-Franks and friendship having-used with-part also
agrorum cum amicis auxiliariis vel manumissis distributa,
of-the-fields with friends allied or freed distributed
reliquias pulsae gentis tributis condempnaverunt. Unde
the-remnants of-the-driven-out people to-tributes they-condemned whence
usque hodie gens Saxonica triformi genere ac lege preter
until today the-people Saxon in-threefold kind and law besides
conditionem servilem dividitur. A tribus etiam principibus
the-condition servile is-divided by three also princes
totius gentis ducatus administrabatur, certis terminis
of-the-whole people the-command was-administered with-fixed boundaries
exercitus congregandi potestate contenti, quos suis locis
of-the-army of-gathering with-the-power content whom by-their places
ac vocabulis novimus signatos, in orientales scilicet populos,
and names we-know marked into the-eastern namely peoples
Angarios atque Westfalos. Si autem universale bellum
the-Angrarians and the-Westphalians if however general war
ingruerit, sorte eligitur, cui omnes obedire oportuit, ad
should-press by-lot is-chosen whom all to-obey it-behooved for
administrandum inminens bellum. Quo peracto, aequo iure
administering the-looming war which completed with-equal right

ac lege propria contentus potestate unusquisque vivebat. De
and law own content with-power each lived about
legum vero varietate nostrum non est in hoc libello disserere,
the-laws however the-variety ours not it-is in this little-book to-discuss
cum apud plures inveniatur lex Saxonica diligenter descripta.
since among many may-be-found the-law Saxon diligently written-down
Suavi vero Transbadani illam quam incolunt regionem
the-Swabians however beyond-the-Bode that which they-inhabit region
eo tempore invaserunt, quo Saxones cum Longobardis
at-that time invaded at-which the-Saxons with the-Lombards
Italiam adierunt, ut eorum narrat historia, et ideo aliis
Italy went-to as their tells history and therefore other
legibus quam Saxones utuntur. Igitur Saxones variam fidem
laws than the-Saxons they-use therefore the-Saxons the-varied faith
Francorum experti, de quibus nobis non est dicendum,
of-the-Franks having-experienced about whom by-us not is to-be-said
cum in eorum gestis inveniatur scriptum, paterno errore
since in their deeds it-may-be-found written by-paternal error
obligati usque ad tempora Karoli Magni perdurabant.
bound until to the-times of-Charles the-Great they-lasted
XV. Magnus vero Karolus cum esset regum fortissimus,
XV the-Great however Charles since he-was of-kings the-bravest
non minori sapientia vigilabat. Enimvero considerabat, quia
with-no less wisdom was-watchful for he-considered that
suis temporibus omni mortali prudentior erat, finitimam
in-his times than-every mortal more-prudent he-was the-neighboring
gentem nobilemque vano errore retineri non oportere; modis
people and-noble by-vain error to-be-held not to-be-fitting by-means
omnibus satagebat, quatinus ad veram viam duceretur.
all he-busied-himself so-that to the-true way it-should-be-led
Et nunc blanda suasione, nunc bellorum inpetu ad id
and now by-coaxing persuasion now of-wars by-the-onset to that

cogebat, tandemque tricesimo imperii sui anno obtinuit
he-compelled and-at-last in-the-thirtieth of-empire his year he-obtained-it
— imperator quippe ex rege creatus est—, quod multis
emperor indeed from king made he-was what for-many
temporibus elaborando non defecit: ob id qui olim
times by-laboring not he-failed on-account-of this who once
socii et amici erant Francorum, iam fratres et quasi una
allies and friends were of-the-Franks now brothers and as-if one
gens ex Christiana fide, veluti modo videmus, facta est.
people from the-Christian faith as now we-see made it-was
XVI. Ultimus vero Karolorum apud orientales Francos
XVI the-last however of-the-Charleses among the-eastern Franks
imperantium Hluthowicus ex Arnulfo fratruele Karoli,
ruling Louis from Arnulf the-nephew of-Charles
huius Lotharii regis proavi, natus erat. Qui cum
of-this of-Lothar of-the-king of-the-great-grandfather born was who when
accepisset uxorem nomine Liudgardam, sororem Brunonis ac
he-had-received a-wife by-name Liutgard the-sister of-Bruno and
magni ducis Oddonis, non multis post haec vixerat annis.
of-the-great duke Otto not many after this he-had-lived years
Horum pater erat Liudulfus, qui Romam profectus transtulit
of-these the-father was Liudolf who to-Rome having-set-out transferred
reliquias beati Innocentii papae. Ex quibus Brun cum
the-relics of-blessed Innocent the-pope of whom Bruno when
ducatum administrasset totius Saxoniae, duxit exercitum
the-duchy he-had-administered of-the-whole of-Saxony led an-army
contra Danos, et inundatione repentina circumfusus non
against the-Danes and by-a-flood sudden surrounded not
habens locum pugnandi periit cum omni exercitu, fratri
having a-place of-fighting perished with all the-army to-the-brother
natu quidem minori, sed omni virtute multo potiori
by-birth indeed younger but in-all valor much stronger

relinquens ducatum. Regi autem Hluthowico non erat
leaving the-duchy to-the-king however Louis not was
filius, omnisque populus Francorum atque Saxonum quaerebat
a-son and-all the-people of-the-Franks and of-the-Saxons sought
Oddoni diadema inponere regni. Ipse vero quasi iam gravior
on-Otto the-diadem to-place of-the-realm he however as-if now older
recusabat imperii onus; eius tamen consultu Cuonradus
refused of-empire the-burden his nevertheless by-counsel Conrad
quondam dux Francorum ungitur in regem. Penes Oddonem
once duke of-the-Franks is-anointed as king with Otto
tamen summum semper et ubique fiebat imperium.
nevertheless the-highest always and everywhere was-made the-empire
XVII. Natus est autem ei filius toto mundo necessarius,
XVII born was however to-him a-son to-the-whole world necessary
regum maximus optimus, Heinricus, qui primus libera potestate
of-kings the-greatest best Henry who first in-free power
regnavit in Saxonia. Qui cum primaeva aetate omni genere
reigned in Saxony who when in-earliest age with-every kind
virtutum vitam suam ornaret, de die in diem proficiebat
of-virtues life his adorned from day to day he-advanced
precellenti prudentia et omnium bonorum actuum gloria; nam
in-surpassing prudence and of-all good acts in-glory for
maximum ei ab adolescentia studium erat in glorificando
greatest to-him from youth the-zeal was in glorifying
gentem suam et pacem confirmando in omni potestate
people his and peace confirming in all power
sua. Pater autem videns prudentiam adolescentis et consilii
his the-father however seeing the-prudence of-the-youth and of-counsel
magnitudinem reliquit ei exercitum et militiam adversus
the-greatness left to-him the-army and the-soldiery against
Dalamantiam, contra quos diu ipse militavit. Dalamanci vero
the-Daleminzi against whom long he campaigned the-Daleminzi however

inpetum illius ferre non valentes conduxerunt adversus eum
the-onset his to-bear not being-able hired against him
Avares, quos modo Ungarios vocamus, gentem belli asperrimam.
the-Avars whom now Hungarians we-call a-people in-war harshest

I.18–22 · THE HUNGARIANS AND BISHOP HATTO

The Hungarians, sprung from witches cast out by the Goths, wander into Pannonia and harry Saxony. Duke Otto dies and Henry succeeds him, but King Conrad fears him and plots his death. Bishop Hatto of Mainz, who once lured Count Adalbert out by a broken oath and had him beheaded, orders a golden torque for Henry; a goldsmith warns Henry, who seizes Hatto's lands in Saxony and Thuringia and drives out Burchard and Bardo, and Hatto dies of grief, some say struck by lightning.

XVIII. Avares autem, ut quidam putant, reliquiae erant
XVIII the-Avars however as some think the-remnants were
Hunorum. Huni egressi sunt de Gothis, Gothi autem de
of-the-Huns the-Huns came-out have from the-Goths the-Goths however from
insula, ut Iordanis narrat, nomine Sulza egressi sunt. A
an-island as Jordanes relates by-name Scandza come-out have from
proprio autem duce nomine Gotha Gothi appellati sunt. Coram
own however leader by-name Gotha the-Goths called were before
quo cum quaedam mulieres in exercitu suo rerum veneficarum
whom when certain women in army his of-things sorcerous
arguerentur, requisitae sunt et inventae culpabiles. Quarum
were-accused sought-out they-were and found guilty of-whom
cum esset multitudo, a merita quidem poena abstinuit,
since there-was a-multitude from deserved indeed penalty he-abstained
ab exercitu tamen omnes eiecit. Eiectae autem silvam
from the-army nevertheless all he-cast-out cast-out however a-forest

proximam petierunt. Quae cum mari cingeretur et Meoticis
the-nearest they-sought which since by-the-sea it-was-girded and by-the-Maeotic
paludibus, inde exeundi aditus non patebat. Pregnantes autem
marshes thence of-going-out approach not lay-open pregnant however
iam quaedam ex illis ibidem partum ediderunt. A quibus
already certain of them there birth brought-forth from whom
cum alii atque alii nascerentur, facta est gens valida;
when others and others were-born made was a-people strong
ferarumque more viventes, inculti et indomiti, facti
and-of-wild-beasts in-the-manner living uncultivated and untamed made
sunt venatores acerrimi. Post multa vero saecula, cum aliam
were hunters most-keen after many however ages when another
mundi partem illic commorantes penitus ignorarent,
of-the-world part there dwelling wholly they-were-ignorant-of
contigit cervam venatu inveniri eamque persequi, donec
it-happened a-hind in-hunting to-be-found and-it to-follow until
ipsa precedente omnibus retro mortalibus intransmeabilem
with-it going-before to-all hitherto mortals impassable
hactenus viam per Meoticas paludes transmearent; ibique
hitherto a-way through the-Maeotic marshes they-crossed and-there
urbes et oppida et invisum antea genus hominum videntes,
cities and towns and unseen before a-race of-men seeing
eadem via reversi sunt, sociis talia referentes.
by-the-same way returned have to-the-companions such-things reporting
Illi autem curiositatis causa cum multitudine perrexerunt
they however of-curiosity for-the-sake with a-multitude proceeded
audita probare. Finitimae autem urbes et oppida cum
the-heard-things to-test the-neighboring however cities and towns when
ignotam multitudinem et corpora cultu habituque horrenda
the-unknown multitude and bodies in-dress and-garb dreadful
vidissent, daemonia esse credentes fugiebant. Illi vero ad
they-had-seen demons to-be believing fled they however at

novas rerum facies stupentes admirati, primum quidem a
the-new of-things faces stupefied wondering first indeed from
caede atque rapina abstinuerunt, sed nemine resistente
slaughter and plunder abstained but with-no-one resisting
humana tacti cupidine, multa caede hominum facta, nulli
with-human touched greed much slaughter of-men made to-no
rei proinde parcebant. Et capta preda magna ad sedes
thing thenceforth they-spared and with-taken booty great to seats
suas reversi sunt. Videntes autem, quia res eis secus
their returned have seeing however that things for-them otherwise
cederent, cum uxoribus ac filiis et omni agresti suppellectili
would-turn-out with wives and sons and all rustic furniture
iterum venientes et finitimas gentes circumquaque vastantes,
again coming and the-neighboring peoples round-about laying-waste
Pannoniam postremo inhabitare coeperunt.
Pannonia at-last to-inhabit began
XVIIII. Victi autem a Magno Karolo et trans Danubium
XVIIII conquered however by the-Great Charles and across the-Danube
pulsi ac ingenti vallo circumclusi, prohibiti sunt a consueta
driven and by-a-huge rampart enclosed prevented they-were from the-wonted
gentium depopulatione. Imperante autem Arnulfo destructum est
of-peoples devastation with-ruling however Arnulf destroyed was
opus, et via eis nocendi patefacta, eo quod iratus
the-work and the-way for-them of-harming laid-open on-that-account that angry
esset imperator Centupulcho regi Marorum. Deinde quantam
was the-emperor with-Svatopluk king of-the-Moravians then how-great
stragem quantamque iniuriam imperio Francorum fecerint,
slaughter and-how-great injury to-the-empire of-the-Franks they-did
urbes ac regiones adhuc desolatae testantur. Haec ideo
the-cities and regions still desolate attest these-things therefore
de hac gente dicere arbitrati sumus, ut possit tua claritas
about this people to-say judged we-have that may-be-able your brightness

agnoscere, cum qualibus avo tuo patrique certandum
to-recognize with what-sort-of-men for-grandfather your and-father to-be-fought
fuerit, vel a quibus hostibus per eorum providentiae virtutem
it-was or from which enemies through of-their of-foresight the-valor
et armorum insignia tota iam fere Europa liberata sit.
and of-arms the-distinctions whole now almost Europe freed has-been
XX. Predictus igitur exercitus Ungariorum a Sclavis
XX the-aforesaid therefore army of-the-Hungarians by the-Slavs
conductus, multa strage in Saxonia facta et infinita
hired with-much slaughter in Saxony made and with-infinite
capta preda, Dalamantiam reversi obvium invenerunt alium
taken booty to-the-Daleminzi returning meeting-them found another
exercitum Ungariorum; qui comminati sunt bellum inferre
army of-the-Hungarians who threatened have war to-bring-upon
amicis eorum, eo quod auxilia eorum sprevissent,
the-friends their on-that-account that help their they-had-spurned
dum illos ad tantam predam duxissent. Unde factum est,
while those to so-great booty they-had-led whence done it-was
ut secundo vastaretur Saxonia ab Ungariis, et priori
that a-second-time was-laid-waste Saxony by the-Hungarians and with-the-former
exercitu in Dalamantia secundum expectante, ipsa quoque
army in Dalamantia the-second awaiting it also
in tantam penuriae miseriam ducta sit, ut aliis nationibus
into such of-want misery led was that to-other nations
eo anno relicto proprio solo pro annona servirent.
in-that year with-left own soil for grain they-served
XXI. Igitur patre patriae et magno duce Oddone
XXI therefore with-the-father of-the-homeland and great duke Otto
defuncto, illustri et magnifico filio Heinrico totius
dead to-his-illustrious and magnificent son Henry of-the-whole
Saxoniae [ipse] reliquit ducatum. Cum autem ei essent et
of-Saxony he left the-duchy since however to-him there-were also

alii filii, Thancmarus et Liudulfus, ante patrem suum obierunt.
other sons Thankmar and Liudolf before father their they-died
Rex autem Cuonradus cum saepe expertus esset virtutem
the-king however Conrad since often tested he-had the-valor
novi ducis, veritus est ei tradere omnem potestatem
of-the-new duke feared has to-him to-hand-over all the-power
patris. Quo factum est, ut indignationem incurreret totius
of-the-father by-which done it-was that the-indignation he-incurred of-the-whole
exercitus Saxonici; ficte tamen pro laude et gloria optimi
army Saxon falsely nevertheless for the-praise and glory of-the-best
ducis plura locutus promisit se maiora sibi daturum
duke many-things having-said he-promised himself greater-things to-him about-to-give
et honore magno glorificaturum. Saxones vero huiuscemodi
and with-honor great about-to-glorify the-Saxons however of-this-kind
simulationibus non adtendebant, sed suadebant duci suo,
to-the-pretenses not attended but urged duke their
ut, si honore paterno eum nollet sponte honorare,
that if with-the-honor paternal him he-were-unwilling willingly to-honor
regi invito quae vellet obtinere posset. Rex autem
from-the-king unwilling what he-wished to-obtain he-could the-king however
videns vultum Saxonum erga se solito austeriorem,
seeing the-countenance of-the-Saxons toward himself than-wonted sterner
nec posse publico bello eorum ducem conterere, subpeditante
nor to-be-able in-public war their duke to-crush with-supplying
illi fortium militum manu, exercitus quoque innumera
to-him of-brave soldiers the-band of-the-army also with-countless
multitudine, egit, ut quoquo modo interficeretur dolo;
multitude he-acted that in-some way he-should-be-killed by-guile
(XXII.) ad hocque negotium habens, ut fertur, maxime
XXII for and-this business having as is-said most
idoneum Mogonciacae sedis episcopum nomine Hathonem.
fit of-the-Mainz see the-bishop by-name Hatto

Hic obscuro genere natus ingenioque acutus, et qui
this-one of-obscure race born and-in-wit sharp and who
difficile discerneretur, melior consilio foret an peior. Quod
with-difficulty might-be-discerned better in-counsel he-was or worse which
ex uno eius actu colligi potest. Nam cum bellum esset
from one his act to-be-gathered can for when war was
Cuonrado regis Cuonradi patri et Adelberto Heinrici ex
to-Conrad of-king Conrad the-father and to-Adalbert of-Henry from
sorore nepoti, primum interfectus est frater Adelberti;
sister nephew first killed was the-brother of-Adalbert
postea in ultionem fratris Cuonradus quoque occisus
afterward in vengeance of-the-brother Conrad too killed
est ab Adelberto, nec ullus regum tam ingens bellum
was by Adalbert nor any of-the-kings so huge war
inter eminentes viros potuit sedare. Summus postremo
between eminent men could calm the-highest at-last
pontifex mittitur ad sedandam tam ingentem discordiam;
pontiff is-sent for calming so huge discord
et ingressus civitatem Adelberti sub iureiurando spopondit
and having-entered the-city of-Adalbert under oath he-pledged
aut ei pacem cum rege facturum aut incolumem
either for-him peace with the-king about-to-make or unharmed
loco suo restituturum. His pactis consentiens Adelbertus,
to-place his about-to-restore with-these pacts agreeing Adalbert
fidei gratia et amicitiae quod dignaretur aliquid gustare,
of-faith for-the-sake and of-friendship that he-would-deign something to-taste
rogavit. Quo negante ilico egressus est urbem. Cumque
asked with-him refusing at-once gone-out has the-city and-when
pertransisset oppidum cum omni comitatu, fertur clamasse:
he-had-passed-through the-town with all retinue he-is-said to-have-cried
‘Proh’, inquit, ‘saepius petit, qui oblata spernit; taedet
alas he-says more-often seeks he-who the-offered-things spurns it-wearies

me longioris viae tardiorisque horae. Nam ieiuni tota
me of-a-longer way and-of-a-later hour for fasting the-whole
die non possumus ambulare'. Laetus Adelbertus inclinatur
day not we-can walk glad Adalbert is-bowed
ad genua pontificis et, ut gustandi gratia in urbem
to the-knees of-the-pontiff and that of-tasting for-the-sake into the-city
reverteretur, deposcit. Pontifex in urbem reversus cum
he-should-return begs the-pontiff into the-city returned with
Adelberto liberatur a lege iuramenti, ut sibi videbatur,
Adalbert is-freed from the-law of-the-oath as to-him it-seemed
eo quod incolumem eum loco suo constituisset. Post
on-that because unharmed him in-place his he-had-restored after
haec regi a pontifice presentatus Luthowico et
these-things to-the-king by the-pontiff presented Louis and
dampnatus capitalem accepit sententiam. Hac igitur perfidia
condemned capital received sentence than-this therefore treachery
quid nequius? Attamen uno capite caeso multorum capita
what more-wicked nevertheless with-one head cut-off of-many the-heads
populorum salvantur. Et quid melius eo consilio, quo
of-peoples are-saved and what better than-that counsel by-which
discordia dissolveretur et pax redderetur? Ea itaque
discord might-be-dissolved and peace be-restored with-that therefore
varietate virum nobis proprie a summa clementia concessum
shiftiness the-man to-us specially by the-highest clemency granted
aggressus est, fecitque ei torquem auream fabricari, et
attacked has and-made for-him a-torque golden to-be-wrought and
invitavit ad convivium, quo magnis ab eo muneribus
invited-him to a-banquet at-which with-great by him gifts
honoraretur. Interea pontifex opus considerandi gratia
he-might-be-honored meanwhile the-pontiff the-work of-viewing for-the-sake
ingreditur ad aurificem et visa torque ingemuisse fertur.
goes-in to the-goldsmith and with-seen torque to-have-groaned is-said

Gemitus causam aurifex interrogat. Cui respondit, quia
of-the-groan the-cause the-goldsmith asks to-whom he-answered that
optimi viri et sibi carissimi, scilicet Heinrici, sanguine illa
of-the-best man and to-himself dearest namely of-Henry with-the-blood that
torques deberet intingui. Aurifex audita silentio texit,
torque ought to-be-dipped the-goldsmith the-heard-things with-silence covered
et opere perfecto traditoque missionem petit et accipit;
and with-the-work finished and-handed-over leave seeks and receives
et obvians duci eunti ad ea negotia indicavit ei quae
and meeting the-duke going to those affairs disclosed to-him what
audivit. Ipse autem vehementer iratus vocat legatum pontificis,
he-heard he however vehemently angry calls the-envoy of-the-pontiff
qui iam pridem aderat invitandi eum gratia: 'Vade',
who already long-since was-present of-inviting him for-the-sake go
inquit, 'dic Hathoni, quia durius collum non gerit Heinricus
he-says tell Hatto that harder neck not bears Henry
quam Adelberhtus, et quia melius rati sumus domi
than Adalbert and that better thought we-have at-home
sedere et de eius servitio tractare quam comitatus nostri
to-sit and about his service to-treat than of-retinue our
multitudine modo eum gravare'. [Is, ut ferunt, Adelberhtus,
with-the-multitude now him to-burden he as they-say Adalbert
ab ipso quondam pontifice in fide susceptus, eius est
by the-very once pontiff into faith received his was
consilio deceptus; quod quia non probamus, numquam
by-counsel deceived which because not we-approve never
adfirmamus, sed vulgi rumore magis fictum credimus].
we-affirm but of-the-commons by-rumor rather invented we-believe
Et statim omnia quae iuris ipsius erant in omni Saxonia
and at-once all-things which of-the-right of-him were in all Saxony
vel Thuringorum terra occupavit. Burchardum quoque et
or of-the-Thuringians in-the-land he-occupied Burchard also and

Bardonem, quorum alter gener regis erat, in tantum
Bardo of-whom one the-son-in-law of-the-king was in so-much
afflixit et bellis frequentibus contrivit, ut terra cederent
he-afflicted and by-wars frequent wore-down that from-the-land they-yielded
eorumque omnem possessionem suis militibus divideret. Hatho
and-their all possession to-his soldiers he-divided Hatto
autem videns suis calliditatibus finem inpositum, nimia
however seeing to-his cunnings an-end put by-excessive
tristitia ac morbo pariter non post multos dies confectus
sadness and by-sickness equally not after many days worn-out
interiit. Fuerunt etiam qui dicerent, quia fulmine caeli
died there-were also those-who said that by-the-lightning of-heaven
tactus eoque ictu dissolutus diem post tertium defecisset.
touched and-by-that stroke dissolved the-day after the-third he-failed

I.23–27 · CONRAD'S DEATH AND HENRY'S ELECTION

The Saxons rout Conrad's brother Eberhard at Eresburg, and when Conrad besieges Henry at Grone, Thietmar tricks the king's envoys into thinking he has thirty legions. Conrad, dying, tells Eberhard that fortune and character are Henry's and sends him the royal insignia. At Fritzlar the Franks and Saxons make Henry king; he refuses anointing, saying it is for better men. He takes the submission of Burchard of Swabia and Arnulf of Bavaria.

XXIII. Rex autem misit fratrem cum exercitu in Saxoniam
XXIII the-king however sent the-brother with an-army into Saxony
eam devastandam. Qui appropians urbi quae dicitur Heresburg,
it to-be-laid-waste who approaching the-city which is-called Eresburg
superbe locutum tradunt, quia nichil ei maioris curae esset,
proudly to-have-spoken they-relate that nothing for-him of-greater care was
quam quod Saxones pro muris se ostendere non auderent,
than that the-Saxons before the-walls themselves to-show not dared

quo cum eis dimicare potuisset. Adhuc sermo in ore
in-order-that with them to-fight he-could still the-speech in mouth
eius erat, et ecce Saxones ei occurrerunt miliario uno ab
his was and behold the-Saxons him met at-a-milestone one from
urbe, et inito certamine tanta caede Francos multati sunt,
the-city and with-begun contest with-such slaughter the-Franks punished have
ut a mimis declamaretur, ubi tantus ille infernus esset, qui
that by mimes it-was-declaimed where so-great that hell might-be which
tantam multitudinem caesorum capere posset. Frater autem
so-great a-multitude of-the-slain to-hold could the-brother however
regis Evurhardus liberatus a timore absentiae Saxonum —
of-the-king Eberhard freed from the-fear of-the-absence of-the-Saxons
nam eos presentes vidit — et ab ipsis turpiter fugatus discessit.
for them present he-saw and by them shamefully routed departed
XXIIII. Audiens autem rex male pugnatum a fratre,
XXIIII hearing however the-king badly fought by the-brother
congregata omni virtute Francorum, perrexit ad requirendum
with-gathered all strength of-the-Franks proceeded for seeking
Heinricum. Quem compertum in presidio urbis quae
Henry whom found in the-garrison of-the-city which
dicitur Grona, temptavit illud obpugnare presidium. Et
is-called Grone he-tried that to-assault garrison and
missa legatione pro spontanea deditione spondet se per
with-sent embassy for voluntary surrender he-pledges himself through
hoc sibi amicum affuturum, non hostem experturum.
this to-him as-friend about-to-be not as-enemy about-to-prove
Huic legationi intervenit Thiatmarus ab oriente, vir
to-this embassy intervened Thietmar from the-east a-man
disciplinae militaris peritissimus, varius consilioque magnus,
of-discipline military most-skilled shifty and-in-counsel great
et qui calliditate ingenita multos mortales superaret. Hic
and who by-cunning inborn many mortals surpassed this-one

superveniens legatis regis presentibus interrogat, ubi
arriving with-the-envoys of-the-king present asks where
vellet exercitum castra metari. At ille iam suasus cedere
he-wished the-army the-camp to-measure-out but he already persuaded to-yield
Francis, accepit fiduciam, audiens de exercitu, credens ita
to-the-Franks took confidence hearing about the-army believing so
esse; Thiatmarus vero ficte loquebatur. Cum quinque enim
to-be Thietmar however falsely spoke with five for
tantummodo viris venerat. De numero autem legionum
only men he-had-come about the-number however of-legions
sciscitante duce, ad triginta fere legiones se producere
with-asking the-duke to thirty almost legions himself to-lead-out
posse respondit. Et ita delusi legati regressi sunt ad
to-be-able answered and thus deluded the-envoys returned have to
regem. Vicit vero eos calliditate sua Thiatmarus, quos ipse
the-king conquered however them by-cunning his Thietmar whom himself
dux ferro vincere non potuit Heinricus. Nam antelucanum
the-duke with-iron to-conquer not could Henry for before-dawn
relictis castris Franci, unusquisque rediit in sua.
with-left camp the-Franks each returned to his-own
XXV. Rex autem profectus in Boioariam dimicavit cum
XXV the-king however having-set-out into Bavaria fought with
Arnulfo, et ibi, ut quidam tradunt, vulneratus revertitur in
Arnulf and there as some relate wounded returns into
patriam suam. Cumque se morbo sensisset laborare pariter
homeland his and-when himself by-sickness he-felt to-labor equally
cum defectione primae fortunae, vocat fratrem, qui eum
with the-failing of-first fortune he-calls the-brother who him
visitandi gratia adierat, quemque ita alloquitur: 'Sentio',
of-visiting for-the-sake had-come and-whom thus he-addresses I-feel
inquit, 'frater, diutius me istam vitam tenere non posse,
he-says brother longer me this life to-hold not to-be-able

Deo, qui ordinavit ita, imperante, gravique morbo id
with-God who ordained so ordering and-with-heavy sickness it
cogente. Quapropter considerationem tui habeto, et quod
compelling wherefore consideration of-yourself have and what
ad te maxime respicit, Francorum toto regno consulito,
to you most looks of-the-Franks for-the-whole realm take-counsel
mei adtendendo, fratris tui, consilio. Sunt nobis, frater,
of-me attending of-brother your to-the-counsel there-are to-us brother
copiae exercitus congregandi atque ducendi, sunt urbes et
the-resources of-an-army of-gathering and of-leading there-are cities and
arma cum regalibus insigniis et omne quod decus regium
arms with the-royal insignia and all which glory royal
deposcit preter fortunam atque mores. Fortuna, frater, cum
demands except fortune and character fortune brother with
nobilissimis moribus Heinrico cedit, rerum publicarum secus
most-noble character to-Henry yields of-things public beside
Saxones summa est. Sumptis igitur his insigniis, lancea
the-Saxons the-sum is with-taken therefore these insignia the-lance
sacra, armillis aureis cum clamide et veterum gladio
holy with-the-bracelets golden with the-cloak and of-the-ancient with-the-sword
regum ac diademate, ito ad Heinricum, facito pacem cum
kings and with-the-diadem go to Henry make peace with
eo, ut eum foederatum possis habere in perpetuum.
him that him as-ally you-may-be-able to-have into perpetuity
Quid enim necesse est, ut cadat populus Francorum tecum
why for need is-it that should-fall the-people of-the-Franks with-you
coram eo? ipse enim vere rex erit et imperator multorum
before him he for truly king will-be and emperor of-many
populorum'. His dictis frater lacrimans se consentire
peoples with-these said the-brother weeping himself to-agree
respondit. Post haec autem rex ipse moritur, vir fortis
answered after these-things however the-king himself dies a-man brave

et potens, domi militiaque optimus, largitate serenus et
and mighty at-home and-at-war the-best in-generosity serene and
omnium virtutum insigniis clarus; sepeliturque in civitate sua
of-all virtues by-the-marks famous and-is-buried in city his
Wilinaburg, cum moerore ac lacrimis omnium Francorum.
Weilburg with grief and tears of-all the-Franks
XXVI. Ut ergo rex imperarat, Evurhardus adiit Heinricum
XXVI as therefore the-king had-ordered Eberhard went-to Henry
seque cum omnibus thesauris illi tradidit, pacem fecit,
and-himself with all treasures to-him handed-over peace made
amicitiam promeruit; quam fideliter familiariterque usque
friendship earned which faithfully and-familiarly until
in finem obtinuit. Deinde congregatis principibus et natu
to the-end he-held then with-gathered princes and by-birth
maioribus exercitus Francorum in loco qui dicitur Fridisleri,
the-greater of-the-army of-the-Franks in the-place which is-called Fritzlar
designavit eum regem coram omni populo Francorum atque
he-designated him king before all the-people of-the-Franks and
Saxonum. Cumque ei offerretur unctio cum diademate
of-the-Saxons and-when to-him was-offered the-anointing with the-diadem
a summo pontifice, qui eo tempore Hirigerus erat, non
by the-highest pontiff who at-that time Heriger was not
sprevit, nec tamen suscepit: 'Satis', inquiens, 'michi est,
he-spurned-it nor nevertheless took-it enough he-saying for-me it-is
ut pre maioribus meis rex dicar et designer, divina
that before ancestors my king I-be-called and be-designated with-divine
annuente gratia ac vestra pietate; penes meliores vero
nodding grace and your piety with better-men however
nobis unctio et diadema sit: tanto honore nos
than-us the-anointing and diadem let-it-be of-so-great honor ourselves
indignos arbitramur'. Placuit itaque sermo iste coram universa
unworthy we-judge pleased therefore speech this before the-whole

multitudine, et dextris in caelum levatis nomen novi
multitude and with-right-hands to heaven raised the-name of-the-new
regis cum clamore valido salutantes frequentabant.
king with shout strong greeting they-repeated
XXVII. Eo ordine rex factus Heinricus perrexit cum omni
XXVII in-that order king made Henry proceeded with all
comitatu suo ad pugnandum contra Burchardum ducem
retinue his for fighting against Burchard the-duke
Alamanniae. Hic cum esset bellator intolerabilis, sentiebat
of-Swabia he though he-was a-warrior unbearable felt
tamen, quia valde prudens erat, congressionem regis
nevertheless that very prudent he-was the-encounter of-the-king
sustinere non posse, tradidit semet ipsum ei cum
to-withstand not to-be-able he-handed-over himself self to-him with
universis urbibus et populo suo. Et rebus prospere gestis
all cities and people his and with-things prosperously done
transiit inde in Boioariam, cui presidebat Arnulfus dux.
he-crossed thence into Bavaria over-which presided Arnulf the-duke
Quo comperto in presidio urbis quae dicitur Reginesburg
with-whom learned in the-garrison of-the-city which is-called Regensburg
obsedit eum. Videns autem Arnulfus, quia resistere regi non
he-besieged him seeing however Arnulf that to-resist the-king not
sufficeret, apertis portis egressus est ad regem, tradito
he-sufficed with-opened gates gone-out has to the-king with-handed-over
semet ipso cum omni regno suo. Qui honorifice ab eo susceptus
himself self with all realm his who honorably by him received
amicus regis appellatus est. Rex autem de die in diem
the-friend of-the-king called was the-king however from day to day
proficiens et crescens, robustior maiorque ac clarior pollebat.
advancing and growing stronger and-greater and more-famous thrived
Cumque regnum sub antecessoribus suis ex omni parte
and-when the-realm under predecessors his from every part

confusum civilibus atque externis bellis colligeret, pacificaret et
confused by-civil and external wars he-gathered pacified and
adunaret, signa movit contra Galliam et Lotharii regnum.
united the-standards he-moved against Gaul and of-Lothar the-realm

I.28–32 · LOTHARINGIA AND THE NINE YEARS' PEACE

Widukind traces the division of Charles's empire and the rivalry of Odo and the Carolingians. Henry fights Charles, whom Hugh takes by a ruse; the Lotharingian Christian seizes Giselbert by trickery and sends him to Henry, who gives him his daughter Gerberga. Mathilda bears Otto, Henry, and Bruno, and the author traces her descent from the great Widukind. When the Hungarians lay Saxony waste, one of their princes is captured and brought to Henry, who trades him for nine years of peace.

XXVIII. Lotharius enim erat filius Hluthowici imperatoris a
XXVIII Lothar for was the-son of-Louis of-the-emperor from
Magno Karolo nati. Huic erant fratres Karolus et Hluthowicus.
the-Great Charles born to-him were brothers Charles and Louis
Karolo Aequitaniae et Wascanorum cessere regiones, terminum
to-Charles of-Aquitaine and of-the-Gascons fell the-regions as-boundary
habens ab occidente Barcillonam Hispaniae urbem, ab aquilone
having from the-west Barcelona of-Spain the-city from the-north
Brittannicum mare et ad meridiem iuga Alpium, ad orientem
the-British sea and to the-south the-ridges of-the-Alps to the-east
vero Masam fluvium. Inter Masam vero fluvium et Renum
however the-Meuse river between the-Meuse however river and the-Rhine
Lothario regnum cessit. Hluthowico autem a Reno usque
to-Lothar the-realm fell to-Louis however from the-Rhine all-the-way
ad fines Illirici et Pannoniae, Adoram quoque fluvium et
to the-borders of-Illyricum and of-Pannonia the-Eider also river and

terminos Danorum imperium erat. Sub his fratribus bellum
the-boundaries of-the-Danes the-rule was under these brothers a-war
famosum actum est in Phontinith, antequam haec divisio
famous waged was at Fontenoy before this division
regni fieret. Postea vero facta inviolabiliter mansit,
of-the-realm was-made afterward however made inviolably it-remained
quousque iure hereditario haec regna omnia cederent Karolo,
until by-right hereditary these realms all should-fall to-Charles
huius Lotharii proavo, de quo supra mentionem fecimus.
of-this Lothar the-great-grandfather of whom above mention we-made
XXVIIII. Hunc quidam ex orientalibus Francis adiens
XXVIIII him a-certain-man from the-eastern Franks approaching
nomine Oda, vir fortis et prudens, egitque consilio
by-name Odo a-man brave and prudent and-brought-about by-counsel
suo, ut cum Danis bene pugnaretur, qui iam multis annis
his that with the-Danes well it-was-fought who already for-many years
Karoli regnum vexabant, unaque die ex eis ad centum
of-Charles the-realm harried and-in-one day of them up-to a-hundred
milia caederentur. Ex hoc ille Oda clarus et insignis habitus
thousand were-slain from this he Odo famous and distinguished held
et a rege secundus significatus, cum ad eum venerit uno
and by the-king second marked since to him he-came with-one
tantum servulo comite contentus. Moriens autem Karolus
only little-servant as-companion content dying however Charles
iussit Odonem memorem beneficii sui fore, et misericordiam
ordered Odo mindful of-the-benefit his to-be and the-mercy
sibi prestitam filio, si nasceretur, non negaret. Nam
to-himself shown to-the-son if he-should-be-born not he-should-deny for
filius ei tunc non erat, sed regina pregnans fuit. Cumque
a-son to-him then not was but the-queen pregnant was and-when
post mortem patris filius nasceretur, Oda eum et regno
after the-death of-the-father the-son was-born Odo him both by-the-realm

pariter et nomine paterno declaravit. Sed Arnulfus imperator,
equally and by-the-name paternal declared but Arnulf the-emperor
qui seniorem Karolum Germania expulit, post mortem
who the-elder Charles from-Germany expelled after the-death
eius omne regnum ipsius sibi vendicavit. Huic Oda et
his all realm his for-himself claimed to-him Odo both
diadema et sceptrum et cetera regalia ornamenta obtulit,
the-diadem and the-scepter and the-other royal ornaments offered
imperiumque domini sui gratia imperatoris Arnulfi obtinuit.
and-the-rule of-lord his by-the-favor of-the-emperor Arnulf obtained
Unde usque hodie certamen est de regno Karolorum
whence until today strife there-is about the-realm of-the-Charleses
stirpi et posteris Odonis, concertatio quoque regibus
for-the-stock and for-the-posterity of-Odo the-contest also for-the-kings
Karolorum et orientalium Francorum super regno Lotharii.
of-the-Charleses and of-the-eastern Franks over the-realm of-Lothar
XXX. Ob quod Heinricus rex movit castra contra
XXX on-account-of which Henry the-king moved the-camp against
Karolum eiusque saepius fudit exercitum, iuvitque virum
Charles and-his often routed the-army and-helped the-man
fortem fortuna. Nam Huga, cuius pater Rodberhtus, filius
brave fortune for Hugh whose father Robert the-son
Odonis, ab exercitu Karoli occisus est, misit et dolo eum
of-Odo by the-army of-Charles killed was sent and by-guile him
cepit posuitque in custodia publica, donec vitam finiret.
captured and-placed-him in custody public until life he-should-end
Heinricus autem rex audiens casum Karoli dolebat
Henry however the-king hearing the-fall of-Charles grieved
humanaeque mutabilitatis communem admiratus est fortunam,
and-of-human of-mutability common wondered has fortune
quia non minori claruit religiositate quam armorum virtute.
because not with-less he-shone religiousness than of-arms valor

Iudicavitque abstinere quidem ab armis, verum potius arte
and-he-judged to-abstain indeed from arms but rather by-art
superaturos speravit Lotharios, quia gens varia erat et
about-to-overcome he-hoped the-Lotharingians because a-people shifty it-was and
artibus assueta, bellis prompta mobilisque ad rerum novitates.
to-arts accustomed for-wars ready and-fickle for of-things novelties
Eo tempore erat quidam de Lothariis nomine
at-that time there-was a-certain-man of the-Lotharingians by-name
Cristianus, qui videns regi cuncta prospere procedere,
Christian who seeing for-the-king all-things prosperously to-go
quaesivit, quomodo maiori gratia apud regem honoraretur;
sought how with-greater favor with the-king he-might-be-honored
et simulata infirmitate vocavit ad se Isilberhtum, cui
and with-feigned illness called to himself Giselbert to-whom
principatus regionis paterna successione cessit, cepitque eum
the-principate of-the-region by-paternal succession fell and-took him
arte et sub custodia regi Heinrico transmisit. Erat autem
by-art and under guard to-king Henry sent was however
Isilberhtus nobili genere ac familia antiqua natus. Quem
Giselbert of-noble race and family ancient born whom
rex satis laetus suscepit, quia per ipsum solum totum
the-king very glad received because through him alone the-whole
Lotharii regnum se habiturum arbitratus est. Deinde videns
of-Lothar realm himself about-to-have judged he-has then seeing
adolescentem valde industrium, genere ac potestate, divitiis
the-youth very industrious in-race and in-power in-riches
quoque clarum, liberaliter eum coepit habere, ac postremo
also famous generously him he-began to-hold and finally
desponsata sibi filia nomine Gerberga affinitate pariter cum
with-betrothed to-him daughter by-name Gerberga by-kinship equally with
amicitia iunxit eum sibi, sublegato omni ei Lotharii regno.
friendship joined him to-himself with-subjected all to-him of-Lothar realm

XXXI. Genuit quoque ei et alios filios clara et
XXXI bore also to-him also other sons the-famous and
nobilissima ac singularis prudentiae regina nomine Mahthilda,
most-noble and of-singular prudence queen by-name Mathilda
primogenitum mundi amorem nomine Oddonem, secundum
the-first-born of-the-world the-love by-name Otto the-second
patris nomine insignitum, virum fortem et industrium
of-the-father with-the-name marked a-man brave and industrious
Heinricum, tertium quoque nomine Brunonem, quem
Henry the-third also by-name Bruno whom
pontificis summi ac ducis magni vidimus officium gerentem.
of-pontiff highest and of-duke great we-have-seen the-office bearing
Ac ne quis eum culpabilem super hoc dixerit, cum
and lest anyone him blameworthy about this should-call since
Samuelem sanctum et alios plures sacerdotes pariter legamus
Samuel holy and other very-many priests equally we-read
et iudices. Aliam quoque filiam genuit, quae nupserat
and judges another also daughter she-bore who had-married
Hugoni duci. Erat namque ipsa domina regina filia
Hugh the-duke was for herself the-lady queen the-daughter
Thiadrici, cuius fratres erant Widukind, Immed et Reginbern.
of-Theodoric whose brothers were Widukind Immed and Reginbern
Reginbern autem ipse erat, qui pugnavit contra Danos multo
Reginbern however himself was who fought against the-Danes for-much
tempore Saxoniam vastantes, vicitque eos, liberans patriam
time Saxony laying-waste and-conquered them freeing the-homeland
ab illorum incursionibus usque in hodiernum diem. Et hi
from their incursions until to the-present day and these
erant stirpis magni ducis Widukindi, qui bellum potens
were of-the-stock of-the-great duke Widukind who war mighty
gessit contra Magnum Karolum per triginta ferme annos.
waged against the-Great Charles through thirty almost years

XXXII. Cumque iam civilia bella cessarent, iterum Ungarii
XXXII and-when now civil wars ceased again the-Hungarians
totam Saxoniam percurrentes urbes et oppida incendio
whole Saxony running-through cities and towns to-fire
tradiderunt et tantam caedem ubique egerunt, ut ultimam
delivered and so-great slaughter everywhere made that the-last
depopulationem comminarent. Rex autem erat in presidio
devastation they-threatened the-king however was in the-garrison
urbis quae dicitur Werlaon. Nam rudi adhuc militi et
of-the-city which is-called Werla for in-raw still soldiery and
bello publico insueto contra tam saevam gentem non
in-war public unaccustomed against so savage a-people not
credebat. Quantam autem stragem fecerint illis diebus aut
he-trusted how-great however slaughter they-made in-those days or
quanta monasteria succenderint, melius iudicavimus silere
how-many monasteries they-burned better we-have-judged to-be-silent
quam calamitates nostras verbis quoque iterare. Contigit
than calamities our in-words also to-repeat it-happened
autem quendam ex principibus Ungariorum capi
however a-certain-one of the-princes of-the-Hungarians to-be-captured
vinctumque ad regem duci. Ungarii vero ipsum in
and-bound to the-king to-be-led the-Hungarians however him in
tantum dilexerunt, ut pro redemptione illius innumera auri
so-much loved that for the-ransom of-him countless of-gold
et argenti pondera offerrent. Rex autem spernens aurum
and of-silver weights they-offered the-king however spurning gold
expostulat pacem, tandemque obtinuit, ut reddito captivo
demands peace and-at-last obtained that with-returned captive
cum aliis muneribus ad novem annos pax firmaretur.
with other gifts for nine years peace should-be-confirmed

An envoy of King Charles brings Henry the hand of Saint Denis. Widukind tells the passion of Saint Vitus, whose relics came to Saxony, after which the Franks declined and the Saxons rose. Henry settles every ninth man of the soldiery in towns, builds walls, takes Brandenburg in the winter ice and Gana, and makes the Bohemians tributary.

XXXIII. Quando vero rex Renum transierat ad dilatandum
XXXIII when however the-king the-Rhine had-crossed for extending
super Lotharios imperium suum, occurrit ei legatus
over the-Lotharingians empire his met him the-envoy
Karoli, et salutato eo verbis humillimis: 'Dominus
of-Charles and with-greeted him with-words most-humble lord
meus', inquit, 'Karolus, regia quondam potestate preditus,
my he-says Charles with-royal once power endowed
modo privatus, misit me ad te demandans, quia nichil
now private has-sent me to you sending-word that nothing
ei ab inimicis circumvento iocundius, nichil dulcius esse
to-him by enemies surrounded more-pleasant nothing sweeter to-be
possit quam de tui magnifici profectus gloria aliquid
could than about of-your magnificent advance the-glory something
audire, fama virtutum tuarum consolari. Et hoc tibi
to-hear by-the-report of-virtues your to-be-consoled and this to-you
signum fidei et veritatis transmisit'; protulitque de
a-sign of-faith and of-truth he-sent-across and-he-brought-forth from
sinu manum preciosi martyris Dionisii auro gemmisque
the-bosom the-hand of-the-precious martyr of-Denis in-gold and-gems
inclusam. 'Hoc', inquit, 'habeto pignus foederis perpetui et
enclosed this he-says have as-pledge of-treaty perpetual and
amoris vicarii. Hanc partem unici solatii Francorum Galliam
of-love vicarious this part of-the-sole solace of-the-Franks Gaul

inhabitantium, postquam nos deseruit insignis martyr Vitus
inhabiting after us deserted the-notable martyr Vitus
ad nostram perniciem vestramque perpetuam pacem Saxoniam
to our ruin and-your perpetual peace Saxony
visitavit, communicare tecum maluit. Neque enim, postquam
visited to-share with-you he-preferred nor for after
translatum est corpus eius a nobis, civilia vel externa
transferred was the-body his from us civil or external
cessavere bella; eodem quippe anno Dani et Northmanni
ceased wars in-the-same indeed year the-Danes and Northmen
regionem nostram invaserunt'. Rex autem munus divinum
region our invaded the-king however the-gift divine
cum omni gratiarum actione suscipiens prosternitur reliquiis
with all of-thanks giving receiving is-prostrated before-the-relics
sanctis et deosculans eas summa veneratione veneratus est.
holy and kissing them with-highest veneration venerated has
XXXIIII. Inclitus vero martyr, de quo legatus Karoli
XXXIIII the-famous however martyr about whom the-envoy of-Charles
disseruit, erat in Licia provincia nobili natus familia,
discoursed was in Lycia the-province of-noble born family
sed pagana. Quem pater presidi provinciae Valeriano
but pagan whom the-father to-the-governor of-the-province Valerian
presentavit, eumque ipse preses ad inmolandum simulacris
presented and-him the-very governor to sacrificing to-images
coegit; sed interea manum perdidit et oratione ipsius iterum
compelled but meanwhile the-hand he-lost and by-the-prayer his again
sanam recepit. Brachia tortoribus aruerunt, sed meritis
sound received the-arms of-the-torturers withered but by-the-merits
martyris restituta sunt eis. Videns autem pater, quia
of-the-martyr restored were to-them seeing however the-father that
tormenta irrisit, domum reduxit, cubiculo omnibus deliciis
the-torments he-mocked home he-led-back in-a-chamber with-all delights

affluenti reclusit. Ibi cum archana quaedam Hylas — sic
abounding he-shut-him-in there when secret certain-things Hylas so
enim vocabatur pater eius — conspiceret, caecus efficitur.
for was-called the-father his beheld blind he-is-made
Et coactus idolis abrenunciavit, Christum confessus est.
and compelled the-idols he-renounced Christ confessed has
Illuminatus autem per merita filii sui Viti Christum
enlightened however through the-merits of-the-son his Vitus Christ
negavit et filium interficere quaesivit. Monitu angelico
he-denied and the-son to-kill sought by-the-warning angelic
atque ductu Modestus, iam gravior pedagogus, puerum
and leading Modestus now older the-tutor the-boy
sumit, mare navigat, ad Siler fluvium pervenit. Ibi sub
takes the-sea sails to the-Sele river arrives there under
arbore quadam requiescentes vacant orationibus, aquilis
a-tree a-certain resting they-are-free for-prayers with-eagles
victum cotidianum ministrantibus. Populis eum visitantibus
food daily supplying with-the-peoples him visiting
puer predicat Christum, plures convertit, plures baptismum
the-boy preaches Christ many he-converts many baptism
suscipere fecit. Post haec a Diocletiano caesare vocatus
to-receive he-made after these-things by Diocletian the-caesar called
Romam proficiscitur, et filio imperatoris per orationem
to-Rome he-sets-out and with-the-son of-the-emperor through the-prayer
Viti a daemonio purgato, thura diis offerre cogitur.
of-Vitus from a-demon cleansed incense to-the-gods to-offer he-is-compelled
Illi vero durius imperatori respondente, bestiis proicitur
he however more-harshly to-the-emperor answering to-the-beasts is-thrown
nec laeditur. Deinde in medium clibani ardentis iactatur,
nor is-harmed then into the-middle of-a-furnace burning he-is-thrown
et angelo flammas sedante illaesus egreditur. Vinculorum
and with-an-angel the-flames calming unharmed he-comes-out of-chains

ingenti ferro oneratus carceri traditur, sed ibi a Domino
with-huge iron laden to-prison he-is-handed but there by the-Lord
et multitudine angelorum visitatur. Postremo tormento quod
and a-multitude of-angels he-is-visited at-last on-the-torture which
catasta dicitur cum Modesto et quadam nobili femina
the-catasta is-called with Modestus and a-certain noble woman
Crescentia figitur et fractis omnibus membrorum motibus
Crescentia he-is-fixed and with-broken all of-the-limbs the-motions
a Christo consolatur. Nam fulmine caeli tortores tacti
by Christ he-is-consoled for by-the-lightning of-heaven the-torturers struck
et tonitru ingenti perterriti ab eo fugantur. Subitoque
and by-thunder huge terrified from him are-put-to-flight and-suddenly
repertus est in loco, ubi prius orationi vacabat, angelo
found he-was in the-place where before to-prayer he-was-free with-the-angel
Domini ibi eum restituente; et ultima oratione celebrata
of-the-Lord there him restoring and with-the-last prayer celebrated
animas caelo tradiderunt. Corpora vero Florentia, quaedam
the-souls to-heaven they-handed-over the-bodies however Florentia a-certain
illustris femina, terrae tradidit in eodem loco qui dicitur
illustrious woman to-the-earth handed-over in the-same place which is-called
Marianus. Eius ultimam orationem tuae gloriae significare
Marianus his last prayer to-your glory to-signify
curavi, ut inde sumas, quo eius amore ardeas
I-have-taken-care that thence you-may-take whereby his with-love you-may-burn
et ardore ipsius amoris perpetuum eius patrocinium
and by-the-ardor of-that love the-perpetual his patronage
merearis. 'Domine', inquit, 'Iesu Christe, fili Dei vivi,
you-may-earn O-Lord he-says Jesus Christ son of-God living
perfice desiderium cordis eorum et libera eos ab omnibus
fulfill the-desire of-the-heart of-them and free them from all
inpedimentis huius saeculi et perduc eos ad gloriam tuam,
hindrances of-this age and lead them to glory your

qui pro me glorificant te et volunt gloriari de mei
who for me glorify you and wish to-glory in of-my
martyrii passione'. Hanc vocem subsecuta est sponsio divinae
martyrdom the-passion this voice followed has the-pledge of-the-divine
promissionis rata et firma esse omnia quae rogasset. Post
promise ratified and firm to-be all-things which he-had-asked after
multa vero tempora Romam veniens quidam Fulradus
many however times to-Rome coming a-certain-man Fulrad
nomine et ibi gesta legens preciosi martyris notavit locum
by-name and there the-acts reading of-the-precious martyr noted the-place
sepulcri. Veniensque levavit reliquias sacras et collocavit eas
of-the-tomb and-coming he-raised the-relics holy and placed them
in pago Parisiaco. Inde regnante Hluthowico imperatore
in the-district of-Paris thence with-reigning Louis the-emperor
translatae sunt in Saxoniam, et ut legatus Karoli confessus
transferred they-were into Saxony and as the-envoy of-Charles confessed
est, ex hoc res Francorum coeperunt minui, Saxonum
has from this the-affairs of-the-Franks began to-be-lessened of-the-Saxons
vero crescere, donec dilatatae ipsa sua iam magnitudine
however to-grow until spread by-its-very own now greatness
laborant, ut videmus in amore mundi et totius orbis
they-labor as we-see in the-love of-the-world and of-the-whole earth
capite, patre tuo, cuius potentiae maiestatem non solum
the-head the-father your of-whose power the-majesty not only
Germania, Italia atque Gallia, sed tota fere Europa non
Germany Italy and Gaul but whole almost Europe not
sustinet. Colito itaque tantum patronum, quo adveniente
bears worship therefore so-great a-patron by-whose coming
Saxonia ex serva facta est libera et ex tributaria multarum
Saxony from slave made was free and from tributary of-many
gentium domina. Neque enim talis ac tantus summi
peoples mistress nor for such and so-great of-the-highest

Dei amicus tui gratia indiget, nos vero famuli ipsius
God a-friend of-your favor needs we however the-servants his
indigemus. Unde ut eum possis habere intercessorem
need whence that him you-may-be-able to-have as-intercessor
apud caelestem imperatorem, habeamus te advocatum apud
with the-heavenly emperor may-we-have you as-advocate with
terrenum regem, tuum scilicet patrem atque fratrem.
the-earthly king your namely father and brother

XXXV. Igitur Heinricus rex accepta pace ab Ungariis
XXXV therefore Henry the-king with-received peace from the-Hungarians
ad novem annos quanta prudentia vigilaverit in munienda
for nine years with-how-great prudence he-watched in fortifying
patria et in expugnando barbaras nationes, supra nostram
the-homeland and in storming barbarous nations above our
est virtutem edicere, licet omnimodis non oporteat taceri.
is power to-tell although in-every-way not it-befits to-be-kept-silent
Et primum quidem ex agrariis militibus nonum quemque
and first indeed from the-rural soldiers the-ninth each-man
eligens in urbibus habitare fecit, ut ceteris confamiliaribus
choosing in the-cities to-dwell he-made that for-the-other fellow-household-members
suis octo habitacula extrueret, frugum omnium tertiam
his eight dwellings he-should-build of-the-crops of-all the-third
partem exciperet servaretque. Ceteri vero octo seminarent
part should-receive and-keep the-other however eight should-sow
et meterent frugesque colligerent nono et suis eas
and reap and-the-crops gather for-the-ninth and in-their them
locis reconderent. Concilia et omnes conventus atque convivia
places store councils and all assemblies and banquets
in urbibus voluit celebrari; in quibus extruendis die
in the-cities he-wished to-be-celebrated in which building by-day
noctuque operam dabant, quatinus in pace discerent, quid
and-night work they-gave so-that in peace they-might-learn what

contra hostes in necessitate facere debuissent. Vilia aut
against the-enemies in necessity to-do they-ought cheap or
nulla extra urbes fuere moenia. Tali lege ac disciplina
none outside the-cities were walls by-such law and discipline
cum cives assuefaceret, repente irruit super Sclavos qui
when the-citizens he-accustomed suddenly he-rushed upon the-Slavs who
dicuntur Hevelli, et multis eos preliis fatigans, demum
are-called Hevelli and in-many them battles wearying at-last
hieme asperrima castris super glaciem positis cepit urbem
in-winter most-harsh with-the-camp upon the-ice placed he-took the-city
quae dicitur Brennaburg fame ferro frigore. Cumque illa
which is-called Brandenburg by-hunger by-iron by-cold and-when of-that
urbe potitus omnem regionem signa vertit
city having-gained-possession all the-region the-standards he-turned
contra Dalamantiam, adversus quam iam olim reliquit ei
against Dalamantia against which already long-ago left to-him
pater militiam; et obsidens urbem quae dicitur Gana,
the-father the-soldiery and besieging the-city which is-called Gana
vicesima tandem die cepit eam. Preda urbis militibus
on-the-twentieth at-last day took it the-booty of-the-city to-the-soldiers
tradita, puberes omnes interfecti, pueri ac puellae captivitati
handed-over the-grown all killed the-boys and girls for-captivity
servatae. Post haec Pragam adiit cum omni exercitu,
kept after these-things Prague he-approached with all army
Boemiorum urbem, regemque eius in deditionem accepit; de
of-the-Bohemians the-city and-the-king its into surrender he-received about
quo quaedam mirabilia predicantur, quae quia non probamus,
whom certain wonders are-proclaimed which because not we-approve
silentio tegi iudicamus. Frater tamen erat Bolizlavi,
with-silence to-be-covered we-judge brother nevertheless he-was of-Boleslav

qui quamdiu vixit imperatori fidelis et utilis mansit. Igitur
who as-long-as he-lived to-the-emperor faithful and useful remained therefore
rex Boemias tributarias faciens reversus est in Saxoniam.
the-king the-Bohemians tributary making returned has into Saxony

I.36–38 · LENZEN AND RIADE

The Redarii revolt and destroy Walsleben; Bernard and Thietmar besiege Lenzen and, in a battle after a night of rain, drive the Slavs into the sea nearby, where none of the foot and very few horsemen survive. Otto marries the English king's daughter, sister of Æthelstan. Henry asks his people whether to pay the Hungarian tribute from the churches' treasure; they choose God, the Hungarians invade, and Henry routs them at Riade.

XXXVI. Cumque vicinae gentes a rege Heinrico factae
XXXVI and-when the-neighboring peoples by king Henry made
essent tributariae, Apodriti, Wilti, Hevelli, Dalamanci,
had-been tributary the-Abodrites the-Wilzi the-Hevelli the-Daleminzi
Boemi, Redarii, et pax esset, Redarii defecerunt a fide,
the-Bohemians the-Redarii and peace there-was the-Redarii defected from faith
et congregata multitudine inpetum fecerunt in urbem quae
and with-gathered multitude an-attack made on the-city which
dicitur Wallislevu ceperuntque eam, captis et interfectis
is-called Walsleben and-took it with-captured and killed
omnibus habitatoribus eius, innumerabili videlicet multitudine.
all inhabitants its countless namely multitude
Quo facto omnes barbarae nationes erectae iterum rebellare
which done all barbarous nations roused again to-rebel
ausae sunt. Ad quarum ferocitatem reprimendam traditur
dared have for their ferocity to-be-checked is-handed
exercitus cum presidio militari Bernhardo, cui ipsa
the-army with garrison military to-Bernard to-whom the-very

Redariorum provincia erat sublegata, additurque legato
of-the-Redarii province was subjected and-is-added to-the-legate
collega Thiatmarus, et iubentur urbem obsidere quae
as-colleague Thietmar and they-are-ordered the-city to-besiege which
dicitur Lunkini. Quinto obsidionis die venere custodes
is-called Lenzen on-the-fifth of-the-siege day came the-watchmen
exercitum barbarorum non longe esse adnuntiantes, et quia
the-army of-the-barbarians not far to-be announcing and that
nocte contigua inpetum in castra facere decrevissent.
in-the-night adjoining an-attack on the-camp to-make they-had-decided
Cumque plures eadem confirmarent, populus fidem paribus
and-when very-many the-same confirmed the-people faith to-equal
dabat dictis. Et cum conventus esset populi circa tentoria
gave sayings and when an-assembly there-was of-the-people around the-tents
legati, eadem hora collega dictante precepit, ut
of-the-legate at-the-same hour with-the-colleague dictating he-ordered that
per totam noctem parati essent, ne qua forte irruptio
through the-whole night ready they-should-be lest any perhaps irruption
barbarorum in castra fieret. Cum autem dimissa esset
of-the-barbarians into the-camp should-be-made when however dismissed was
multitudo, in castris variavere moestitia pariter atque laetitia,
the-multitude in the-camp they-varied with-sadness equally and gladness
aliis bellum formidantibus, aliis autem desiderantibus; et
with-some war fearing with-others however desiring and
pro qualitate morum inter spem metumque versabantur
according-to the-quality of-characters between hope and-fear were-turned
bellatores. Interea dies transit, et nox solito tenebrosior
the-warriors meanwhile the-day passes and night than-wonted darker
cum ingenti pluvia adest nutu divino, quatinus consilium
with huge rain is-present by-the-nod divine so-that the-counsel
pessimum inpediretur barbarorum. Ut ergo iussum est,
worst might-be-hindered of-the-barbarians as therefore ordered it-was

tota nocte illa armati erant Saxones, et primo diluculo
the-whole night that armed were the-Saxons and at-first dawn
dato signo sacramentoque accepto, primum ducibus, deinde
with-given signal and-with-oath taken first to-the-leaders then
unusquisque alteri operam suam sub iuramento promittebat
each to-the-other effort his under oath promised
ad presens bellum. Orto autem sole — nam post pluviam
for the-present war with-risen however sun for after rain
clara redit serenitas—, erectis signis procedebant castris.
bright returns serenity with-raised standards they-advanced from-the-camp
In prima quidem fronte legatus in barbaros inpetum faciens,
in the-first indeed front the-legate on the-barbarians an-attack making
sed cum pauci non prevalerent adversus innumerabiles,
but since the-few not prevailed against the-countless
reversus est ad exercitum referens, quia barbari non plures
returned has to the-army reporting that the-barbarians not more
haberent equites, peditum vero innumerabilem multitudinem
had horsemen of-foot however a-countless multitude
et nocturna pluvia in tantum inpeditam, ut vix ab
and by-the-nightly rain in so-much hindered that scarcely by
equitibus coacti ad pugnam procederent. Igitur sole
the-horsemen compelled to the-fight they-advanced therefore with-the-sun
cadente in humida vestimenta barbarorum, fumum ascendere
falling on the-wet clothes of-the-barbarians smoke to-rise
fecit usque in caelum, spem fiduciamque prestans Dei
made up-to into heaven hope and-confidence offering of-God
populo, cuius faciei claritas atque serenitas circumfulsit
to-the-people whose face the-brightness and serenity shone-around
illos. Igitur dato signo et exhortante legiones legato
them therefore with-given signal and with-exhorting the-legions the-legate
cum clamore valido irruunt in hostes. Cumque nimia
with shout strong they-rush on the-enemies and-when by-too-great

densitate iter pertranseundi hostes non pateret, dextra
density the-way of-passing-through the-enemies not lay-open on-the-right
laevaque ferro erumpentes, quoscumque a sociis
and-on-the-left with-iron breaking-out whomever from their-companions
secernebant, neci dabant. Cumque iam bellum gravaretur,
they-separated to-death they-gave and-when now the-war grew-heavy
et multi hinc atque inde caderent, et adhuc barbari
and many on-this-side and on-that fell and still the-barbarians
ordines tenerent, legatus collegam, ut legionibus auxilio
ranks held the-legate the-colleague that to-the-legions for-help
esset, expostulat. Ille vero prefectum cum quinquaginta
he-be demands he however a-prefect with fifty
armatis lateri hostili inmisit et ordines conturbavit;
armed-men on-the-flank hostile sent-in and the-ranks threw-into-confusion
ex hoc caedi fugaeque tota die hostes patebant. Cum
from this to-slaughter and-to-flight the-whole day the-enemies lay-open when
ergo per omnes agros caederentur, ad urbem vicinam
therefore through all fields they-were-slain to the-city neighboring
fugere temptabant. Collega autem hoc eis precavente,
to-flee they-tried with-the-colleague however this for-them forestalling
proximum mare ingressi sunt, et ita factum est, ut omnis
the-nearest sea entered they-have and thus done it-was that all
illa nimia multitudo aut gladio consumeretur aut in mari
that excessive multitude either by-sword was-consumed or in the-sea
mergeretur. Nec peditum ullus superfuit, equitum rarissimus,
was-drowned nor of-the-foot any survived of-the-horsemen very-few
deponiturque bellum cum casu omnium adversariorum.
and-is-laid-down the-war with the-fall of-all the-adversaries
Ingens interea oritur laetitia ex recenti victoria, dum omnes
huge meanwhile arises gladness from the-fresh victory while all
laudant duces, unusquisque vero militum predicat alium,
praise the-leaders each however of-the-soldiers proclaims another

ignavum quoque, ut in tali fortuna solet fieri. Postera
as-a-coward also as in such fortune is-wont to-happen on-the-next
autem luce movent signa urbi prefatae; urbani
however light they-move the-standards to-the-city aforesaid the-townsmen
vero arma deponunt, salutem tantummodo deposcunt ac
however arms lay-down safety only demand and
merentur. Inermes igitur urbe egredi iussi; servilis autem
deserve unarmed therefore from-the-city to-go-out ordered the-servile however
conditio et omnis pecunia cum uxoribus et filiis et
condition and all money with wives and sons and
omni suppellectili barbarorum regis captivitatem subibant.
all furniture of-the-barbarians of-the-king the-captivity underwent
Ceciderunt etiam ex nostris in illo prelio duo Liutharii et
fell also of ours in that battle two Liuthars and
alii nobiles viri nonnulli. Igitur legatus cum collega et aliis
other noble men some therefore the-legate with the-colleague and other
principibus Saxoniam victores reversi honorifice a rege sunt
princes to-Saxony victors returned honorably by the-king were
suscepti satisque laudati, qui parvis copiis divina favente
received and-much praised who with-small forces with-divine favoring
clementia magnificam perpetraverint victoriam. Nam fuere
clemency magnificent had-accomplished victory for there-were
qui dicerent barbarorum ducenta milia caesa. Captivi
those-who said of-the-barbarians two-hundred thousand slain the-captives
omnes postera die, ut promissum habebant, obtruncati.
all on-the-next day as promised they-had beheaded
XXXVII. Itaque recentis victoriae laetitiam augebant nuptiae
XXXVII therefore of-the-fresh victory the-gladness increased the-nuptials
regales, quae eo tempore magnifica largitate celebrabantur.
royal which at-that time with-magnificent largesse were-celebrated
Nam rex dedit filio suo Oddoni coniugem filiam
for the-king gave to-son his Otto as-wife the-daughter

Ethmundi regis Anglorum, sororem Adalstani; quae genuit
of-Edmund of-the-king of-the-English the-sister of-Æthelstan who bore
ei filium nomine Liudulfum, virum magnum meritoque
to-him a-son by-name Liudolf a-man great and-deservedly
omnibus populis carum, filiam quoque nomine Liudgardam,
to-all peoples dear a-daughter also by-name Liutgard
quae nupserat Cuonrado Francorum duci.
who had-married Conrad of-the-Franks the-duke
XXXVIII. Rex autem cum iam militem haberet equestri
XXXVIII the-king however since now soldiery he-had in-equestrian
prelio probatum, contra antiquos hostes, videlicet Ungarios,
battle proved against the-ancient enemies namely the-Hungarians
presumpsit inire certamen. Et convocato omni populo
presumed to-enter contest and with-summoned all the-people
tali oratione eos est affatus: 'Olim ex omni parte
with-such speech them he-has addressed once from every part
confusum a quantis periculis imperium vestrum modo sit
confused from how-great dangers empire your now is
liberum, vos ipsi melius nostis, qui civilibus discordiis et
free you yourselves better know who by-civil discords and
externis bellis totiens attriti laborabatis. At nunc propitia
external wars so-often worn-down labored but now propitious
nobis summa divinitate, nostro labore, vestra virtute pacatum
to-us the-highest divinity by-our labor by-your valor pacified
collectumque cernitis, barbaros superatos et servituti
and-gathered-together you-see the-barbarians overcome and to-servitude
subiectos. Quod superest, necesse habemus, ut contra
subjected what remains need we-have that against
communes hostes Avares pariter consurgamus. Vos hucusque,
the-common enemies the-Avars equally we-rise you hitherto
filios filiasque vestras expoliavi et aerarium eorum replevi;
sons and-daughters your I-have-despoiled and the-treasury of-them I-have-filled

nunc templa templorumque ministros ut expoliem cogor,
now the-temples and-of-the-temples the-ministers that I-despoil I-am-compelled
absque nudis corporibus nulla nobis alia remanente pecunia.
without bare bodies with-no to-us other remaining money
Consulite igitur vobis ipsis, et quid super hac re nobis
take-counsel therefore for-you yourselves and what about this matter by-us
sit faciendum, eligite. Thesaurum divinis officiis sanctificatum
is to-be-done choose the-treasure for-divine offices sanctified
tollamne et dabo pro nostra redemptione Dei inimicis?
shall-I-take and shall-I-give for our redemption of-God to-the-enemies
an certe addam cultui divino pecunia honorem, ut
or certainly shall-I-add to-the-worship divine with-money honor that
ab ipso potius redimamur, qui vere noster extat creator
by him rather we-may-be-redeemed who truly our stands creator
pariter et redemptor?' Ad haec populus levavit voces
equally and redeemer to these-things the-people raised voices
in caelum, inquiens se a Deo vivo et vero redimi
to heaven saying themselves by God living and true to-be-redeemed
omnimodis desiderare, quia fidelis et iustus sit in omnibus
in-every-way to-desire because faithful and just he-is in all
viis suis et sanctus in omnibus operibus suis. Operam
ways his and holy in all works his effort
suam deinde promittens regi contra gentem acerrimam,
its then promising to-the-king against the-people most-fierce
dextris in caelum elevatis pactum firmavit. Tali itaque
with-right-hands to heaven raised the-pact it-confirmed with-such therefore
pacto cum populo peracto dimisit rex multitudinem. Post
pact with the-people concluded dismissed the-king the-multitude after
haec legati Ungariorum adierunt regem pro solitis
these-things the-envoys of-the-Hungarians went-to the-king for the-wonted
muneribus, sed ab eo spreti in terram suam vacui sunt
gifts but by him spurned into land their empty have

reversi. Haec audientes Avares, nichil morati cum gravi
returned these-things hearing the-Avars nothing delaying with heavy
hostilique manu festinant intrare Saxoniam. Et iter agentes
and-hostile band hasten to-enter Saxony and the-way making
per Dalamantiam ab antiquis opem petunt amicis. Illi
through Dalamantia from the-old help they-seek friends they
vero scientes eos festinare ad Saxoniam Saxonesque ad
however knowing them to-hasten to Saxony and-the-Saxons for
pugnandum cum eis paratos, pinguissimum pro munere eis
fighting with them ready a-very-fat for gift to-them
proiciunt canem. Et cum non esset iniuriam vindicandi
they-throw dog and since not there-was the-wrong of-avenging
locus ad aliam pugnam festinantibus, cum ridiculosa satis
room to another fight for-those-hastening with ridiculous enough
vociferatione longius prosequuntur amicos. Igitur quam
shouting further they-escort the-friends therefore as
potuerunt repentino inpetu intrant fines Thuringorum,
they-could with-sudden onset they-enter the-borders of-the-Thuringians
illam totam terram hostiliter pervagantes. Ibique divisis
that whole land hostilely roaming-through and-there with-divided
sociis alii ad occidentem pergebant, ab occidente et
companions some to the-west went from the-west and
meridie Saxoniam quaerentes intrare. Sed Saxones pariter cum
south Saxony seeking to-enter but the-Saxons together with
Thuringis congregati inito cum eis certamine, caesis
the-Thuringians gathered with-entered with them contest with-slain
ducibus, ceteros illius exercitus occidentalis per totam illam
leaders the-rest of-that army western through whole that
regionem errare fecerunt. Quorum alii fame consumpti, alii
region to-wander made of-whom some by-hunger consumed others
frigore dissoluti, alii autem caesi vel capti, ut digni erant,
by-cold dissolved others however slain or captured as worthy they-were

miserabiliter perierunt. Qui autem in oriente remansit exercitus
wretchedly perished which however in the-east remained army
audivit de sorore regis, quae nupserat Widoni Thuringo
heard about the-sister of-the-king who had-married Wido the-Thuringian
— erat namque illa ex concubina nata—, quia vicinam
was for she from a-concubine born that a-neighboring
urbem inhabitaret, et multa pecunia ei esset auri et
city she-inhabited and much money to-her there-was of-gold and
argenti; unde tanta vi urbem obpugnare coeperant, ut, nisi
of-silver whence with-such force the-city to-assault they-began that unless
nox visum pugnantibus inpediret, urbem caperent. Ea
night sight to-the-fighters hindered the-city they-would-have-taken that
vero nocte audientes de casu sociorum regisque super
however night hearing about the-fall of-the-companions and-of-the-king upon
eos adventu cum valido exercitu — nam castra metatus
them the-coming with strong army for camp measured-out
est rex iuxta locum qui dicitur Riade—, timore perculsi
has the-king near the-place which is-called Riade by-fear struck
relictis castris more suo igne fumoque ingenti agmina
with-left camp in-manner their by-fire and-smoke huge the-columns
diffusa collegerunt. Rex vero postera die producens
scattered they-gathered the-king however on-the-next day leading-out
exercitum exhortatus est, ut spem suam divinae clementiae
the-army exhorted has that hope their to-the-divine clemency
committerent, divinum sibi auxilium quemadmodum in
they-should-commit divine for-themselves help as in
aliis preliis adesse non dubitarent; communes omnium
other battles to-be-present not they-should-doubt common of-all
hostes esse Ungarios; ad vindictam patriae parentumque
enemies to-be the-Hungarians for the-vengeance of-homeland and-of-parents
solummodo cogitarent: hostes cito terga vertere vidissent,
only they-should-think the-enemies quickly backs to-turn they-would-see

si viriliter certando persisterent. His optimis verbis erecti
if manfully by-contending they-persisted by-these best words roused
milites imperatoremque in primis, mediis et ultimis versantem
the-soldiers and-the-commander in the-first middle and last moving
videntes coramque eo angelum — hoc enim vocabulo
seeing and-before him the-angel this for by-name
effigieque signum maximum erat insignitum — acceperunt
and-likeness the-standard greatest was marked they-took
fiduciam magnamque constantiam. Rex vero veritus est,
confidence and-great constancy the-king however feared has
quemadmodum evenit, ut hostes viso milite armato
as happened that the-enemies with-seen soldiery armed
fugae statim indulsissent; misit legionem Thuringorum
to-flight at-once would-give-themselves he-sent a-legion of-Thuringians
cum raro milite armato, ut inermes prosequerentur et
with scant soldiery armed that the-unarmed they-might-pursue and
usque ad exercitum protraherentur. Actumque est ita; sed
up-to to the-army be-drawn and-done it-was so but
nichilominus videntes exercitum armatum fugerunt, ut
nonetheless seeing the-army armed they-fled so-that
per octo miliaria vix pauci caederentur vel caperentur.
through eight miles scarcely few were-slain or captured
Castra vero invasa, et omnis captivitas liberata est.
the-camp however invaded and all the-captivity freed was

Henry, hailed father of his country and emperor, gives the tribute to the poor and the churches, defeats the Danes and has their king Chnuba baptized, and is honored by foreign princes. Falling ill, he designates Otto his successor and divides his treasure among his other sons; he dies after sixteen years' reign and is buried at Quedlinburg.

XXXVIIII. Rex vero victor reversus modis omnibus
XXXVIIII the-king however victor returned in-ways all
gratiarum actiones divino honori, ut dignum erat, solvebat
of-thanks the-givings to-the-divine honor as worthy it-was paid
pro victoria de hostibus sibi divinitus concessa, tributumque,
for the-victory over the-enemies to-him divinely granted and-the-tribute
quod hostibus dare consuevit, divino cultui mancipavit
which to-the-enemies to-give he-had-been-wont to-the-divine worship he-made-over
et largitionibus pauperum deservire constituit. Deinde pater
and to-the-largesses of-the-poor to-serve he-appointed then father
patriae, rerum dominus imperatorque ab exercitu appellatus
of-the-homeland of-things lord and-emperor by the-army called
famam potentiae virtutisque cunctis gentibus et regibus longe
the-fame of-power and-of-valor to-all peoples and kings far
lateque diffudit. Unde et aliorum regnorum proceres eum
and-wide he-spread whence also of-other realms the-nobles him
adierunt, gratiamque in conspectu eius invenire quaerentes,
went-to and-favor in the-sight his to-find seeking
fidem talis ac tanti viri probatam habentes dilexerunt. Inter
the-faith of-such and so-great a-man proved having loved-him among
quos Hiriberhtus gener Hugonis, cum ei adversaretur
whom Heribert brother-in-law of-Hugh since him opposed
Rothulfus, contra ius fasque omne rex constitutus, ut ei
Rudolf against right and-law all king set-up that for-him

apud dominum suum pro presidio esset, supplicavit. Ipse
with lord his for defense he-might-be begged he
enim rex talis erat, qui nichil negaret amicis. Perrexit igitur
for the-king such was who nothing denied to-friends proceeded therefore
Galliam, rex regem alloquitur, et perfecto negotio reversus
to-Gaul the-king the-king he-addresses and with-finished business returned
est in Saxoniam. Cumque esset in exaltando gentem suam,
has into Saxony and-when he-was in exalting people his
rarus fuit aut nullus nominatorum virorum in omni Saxonia,
rare was or none of-named men in all Saxony
quem preclaro munere aut officio vel aliqua quaestura non
whom with-brilliant gift or office or some magistracy not
promoveret. Et cum ingenti polleret prudentia sapientiaque,
he-advanced and while with-huge he-was-strong prudence and-wisdom
accessit et moles corporis, regiae dignitati omnem addens
was-added also the-bulk of-body to-the-royal dignity all adding
decorem. In exercitiis quoque ludi tanta eminentia superabat
beauty in the-exercises also of-sport with-such eminence he-surpassed
omnes, ut terrorem caeteris ostentaret. In venatione tam
all that terror to-the-others he-displayed in hunting so
acerrimus erat, ut una vice quadraginta aut eo amplius
most-keen he-was that at-one time forty or than-that more
feras caperet. Et licet in conviviis satis iocundus esset, tamen
beasts he-took and although at banquets very pleasant he-was nevertheless
nichil regalis disciplinae minuebat. Tantum enim favorem
nothing of-royal discipline he-lessened so-much for favor
pariter et timorem militibus infundebat, ut etiam ludenti
equally and fear into-the-soldiers he-poured that even to-him-playing
non crederent ad aliquam lasciviam se dissolvendum.
not they-believed to any wantonness himself to-be-loosed

XL. Cum autem omnes in circuitu nationes subiecisset,
XL when however all in circuit nations he-had-subjected
Danos, qui navali latrocinio Fresones incursabant, cum
the-Danes who by-naval robbery the-Frisians attacked with
exercitu adiit vicitque, et tributarios faciens, regem eorum
an-army he-went-to and-conquered and tributary making the-king their
nomine Chnubam baptismum percipere fecit. Perdomitis
by-name Chnuba baptism to-receive made with-thoroughly-subdued
itaque cunctis circumquaque gentibus, postremo Romam
therefore all round-about peoples at-last to-Rome
proficisci statuit, sed infirmitate correptus iter intermisit.
to-set-out he-decided but by-sickness seized the-journey he-broke-off
XLI. Cumque se iam gravari morbo sensisset,
XLI and-when himself now to-be-weighed-down by-sickness he-had-felt
convocato omni populo designavit filium suum Oddonem
with-summoned all the-people he-designated son his Otto
regem, caeteris quoque filiis predia cum thesauris distribuens;
as-king to-the-other also sons estates with treasures distributing
ipsum vero Oddonem, qui maximus et optimus fuit,
him however Otto who greatest and best was
fratribus et omni Francorum imperio prefecit. Testamento
over-the-brothers and all of-the-Franks the-empire he-set-over with-testament
itaque legitime facto et rebus omnibus rite compositis
therefore lawfully made and with-things all duly arranged
defunctus est ipse rerum dominus et regum maximus
died has he of-things the-lord and of-kings the-greatest
Europae, omni virtute animi corporisque nulli secundus,
of-Europe in-every virtue of-mind and-body to-none second
relinquens filium sibi ipsi maiorem filioque magnum
leaving a-son than-himself himself greater and-to-the-son a-great
latumque imperium, non a patribus sibi relictum, sed per
and-wide empire not by fathers to-him left but through

semet ipsum adquisitum et a solo Deo concessum. Erant
himself self acquired and by alone God granted were
autem dies quibus regnavit XVI anni, vitae autem fere LX.
however the-days in-which he-reigned sixteen years of-life however about sixty
Translatum est autem corpus eius a filiis suis in civitatem
transferred was however the-body his by sons his into the-city
quae dicitur Quidilingaburg et sepultum in basilica sancti
which is-called Quedlinburg and buried in the-basilica of-saint
Petri ante altare cum planctu et lacrimis plurimarum gentium.
Peter before the-altar with lament and tears of-very-many peoples

Incipit secundus gestarum rerum Saxonicarum. Ad dominam Mahthildam imperatoris filiam libri secundi incipit prephatio

PREFACE TO BOOK TWO

Widukind begins a huge work, already largely done, and asks Mathilda, mistress of all Europe, to uphold it with her favor and pardon what is unfit in it.

Ingens opus coepturus vel certe iteraturus — nam magna
a-huge work about-to-begin or certainly about-to-repeat for in-great
ex parte peractum est — tua gratia fulciatur, quae
from part done it-is by-your favor let-it-be-propped who
domina esse dinosceris iure totius Europae; quamquam
lady to-be are-recognized by-right of-the-whole of-Europe although
in Africam Asiamque patris tui iam potestas protendatur.
into Africa and-Asia of-father your now the-power is-extended
Spero enim, quicquid in eo invenitur minus idoneum,
I-hope for whatever in it is-found less fit
gloriosa tuae clementiae lenitate sublevetur, permaneatque
by-the-glorious of-your clemency mildness may-be-lifted and-may-remain
ea devotione dedicatum, qua est inceptum.
with-that devotion dedicated with-which it-is begun

Incipiunt capitula

THE CHAPTERS OF BOOK TWO

Kehr's list of the forty-one chapters of Book Two, from Otto's coronation at Aachen to the death of Queen Edith.

I. De conventu populi ad Aquasgrani palatii et electione
I about the-assembly of-the-people at Aachen of-the-palace and the-election
novi regis eiusque unctione.
of-the-new king and-his anointing

II. De ministerio regali et de principibus eius.
II about the-ministry royal and about the-princes his

III. De bello contra Bolizlavum facto.
III about the-war against Boleslav waged

IIII. De expeditione regis in barbaras nationes.
IIII about the-expedition of-the-king against barbarous nations

V. De Ungariis.
V about the-Hungarians

VI. De intestinis bellis.
VI about internal wars

VII. De reliquiis Innocentii martyris.
VII about the-relics of-Innocent the-martyr

VIII. De Arnulfo Boioariorum duce.
VIII about Arnulf of-the-Bavarians the-duke

VIIII. De Sifrido et Thancmaro regis filio.
VIIII about Siegfried and Thankmar of-the-king the-son

X. De dissensione et legum varietate.
X about the-dissension and of-laws the-variety

XI. De Thancmaro et Evurhardo et Heinrico et bellis
XI about Thankmar and Eberhard and Henry and the-wars
civilibus.
civil

XII. De Heinrico fratre regis.

XII about Henry the-brother of-the-king

XIII. De Evurhardo, qualiter veniam promeretur.

XIII about Eberhard how pardon he-earns

XIIII. Item de Ungariis, qualiter non sine suo gravi vulnere recedunt.

XIIII likewise about the-Hungarians how not without their heavy wound they-withdraw

XV. Qualiter Heinricus ardet cupiditate regnandi.

XV how Henry burns with-desire of-reigning

XVI. De Hisbertho Lothariorum duce.

XVI about Giselbert of-the-Lotharingians the-duke

XVII. De bello Biertanico.

XVII about the-battle of-Birten

XVIII. Qualiter Dadi milites Heinrici callide ad regem convertit.

XVIII how Dadi the-soldiers of-Henry cunningly to the-king turned

XVIIII. Heinricus revertitur in Saxoniam et victus a rege discedit.

XVIIII Henry returns into Saxony and conquered by the-king departs

XX. Qualiter barbari Geronem interficere querunt et multis diebus bellum protraxerunt.

XX how the-barbarians Gero to-kill seek and for-many days the-war drew-out

XXI. De Slavo, qui a rege Heinrico relictus erat.

XXI about the-Slav who by king Henry left had-been

XXII. Qualiter exercitus regis contra Heinricum ducitur.

XXII how the-army of-the-king against Henry is-led

XXIII. De Immone et Hisbertho.

XXIII about Immo and Giselbert

XXIIII. De Evurhardo et Hisbertho.

XXIIII about Eberhard and Giselbert

XXV. De pontificibus Frithurico et Rothardo.

XXV about the-bishops Frederick and Ruthard

XXVI. De nece ducum Evurhardi et Hisberthi.

XXVI about the-death of-the-dukes Eberhard and Giselbert

XXVII. Item de Immone.

XXVII likewise about Immo

XXVIII. De nepotibus Isberthi et Ansfrido et Arnaldo.

XXVIII about the-nephews of-Giselbert and Ansfrid and Arnold

XXVIIII. Qualiter Heinricus veniam promeretur.

XXVIIII how Henry pardon he-earns

XXX. De Gerone preside.

XXX about Gero the-governor

XXXI. Item de Heinrico, qualiter multi cum eo adversus regem coniurabant.

XXXI likewise about Henry how many with him against the-king conspired

XXXII. De portentis.

XXXII about portents

XXXIII. De Oddone Lothariorum preside.

XXXIII about Otto of-the-Lotharingians the-governor

XXXIIII. De Berhtaldo Arnulfi fratre.

XXXIIII about Berthold of-Arnulf the-brother

XXXV. Qualiter Hugonem armis alterum edomuit.

XXXV how Hugh in-arms the-other he-tamed

XXXVI. De concordia fratrum et moribus eorum et habitu.

XXXVI about the-concord of-the-brothers and manners their and bearing

XXXVII. De persecutione monachorum.

XXXVII about the-persecution of-monks

XXXVIII. De Athumaro abbate.

XXXVIII about Hadamar the-abbot

XXXVIIII. De Luthuwico rege et filiis eius.

XXXVIIII about Louis the-king and sons his

XL. De obsidibus Bolizlavi.

XL about the-hostages of-Boleslav

XLI. De obitu Edidis regine.

XLI about the-death of-Edith the-queen

Incipit liber secundus

II.1–3 · THE CORONATION AT AACHEN

The dukes enthrone Otto in the colonnade of Charles's church at Aachen, and Archbishop Hildibert presents him to the people, who raise their hands in assent. Hildibert gives him sword, cloak, scepter, and staff with their meanings; he and Wichfrid anoint and crown him; at the banquet the dukes serve him. Boleslav kills his brother; Asic's Saxons beat his men, but he surprises them and destroys them.

I. Defuncto itaque patre patriae et regum maximo
I with-dead therefore the-father of-the-homeland and of-kings the-greatest
optimo Heinrico omnis populus Francorum atque Saxonum
best Henry all the-people of-the-Franks and of-the-Saxons
iam olim designatum regem a patre, filium eius Oddonem,
now long-ago designated as-king by the-father son his Otto
elegit sibi in principem. Universalisque electionis notantes
chose for-themselves as prince and-of-the-universal election marking
locum iusserunt esse ad Aquasgrani palatii. Est autem locus
the-place they-ordered it-to-be at Aachen of-the-palace is however place
ille proximus Iulo, a conditore Iulio Caesare cognominato.
that nearest to-Jülich from the-founder Julius Caesar surnamed
Cumque illo ventum esset, duces ac prefectorum principes
and-when there come it-had-been the-dukes and of-the-prefects the-princes
cum caetera principum militum manu congregati in sixto
with the-rest of-princes of-soldiers band gathered in the-colonnade
basilicae Magni Karoli cohaerenti collocarunt novum
of-the-basilica of-the-Great Charles joined placed the-new
ducem in solio ibidem constructo, manus ei dantes ac
duke on a-throne there built hands to-him giving and
fidem pollicentes operamque suam contra omnes inimicos
faith promising and-effort their against all enemies

spondentes, more suo fecerunt eum regem. Dum ea
pledging in-the-manner their made him king while these-things
geruntur a ducibus ac caetero magistratu, pontifex maximus
are-done by the-dukes and the-rest magistracy the-pontiff greatest
cum universo sacerdotali ordine et omni plebe infra
with the-whole priestly order and all the-commons below
in basilica prestolabatur processionem novi regis. Quo
in the-basilica awaited the-procession of-the-new king with-whom
procedente pontifex obvius laeva sua dexteram tangit
advancing the-pontiff meeting-him with-left his the-right-hand touches
regis, suaque dextera lituum gestans, linea indutus,
of-the-king and-with-his right the-crozier bearing in-linen clad
stola planetaque infulatus, progressusque in medium usque
in-stole and-chasuble mitered and-having-advanced into the-middle up-to
fani subsistit; et reversus ad populum, qui circumstabat
of-the-shrine halts and turned to the-people which stood-around
— nam erant deambulatoria infra supraque in illa basilica
for there-were galleries below and-above in that basilica
in rotundum facta—, quo ab omni populo cerni posset:
in round made where by all the-people to-be-seen be-could
'En', inquit, 'adduco vobis a Deo electum et a domino
behold he-says I-bring to-you by God chosen and by the-lord
rerum Heinrico olim designatum, nunc vero a cunctis
of-things Henry once designated now however by all
principibus regem factum Oddonem; si vobis ista electio
the-princes king made Otto if to-you this election
placeat, dextris in caelum levatis significate'. Ad haec
be-pleasing with-right-hands to heaven raised signify to these-things
omnis populus dextras in excelsum levans cum clamore
all the-people the-right-hands on high raising with shout
valido inprecati sunt prospera novo duci. Proinde procedit
strong invoked have prosperity on-the-new duke then advances

pontifex cum rege tunica stricta more Francorum
the-pontiff with the-king in-a-tunic close-fitting in-the-manner of-the-Franks
induto pone altare, super quod insignia regalia posita erant,
clad behind the-altar upon which the-insignia royal placed had-been
gladius cum balteo, clamis cum armillis, baculus cum sceptro
the-sword with the-belt the-cloak with the-bracelets the-staff with the-scepter
ac diadema. Eo quippe tempore erat summus pontifex
and the-diadem at-that indeed time was the-highest pontiff
nomine Hildiberhtus, Franco genere, monachus professione,
by-name Hildibert a-Frank by-race a-monk by-profession
nutritus vel doctus in Vuldo monasterio, et ad id honoris
reared or taught in Fulda monastery and to that of-honor
merito progrediens, ut pater eiusdem loci constitueretur,
by-merit advancing that father of-the-same place he-was-set-up
deinde summi pontificatus Mogontiacae sedis fastigium
then of-the-highest pontificate of-the-Mainz see the-summit
promeruisset. Hic erat vir mirae sanctitatis et preter
he-had-earned this-one was a-man of-wondrous holiness and besides
naturalem animi sapientiam litterarum studiis satis clarus. Qui
the-natural of-mind wisdom of-letters in-studies very famous who
inter caetera gratiarum dona spiritum prophetiae accepisse
among the-other of-graces gifts the-spirit of-prophecy to-have-received
predicatur. Et cum quaestio esset pontificum in consecrando
is-proclaimed and when the-question was of-the-pontiffs in consecrating
rege, Treverensis videlicet et Coloniae Agrippinae — illius,
the-king of-Trier namely and of-Cologne Agrippina of-that-one
quia antiquior sedes esset et tamquam a beato Petro apostolo
because older see it-was and as-if by blessed Peter the-apostle
fundata; istius vero, quia eius ad diocesim pertineret
founded of-this-one however because his to diocese belonged
locus: et ob id sibi convenire arbitrati sunt
the-place and on-account-of this to-themselves to-belong judged they-have

huius consecrationis honorem—, cessit tamen uterque eorum
of-this consecration the-honor yielded nevertheless each of-them
Hildiberhti cunctis notae almitati. Ipse autem accedens
of-Hildibert to-all known to-the-kindness he however approaching
ad altare et sumpto inde gladio cum balteo, conversus
to the-altar and with-taken thence the-sword with the-belt turned
ad regem ait: 'Accipe', inquit, 'hunc gladium, quo
to the-king says take he-says this sword with-which
eicias omnes Christi adversarios, barbaros et malos
you-may-cast-out all of-Christ the-adversaries barbarians and bad
Christianos, auctoritate divina tibi tradita omni potestate
Christians by-the-authority divine to-you handed-over with-all power
totius imperii Francorum, ad firmissimam pacem omnium
of-the-whole empire of-the-Franks for the-firmest peace of-all
Christianorum'. Deinde sumptis armillis ac clamide induit
Christians then with-taken bracelets and cloak he-clothes
eum: 'His cornibus', inquit, 'humitenus demissis monearis,
him by-these corners he-says to-the-ground let-down may-you-be-warned
quo zelo fidei ferveas, et in pace tuenda perdurare
with-what zeal of-faith you-should-burn and in peace defending to-persevere
usque in finem debere'. Exinde sumpto sceptro baculoque:
up-to to the-end you-ought then with-taken scepter and-staff
'His signis', inquit, 'monitus paterna castigatione subiectos
by-these signs he-says warned with-paternal chastisement the-subjects
corripias, primumque Dei ministris, viduis ac pupillis
may-you-correct and-first of-God to-the-ministers to-widows and orphans
manum misericordiae porrigas; numquamque de capite
the-hand of-mercy may-you-stretch-out and-never from head
tuo oleum miserationis deficiat, ut in presenti et in futuro
your the-oil of-compassion may-fail that in the-present and in the-future
sempiterno premio coroneris'. Perfususque ilico oleo
with-everlasting reward you-may-be-crowned and-anointed at-once with-oil

sancto et coronatus diademate aureo ab ipsis pontificibus
holy and crowned with-the-diadem golden by the-very pontiffs
Hildiberhto et Wichfrido, ac omni legitima consecratione
Hildibert and Wichfrid and with-all lawful consecration
completa, ab eisdem pontificibus ducitur ad solium, ad quod
completed by the-same pontiffs he-is-led to the-throne to which
per cocleas adscendebatur, et erat inter duas marmoreas
by spiral-stairs one-climbed and it-was between two marble
mirae pulchritudinis columpnas constructum, unde ipse
of-wondrous beauty columns built whence he
omnes videre et ab omnibus ipse videri posset.
all might-see and by all he to-be-seen could
II. Divina deinde laude dicta sacrificioque sollempniter
II with-divine then praise said and-with-the-sacrifice solemnly
celebrato descendebat rex ad palatium, et accedens ad
celebrated descended the-king to the-palace and approaching to
mensam marmoream regio apparatu ornatam resedit cum
the-table marble with-royal splendor adorned sat-down with
pontificibus et omni populo; duces vero ministrabant.
the-pontiffs and all the-people the-dukes however served
Lothariorum dux Isilberhtus, ad cuius potestatem locus ille
of-the-Lotharingians the-duke Giselbert to whose power place that
pertinebat, omnia procurabat; Evurhardus mensae preerat,
belonged all-things managed Eberhard over-the-table presided
Herimannus Franco pincernis, Arnulfus equestri
Hermann the-Frank over-the-cupbearers Arnulf over-the-equestrian
ordini et eligendis locandisque castris preerat; Sigifridus
order and of-choosing and-placing the-camp presided Siegfried
vero, Saxonum optimus et a rege secundus, gener
however of-the-Saxons the-best and from the-king second the-son-in-law
quondam regis, tunc vero affinitate coniunctus, eo
once of-the-king then however by-kinship joined at-that

tempore procurabat Saxoniam, ne qua hostium interim
time managed Saxony lest any of-the-enemies meanwhile
irruptio accidisset, nutriensque iuniorem Heinricum secum
irruption should-occur and-rearing the-younger Henry with-himself
tenuit. Rex autem post haec unumquemque principum
kept the-king however after these-things each of-the-princes
iuxta munificentiam regalem congruenti sibi munere
according-to munificence royal with-fitting to-him gift
honorans cum omni hilaritate dimisit multitudinem.
honoring with all cheerfulness dismissed the-multitude
III. Interea barbari ad novas res moliendas desaeviunt,
III meanwhile the-barbarians for new things contriving rage
percussitque Bolizlav fratrem suum, virum Christianum
and-struck Boleslav brother his a-man Christian
et, ut ferunt, Dei cultura religiosissimum, timensque
and as they-say of-God in-worship most-religious and-fearing
sibi vicinum subregulum, eo quod paruisset imperiis
for-himself a-neighboring sub-king on-that because he-had-obeyed the-commands
Saxonum, indixit ei bellum. Qui misit in Saxoniam
of-the-Saxons declared on-him war who sent into Saxony
ad expostulanda sibi auxilia. Mittitur autem ei Asic
for demanding for-himself help is-sent however to-him Asic
cum legione Mesaburiorum et valida manu Hassiganorum,
with the-legion of-the-Merseburgers and strong band of-the-Hassegau
additurque ei exercitus Thuringorum. Erat namque illa
and-is-added to-him an-army of-Thuringians was for that
legio collecta ex latronibus. Rex quippe Heinricus cum
legion gathered from robbers the-king indeed Henry though
esset satis severus extraneis, in omnibus causis erat clemens
he-was very severe to-outsiders in all causes was merciful
civibus; unde quemcumque videbat furum aut latronum manu
to-citizens whence whomever he-saw of-thieves or of-robbers in-band

fortem et bellis aptum, a debita poena ei parcebat,
strong and for-wars fit from due penalty him he-spared
collocans in suburbano Mesaburiorum, datis agris atque
placing-him in the-suburb of-the-Merseburgers with-given fields and
armis, iussit civibus quidem parcere, in barbaros autem
arms he-ordered the-citizens indeed to-spare against the-barbarians however
in quantum auderent latrocinia exercerent. Huiuscemodi
in as-much-as they-dared robberies they-should-practice of-this-kind
ergo hominum collecta multitudo plenam in expeditionem
therefore of-men the-gathered multitude a-full into the-expedition
produxit legionem. Bolizlav autem audiens de exercitu
led-out legion Boleslav however hearing about the-army
Saxonico, et quia Saxones seorsum et seorsum Thuringi
Saxon and that the-Saxons separately and separately the-Thuringians
irent contra se, divisis et ipse sociis, sicuti erat
went against him with-divided and he companions as he-was
acerrimus consilio, utroque exercitui occurrere disposuit. At
most-keen in-counsel to-both army to-meet arranged but
Thuringi, ut hostes inprovise sibi occursitare viderunt,
the-Thuringians when the-enemies unexpectedly them to-run-at saw
fuga periculum devitaverunt. Asic autem cum Saxonibus
by-flight the-danger avoided Asic however with the-Saxons
et caeteris auxiliariis nichil cunctatus in hostes ruit
and the-other auxiliaries nothing delaying on the-enemies rushes
maximamque partem ex eis armis fudit, caeteros fugere
and-the-greatest part from them with-arms routed the-rest to-flee
conpulit, victorque ad castra reversus est. Et cum ignorasset
compelled and-victor to the-camp returned has and since he-had-not-known
de exercitu, qui insecutus fuerat Thuringos, minus caute
about the-army which pursued had the-Thuringians less carefully
usus est victoria perpetrata. Bolizlav autem videns exercitum
used has the-victory accomplished Boleslav however seeing army

nostrum dispersum et alios in extrahendis spoliis caesorum,
our scattered and some in dragging-off the-spoils of-the-slain
alios in suis corporibus reficiendis, alios in paleis equorum
others in their bodies refreshing others in the-fodder of-horses
congregandis occupatos, fugatum reversumque coadunans
gathering busied the-routed and-returned gathering
exercitum, super inprovisos ac recenti victoria securos subito
army upon the-unwary and by-the-fresh victory secure suddenly
irruit et ducem cum omni nostro exercitu delevit. Pergensque
rushed and the-leader with all our army destroyed and-proceeding
inde ad urbem subreguli primo eam inpetu cepit et
thence to the-city of-the-sub-king at-the-first it onset took and
usque in hodiernum diem solitudinem fecit. Perduravitque
up-to to the-present day a-solitude made and-lasted
illud bellum usque ad quartum decimum regis imperii
that war until to the-fourth tenth of-the-king of-empire
annum; ex eo regi fidelis servus et utilis permansit.
year from that to-the-king faithful servant and useful he-remained

Otto makes Hermann his general, to the anger of Wichmann and Ekkehard; Ekkehard dies leading a rash attack. Eberhard burns Helmern and is fined, his men made to carry dogs to Magdeburg. Arnulf of Bavaria dies; Thankmar is aggrieved when Siegfried's command goes to Gero; a dispute over grandsons' inheritance is settled by combat at Steele.

IIII. Rex autem audito huiuscemodi nuntio minime
IIII the-king however with-heard of-this-kind message least
turbatur, sed divina virtute roboratus cum omni exercitu
is-disturbed but by-divine strength strengthened with all army
intrat terminos barbarorum ad refrenandam illorum saevitiam.
enters the-boundaries of-the-barbarians for checking their savagery
Datum quippe erat illis et antea a patre suo bellum,
given indeed had-been to-them also before by father his war
eo quod violassent legatos Thancmari filii sui, de quo
on-that because they-had-violated the-envoys of-Thankmar son his about which
in sequentibus plenius [nos] dicturos arbitramur. Placuit igitur
in the-following more-fully we about-to-say think it-pleased therefore
novo regi novum principem militiae constituere. Elegitque ad
the-new king a-new prince of-soldiery to-set-up and-he-chose for
hoc officium virum nobilem et industrium satisque prudentem
this office a-man noble and industrious and-very prudent
nomine Herimannum. Quo honore non solum caeterorum
by-name Hermann by-which honor not only of-the-other
principum, sed et fratris sui Wichmanni offendit invidiam.
princes but also of-brother his Wichmann he-offended the-envy
Quapropter et simulata infirmitate amovit se ab exercitu.
wherefore also with-feigned illness he-removed himself from the-army
Erat namque Wichmannus vir potens et fortis, magnanimus,
was for Wichmann a-man mighty and brave great-souled

belli gnarus et tantae scientiae, ut a subiectis supra
of-war skilled and of-such knowledge that by the-subjects above
hominem plura nosse predicaretur. Herimannus autem cum
a-man more-things to-know he-was-proclaimed Hermann however when
esset in prima acie, in introitu regionis in hostium pugnam
he-was in the-first line at the-entry of-the-region into of-the-enemies a-fight
incidit eosque fortiter vicit, et ob hoc maiori invidia
fell and-them bravely conquered and on-account-of this with-greater envy
inimicos accendit. Inter quos Ekkardus filius Liudulfi, qui
the-enemies he-kindled among whom Ekkehard son of-Liudolf who
in tantum aegre passus est fortunam Herimanni, ut sese
in so-much grievously borne has the-fortune of-Hermann that himself
promitteret maiora facturum aut vivere nolle. Unde
he-promised greater-things about-to-do or to-live to-be-unwilling whence
collectis ex omni exercitu fortissimis viris interdictum regis
with-gathered from all army the-bravest men the-prohibition of-the-king
rupit et paludem, quae erat inter urbem hostium et castra
he-broke and the-marsh which was between the-city of-the-enemies and the-camp
regis, cum sociis transiit, statimque hostes offendit, et
of-the-king with companions crossed and-at-once the-enemies struck and
ab his circumfusus cum omnibus suis periit. Erant autem
by these surrounded with all his-men perished there-were however
qui cum eo ceciderant electorum ex omni exercitu virorum
who with him had-fallen of-chosen from all army men
decem et octo. Rex autem caesa hostium multitudine
ten and eight the-king however with-slain of-the-enemies multitude
et caeteris tributariis factis reversus est in Saxoniam. Acta
and the-rest tributary made returned has into Saxony done
sunt autem haec VII. Kalend. Octobris.
were however these-things on-the-seventh Kalends of-October

V. Post haec antiqui hostes Ungarii venerunt virtutem
V after these-things the-old enemies the-Hungarians came the-valor
probare novi regis. Intrantes autem Franciam statuerunt,
to-test of-the-new king entering however Franconia they-decided
si possent, ab occidentali plaga invadere Saxoniam. Rex
if they-could from the-western side to-invade Saxony the-king
autem audiens, nichil moratus cum exercitu valido occurrit
however hearing nothing delaying with army strong met
illis fugavitque et a terminis suis abegit.
them and-routed and from borders his drove-off
VI. Cessantibus autem bellis externis civilia oriri coeperunt.
VI with-ceasing however wars external civil to-arise began
Nam Saxones imperio regis facti gloriosi dedignabantur
for the-Saxons by-the-rule of-the-king made glorious disdained
aliis servire nationibus quaesturasque quas habuerunt
to-other to-serve nations and-magistracies which they-had
ullius alii nisi solius regis gratia habere contempserunt.
of-anyone other except of-the-sole king by-favor to-have they-scorned
Unde iratus Evurhardus contra Bruningum collecta manu
whence angry Eberhard against Bruning with-gathered band
succendio tradidit civitatem illius vocabulo Elmeri, interfectis
to-burning handed-over the-city his by-name Helmern with-killed
omnibus eiusdem civitatis habitatoribus. Qua presumptione
all of-the-same city inhabitants with-which presumption
rex audita condempnavit Evurhardum centum talentis
the-king heard condemned Eberhard to-a-hundred talents
aestimatione equorum, omnesque principes militum, qui eum
in-value of-horses and-all the-princes of-the-soldiers who him
ad hoc facinus adiuvabant, dedecore canum, quos portabant
for this deed helped to-the-disgrace of-dogs which they-carried
usque ad urbem regiam quam vocitamus Magathaburg.
all-the-way to the-city royal which we-call Magdeburg

VII. Eodem tempore transtulit rex reliquias Innocentii
VII at-the-same time transferred the-king the-relics of-Innocent
martyris in eandem urbem. Ipse autem rex, ut erat
the-martyr into the-same city he however the-king as he-was
clementissimus, dum turbatores pacis merita castigatione
most-merciful when the-disturbers of-peace with-deserved chastisement
afflixit, ilico cum pietate suscepit, et unumquemque eorum
he-afflicted at-once with piety he-received and each of-them
regio munere honorans dimisit in pace. At illi nichilominus
with-royal gift honoring dismissed in peace but they nonetheless
duci suo haerebant ad omne nefas, quia ille quidem erat
to-duke their clung to every wickedness because he indeed was
iocundus animo, affabilis mediocribus, largus in dando; et
pleasant in-mind affable to-the-middling generous in giving and
his rebus multos Saxonum sibi associavit.
by-these things many of-the-Saxons to-himself associated
VIII. Ea tempestate defunctus est Arnulfus Boioariorum
VIII at-that time died has Arnulf of-the-Bavarians
dux, et filii eius in superbiam elati regis iussu
duke and the-sons his into pride lifted of-the-king by-the-command
contempserunt ire in comitatum.
scorned to-go into retinue
VIIII. Illo quoque tempore defunctus est Sigifridus comes;
VIIII at-that also time died has Siegfried the-count
cuius legationem cum sibi vendicasset Thancmarus, eo
whose command since to-himself he-had-claimed Thankmar on-that
quod propinquus ei esset — nam mater eius filia
because kinsman to-him he-was for mother his daughter
erat materterae Sigifridi, de qua genuit rex Heinricus
was of-the-maternal-aunt of-Siegfried from whom begot king Henry
Thancmarum—, et regali dono cessisset Geroni comiti,
Thankmar and by-royal gift it-had-fallen to-Gero the-count

afflictus est Thancmarus tristitia magna. Rex autem
afflicted was Thankmar with-sadness great the-king however
transivit in Boioariam et rebus ibi rite compositis
crossed into Bavaria and with-things there duly arranged
reversus est in Saxoniam.
returned has into Saxony
X. Dissensio autem, quae facta est inter Evurhardum et
X the-dissension however which made was between Eberhard and
Bruningum, ad hoc pervenit, ut caedes publicae fierent,
Bruning to this came that slaughters public were-made
depopulationesque agrorum agerentur, et ab incendiis nusquam
and-devastations of-fields were-done and from burnings nowhere
abstinerent. De legum quoque varietate facta est et contentio,
they-abstained about of-laws also the-variety made was also contention
fueruntque qui dicerent, quia filii filiorum non deberent
and-there-were those-who said that sons of-sons not ought
computari inter filios hereditatemque legitime cum filiis
to-be-counted among the-sons and-the-inheritance lawfully with the-sons
sortiri, si forte patres eorum obissent avis superstitibus.
to-share if perhaps fathers their had-died with-grandfathers surviving
Unde exiit edictum a rege, ut universalis populi conventio
whence went-out an-edict from the-king that of-the-universal people an-assembly
fieret apud villam quae dicitur Stela; factumque est, ut
be-made at the-estate which is-called Steele and-done it-was that
causa inter arbitros iudicaretur debere examinari. Rex autem
the-cause among arbiters it-was-judged ought to-be-examined the-king however
meliori consilio usus noluit viros nobiles ac senes
better counsel having-used did-not-wish men noble and the-elders
populi inhoneste tractari, sed magis rem inter gladiatores
of-the-people dishonorably to-be-treated but rather the-matter among gladiators
discerni iussit. Vicit igitur pars, qui filios filiorum
to-be-decided ordered won therefore the-party who the-sons of-sons

computabant inter filios, et firmatum est, ut aequaliter cum
counted among sons and confirmed it-was that equally with
patruis hereditatem dividerent pacto sempiterno. Ibi
the-paternal-uncles the-inheritance they-should-divide by-pact everlasting there
quoque pacis turbatores facti sunt manifesti, qui hactenus
also of-peace the-disturbers made were manifest who hitherto
se negabant contra regiam potestatem aliquid fecisse, sed
themselves denied against royal power anything to-have-done but
iniuriam tantummodo in socios vindicassent. Rex autem se
a-wrong only on comrades to-have-avenged the-king however himself
contemptum ab eis animadvertens — neque enim ad placitum
scorned by them noticing nor for to the-assembly
iuxta iussum venire dignati sunt — arma distulit,
according-to command to-come deigned they-have arms deferred
veniae locum dedit, proxima sibi semper solitus clementia.
of-pardon room gave with-the-nearest to-him always wont with-clemency
Sed haec dilatio ad maiorem perniciem multos protraxit.
but this delay to greater ruin many drew
Fiebant preterea multa nefaria a seditiosis, homicidia,
were-done besides many wicked-things by the-seditious murders
periuria, depopulationes, incendia; aequum pravumque, sanctum
perjuries devastations burnings the-fair and-the-wicked the-holy
periuriumque illis diebus parum procedebant.
and-the-perjury in-those days little advanced

Thankmar, Otto's half-brother, joins Eberhard, takes Belecke and the young Henry, and seizes Eresburg; when Otto comes, Thankmar flees into the church and is killed at the altar. Eberhard submits to his captive Henry, who joins his conspiracy; Henry is received back, Eberhard briefly exiled to Hildesheim and restored. The Hungarians are routed at Stederburg and in the Drömling.

XI. Iunctus est autem et Thancmarus Evurhardo, collectaque
XI joined was however also Thankmar to-Eberhard and-gathered
valida manu obpugnat presidium quod dicitur Badiliki,
strong band he-assaults the-garrison which is-called Belecke
in quo erat Heinricus iunior, dataque preda urbis
in which was Henry the-younger and-with-given booty of-the-city
suis commilitonibus abiit, secum adducens Heinricum
to-his fellow-soldiers he-went-off with-himself leading Henry
quasi vile quoddam mancipium. Interfectus est autem ibi
as-if cheap a-certain slave killed was however there
Gevehardus Udonis filius, fratris Herimanni ducis; ob
Gebhard of-Udo son the-brother of-Hermann of-the-duke on-account-of
cuius necem Deo omnia ordinante duces Francorum inter
whose death with-God all-things arranging the-dukes of-the-Franks among
se sunt divisi. Tantis igitur spoliis Thancmari milites
themselves were divided with-so-great therefore spoils of-Thankmar the-soldiers
ditati iam ad omnia parabantur. Post haec cepit urbem
enriched now for all-things were-prepared after these-things he-took the-city
quae dicitur Heresburg et collecta valida multitudine sedit
which is-called Eresburg and with-gathered strong multitude sat
in ea, multa inde exercens latrocinia. Evurhardus autem
in it many thence practicing robberies Eberhard however
secum tenuit Heinricum. Eo quoque tempore occisus est
with-himself kept Henry at-that also time killed was

Dedi ante portas urbis quae dicitur Larun, in qua erant
Dedi before the-gates of-the-city which is-called Laer in which were
milites Evurhardi. Wichmannus autem, qui se primum
the-soldiers of-Eberhard Wichmann however who himself first
alienavit a rege, audiens tantum facinus seditiosorum,
estranged from the-king hearing so-great the-deed of-the-seditious
conversus pacem fecit cum rege, quia prudentissimus erat,
turned peace made with the-king because most-prudent he-was
et utilis ac fidelis usque in finem permansit. Thancmarus
and useful and faithful until to the-end remained Thankmar
autem, filius Heinrici regis, natus erat ex matre nobili,
however the-son of-Henry of-the-king born was from a-mother noble
manu promptus, acer ingenio, bellandi peritus, sed inter arma
in-hand ready keen in-wit in-warring skilled but among arms
honesta minus pudicitia usus. Erat autem mater eius multam
honorable less chastity used was however mother his much
habens possessionem; qui licet a patre alia plura sit
having possession who though by the-father other more-things he-was
ditatus, materna tamen se hereditate privatum aegre valde
enriched by-maternal nevertheless himself inheritance deprived heavily very
tulit, et ob hanc causam arma sumit ad perniciem
bore and on-account-of this cause arms takes-up to the-ruin
sui suorumque contra dominum suum regem. Rex
of-himself and-of-his against lord his the-king the-king
autem, licet invitus, videns rem ad tam ingens periculum
however though unwilling seeing the-thing to so huge danger
procedere, ad edomandam Thancmari insolentiam cum multo
to-advance for taming of-Thankmar the-insolence with much
comitatu perrexit ad Heresburg. Cives autem urbis illius
retinue proceeded to Eresburg the-citizens however of-city that
cognoscentes de rege, quia super se cum valida manu
learning about the-king that upon them with strong band

appropinquasset, apertis portis introduxerunt exercitum, qui
he-had-approached with-opened gates brought-in the-army which
obsederat urbem. Thancmarus autem fugit in ecclesiam a
had-besieged the-city Thankmar however fled into the-church by
Leone papa beato Petro apostolo dedicatam. Exercitus autem
Leo the-pope to-blessed Peter the-apostle dedicated the-army however
persecutus est eum usque in templum, et maxime satellites
pursued has him up-to into the-temple and most the-attendants
Heinrici, dolentes ac vindicare contendentes iniuriam domini
of-Henry grieving and to-avenge striving the-wrong of-lord
sui. Nec veriti ianuas ferro incidere, cum armis ingressi
their nor fearing the-doors with-iron to-cut with arms entered
sunt sacram aedem. Thancmarus autem stabat iuxta altare,
have the-sacred house Thankmar however stood beside the-altar
depositis desuper armis cum torque aurea. Cumque ex
with-laid on-it arms with the-torque golden and-when from
adverso telis urgeretur, Thiatboldus quidam, notus
the-opposite with-weapons he-was-pressed Thiadbold a-certain an-acquaintance
Cobbonis, cum conviciis vulnus ei inflixit, ilicoque ab eo
of-Cobbo with insults a-wound on-him inflicted and-at-once from him
recepit, quo vita cum terribili insania in brevi caruisset.
received by-which of-life with terrible madness in short-time he-was-bereft
Quidam autem militum Maincia vocabulo per fenestram
a-certain however of-the-soldiers Maincia by-name through the-window
altari contiguam lancea a tergo perfossum ibi secus
to-the-altar adjoining with-a-lance from behind pierced there beside
aram extinxit Thancmarum. Ipse autem fraternae fautor
the-altar killed Thankmar he however of-brotherly abettor
discordiae in Biertanico postea bello vitam cum auro ab
discord in the-Birten afterward battle life with gold from
altari nequiter rapto miserabiliter perdidit. Earum rerum
the-altar wickedly seized wretchedly lost of-these things

rex ignarus et absens cum audisset, super temeritate
the-king unknowing and absent when he-had-heard about the-rashness
militum dedignatus est, sed fervente adhuc bello civili non
of-the-soldiers was-indignant has but with-raging still war civil not
potuit eos contristari. Miseratus autem fratris fortunam
he-could them to-sadden pitying however of-the-brother the-fortune
suique ingenii ostendens clementiam, pro laude eius ac
and-of-his-own nature showing the-clemency for the-praise his and
industria pauca locutus, Thiadricum et tres amitae
industry a-few-things having-spoken Theodoric and three of-the-paternal-aunt
illius filios, qui Thancmaro manus iunxerant, lege
of-him sons who to-Thankmar hands had-joined by-the-law
Francorum dampnatos strangulo fecit deficere. Inde vertit
of-the-Franks condemned by-the-noose he-made to-perish thence he-turned
militem avidum pugnae et preda urbis ditatum in Laras.
the-soldiery eager for-battle and with-booty of-the-city enriched to Laer
Illi autem urbis prefecto auctore acriter resistentes lapides
they however of-the-city with-the-prefect as-author keenly resisting stones
lapidibus, tela telis obicere non cessabant; aggravatique
to-stones weapons to-weapons to-oppose not ceased and-weighed-down
bello super consulto ducis indutias deposcunt. Quibus
by-war on the-counsel of-the-duke truce demand with-which
concessis ducis eis presidium negatur. Unde urbe
granted of-the-duke to-them help is-denied whence from-the-city
egressi potestati se regiae tradiderunt. Ea pugna Tamma
gone-out to-the-power themselves royal handed-over in-that fight Tamma
pincerna, multis aliis rebus bene gestis olim famosus, factus
the-cupbearer by-many other things well done once famous made
est clarus. Evurhardus autem audiens de nece Thancmari
has-been brilliant Eberhard however hearing about the-death of-Thankmar

et defectione suorum militum, fractus animo prosternitur
and the-defection of-his soldiers broken in-mind is-prostrated
captivo suo, veniam petit ac nequiter promeretur.
before-captive his pardon he-seeks and wickedly earns
XII. Heinricus autem erat eo tempore nimis adolescens,
XII Henry however was at-that time very young
fervens animo; et nimia regnandi cupiditate illectus eo
burning in-mind and by-excessive of-reigning desire enticed on-that
pacto crimine solvit eum, quo coniuratione secum facta
pact from-the-charge he-freed him by-which with-conspiracy with-himself made
contra regem dominum suum et fratrem sibi regni
against the-king lord his and brother for-himself of-the-realm
diadema, si possibile foret, inponeret. Foedus itaque invicem
the-diadem if possible it-should-be he-would-place the-treaty therefore mutually
percussum; inde liberaliter Heinricus ad regem reversus
struck thence freely Henry to the-king returned
puriori fide ac caritate ab eo est susceptus quam ingressus.
with-purer faith and love by him was received than entered
XIII. Suasione quoque optimi inprimis viri et omni religione
XIII by-the-persuasion also of-the-best especially man and in-all religion
probatissimi Frithurici, successoris Hildiberhti archiepiscopi,
most-proved Frederick the-successor of-Hildibert archbishop
Evurhardus adiit regem, supplex veniam deposcit, se
Eberhard approached the-king suppliant pardon demands himself
suaque omnia ipsius arbitrio tradens. Ne igitur ingens
and-his all of-him to-the-judgment handing-over lest therefore huge
scelus inemendatum maneret, quasi in exilium in Hildinensem
crime unamended should-remain as-if into exile into the-Hildesheim
urbem a rege dirigitur. Sed non post multum temporis
city by the-king he-is-directed but not after much time
in gratiam clementer recipitur et honori pristino redditur.
into favor mercifully he-is-received and to-honor former is-restored

XIIII. Dum ea interea loci geruntur, antiqui hostes
XIIII while these-things meanwhile of-the-place are-done the-old enemies
nostri Ungarii subito irruunt in Saxoniam et castris
our the-Hungarians suddenly rush into Saxony and with-the-camp
super litus Badae fluminis collocatis inde in omnem
on the-bank of-the-Bode river placed thence into every
regionem diffunduntur. Dux autem missus a castris cum
region they-are-spread the-duke however sent from the-camp with
parte exercitus eo die ad vesperam signa movit circa
part of-the-army on-that day toward evening the-standards moved around
urbem quae dicitur Stedieraburg. Urbani autem videntes
the-city which is-called Stederburg the-townsmen however seeing
hostes et ex itinere et ex pluvia, quae ingens erat,
the-enemies both from the-march and from the-rain which huge was
segniores, audacter erumpunt portis, et clamore primum
more-sluggish boldly burst-out from-the-gates and with-shouting first
territantes, demum repente in adversarios irruentes, plurimis
terrifying at-last suddenly on the-adversaries rushing with-very-many
ex eis caesis et copiosa equorum multitudine cum aliquibus
of them slain and with-plentiful of-horses multitude with some
signis capta, caeteros fugere compulerunt. Urbes quas obvias
standards captured the-rest to-flee compelled the-cities which in-the-way
habuere illorum fugam animadvertentes, armis eos omnibus
they-had their flight noticing with-arms them in-all
locis urgebant, et maxima ex eis parte prostrata, ducem
places pressed and with-the-greatest of them part laid-low the-leader
ipsum in quendam luti puteum cogentes obpresserunt.
himself into a-certain of-mud pit driving overwhelmed
Altera autem pars exercitus ad aquilonem versus et arte
the-other however part of-the-army to the-north turned and by-the-art
cuiusdam Sclavi in locum qui dicitur Thrimining deductus,
of-a-certain Slav into the-place which is-called Drömling led

difficultate locorum ac manu circumfusus armatorum periit
by-the-difficulty of-the-places and by-a-band surrounded of-armed-men perished
timoremque nimium caeteris incussit. Dux autem illius
and-fear excessive on-the-rest struck the-leader however of-that
exercitus cum paucis elapsus comprehenditur, et ad regem
army with few escaped is-seized and to the-king
deductus pretio magno redimitur. His auditis castra
led for-a-price great is-ransomed with-these heard the-camp
hostium omnia turbata, fuga salutem quaesierunt,
of-the-enemies whole thrown-into-confusion by-flight safety sought
nec ultra per triginta annos in Saxonia apparuerunt.
nor further for thirty years in Saxony appeared

II.15–17 · BIRTEN

Henry, eager to reign, gathers allies at Saalfeld and joins Giselbert in Lotharingia. Otto's envoy Hadald is slighted by Giselbert. At Birten, with the Rhine between Otto and his vanguard and no ships, Otto prays; a hundred Saxons rout the enemy, some shouting in French for flight, which the enemy takes for their own men's cry.

XV. Post haec Heinricus ardens cupiditate regnandi
XV after these-things Henry burning with-desire of-reigning
celebre parat convivium in loco qui dicitur Salaveldun.
a-crowded prepares banquet in the-place which is-called Saalfeld
Cumque esset magnus ac potens maiestate et potestate
and-when he-was great and mighty in-majesty and in-power
regali, plurimis plurima donat et factionis huiuscemodi
royal to-very-many very-many-things he-gives and of-faction of-this-kind
plurimos ob id sibi associat. Fuere tamen multi,
very-many on-account-of this to-himself associates there-were nevertheless many
qui rem celare potius arbitrati sunt, ad hoc tantum,
who the-thing to-hide rather thought have for this only

ne rei fraternae discordiae invenirentur. Dabant tamen
lest guilty of-brotherly discord they-should-be-found they-gave nevertheless
consilium, quo facilius bellum solveretur, ut videlicet ipse
counsel by-which more-easily the-war might-be-loosed that namely he
relinqueret Saxoniam sub presidio militari et sese inferret
should-leave Saxony under garrison military and himself should-carry
Lothariis, generi hominum inbelli; et ita factum est,
to-the-Lotharingians a-race of-men unwarlike and thus done it-was
ut primo inpetu eos rex devinceret et uno certamine
that at-the-first onset them the-king should-conquer and in-one contest
fatigaret. Commilitonum itaque consulto Saxonia, ut diximus,
should-weary of-the-fellow-soldiers therefore by-the-counsel with-Saxony as we-said
relicta et urbibus Saxoniae vel in Thuringorum terra
left and with-the-cities of-Saxony or in of-the-Thuringians land
presidio militari traditis, ipse cum amicis Lotharios adit.
to-garrison military handed-over he with friends the-Lotharingians approaches
Cuius rei fama undique omnes perculsi, quia tam
of-which thing by-the-report from-everywhere all struck because of-so
subitaneae recessionis a rege ac repentini belli causam
sudden withdrawal from the-king and of-sudden war the-cause
penitus ignorabant. Rex autem audita huiuscemodi fama
wholly they-knew-not the-king however with-heard of-this-kind report
primum non credidit, postremo certum de belli negotio
first not believed at-last certain about of-war the-business
probans, nichil moratus cum exercitu prosecutus est fratrem.
proving nothing delaying with the-army pursued has the-brother
Et ut appropiat urbi presidiis fratris munitae quae
and when he-approaches the-city with-garrisons of-the-brother fortified which
dicitur Throtmanni, milites qui erant in ea, non inmemores
is-called Dortmund the-soldiers who were in it not unmindful
fortunae Thancmari, nequaquam sunt ausi inibi regem
of-the-fortune of-Thankmar in-no-way have dared there the-king

expectare, sed egressi urbe tradiderunt se ipsos
to-await but having-gone-out from-the-city handed-over themselves selves
regi. Erat autem Agina, qui illam urbem ad manum
to-the-king there-was however Agina who that city to the-hand
Heinrici procurare deberet. Hic a rege vehementi iuramento
of-Henry to-manage ought he by the-king with-vehement oath
constrictus, quatinus, si posset, dominum suum a bello ad
bound that if he-could lord his from war to
pacem et concordiam revocaret, vel certe ipse ad regem
peace and concord he-should-recall or certainly he to the-king
reverteretur, ita dimissus adiit dominum suum. Ductus autem
should-return thus dismissed went-to lord his led however
exercitus a rege pervenit usque ad litora Reni fluminis.
the-army by the-king arrived up-to to the-banks of-the-Rhine river
XVI. Eo tempore, quo erat bellum Evurhardi cum rege,
XVI at-that time in-which was the-war of-Eberhard with the-king
missus Hadaldus, qui erat super cubiculum regis, ad
sent Hadald who was over the-chamber of-the-king to
Isilberhtum pro concordia et pace, cum necdum ad neutram
Giselbert for concord and peace since not-yet to neither
partem palam declinaretur, indigne suscipitur, et responsio de
side openly was-turned unworthily is-received and the-answer from
die in diem differtur. Ipse autem simultates ducis sentiens nec
day to day is-deferred he however the-enmities of-the-duke perceiving nor
ultra talibus versutiis contentus: ‘Imperium tibi’, inquit, ‘regale
further with-such wiles content a-command to-you he-says royal
facio presente populo, tribunali regis condicto die presentari,
I-make before the-people at-the-tribunal of-the-king on-the-agreed day to-be-presented
aut certe hostem te scias iudicari’. Simili modo et pontificem
or certainly enemy you know to-be-judged in-like manner also the-bishop
Bernhardum a rege missum inhonoratum et responsi
Bernhard by the-king sent unhonored and of-answer

incertum a se dimisit. Fertur etiam et regalium litterarum
uncertain from himself he-dismissed he-is-said also even of-the-royal letters
saepius sigilla corrupisse. Post haec vero verba legatum
often the-seals to-have-broken after these however words the-envoy
meliuscule coepit habere et cum honore transduci fecit.
somewhat-better he-began to-hold and with honor to-be-conducted-across he-made
XVII. Igitur copias belli parantes Heinricus et Isilberhtus
XVII therefore forces of-war preparing Henry and Giselbert
decreverunt ad Renum occurrere regi. Agina quoque memor
decided at the-Rhine to-meet the-king Agina also mindful
iurisiurandi precedens exercitum transito Reno regi sese
of-the-oath going-before the-army with-crossed Rhine to-the-king himself
presentavit. Et salutato eo verbis humillimis ait: 'Frater
presented and with-greeted him with-words most-humble he-says brother
tuus, dominus meus, salvum te et incolumem magno latoque
your lord my safe you and unharmed in-great and-wide
imperio diu regnare exoptat tuumque ad servitium demandat
empire long to-reign longs and-your to service sends-word
quantocius festinare'. Rege autem interrogante de eo,
as-quickly-as-possible to-hasten with-the-king however asking about him
pacem bellumne cogitasset, prospiciens vidit multitudinem
peace or-war-whether he-had-intended looking-forward he-saw a-multitude
nimiam erectis signis tractim procedere et ad sui
excessive with-raised standards in-a-long-line advancing and toward his
partem exercitus, qui iam Renum transierat, tendentem. Et
part of-the-army which already the-Rhine had-crossed heading and
conversus ad Aginam: 'Quidnam vult', inquit, 'illa multitudo
turned to Agina what wishes he-says that multitude
aut quae est?' At ille satis otiose: 'Dominus meus', inquit,
or what is-it but he very calmly lord my he-says
'est, frater tuus; si meae suasioni dignaretur animum
is brother your if to-my persuasion he-deigned the-mind

inclinare, aliter venisset. Modo, ut ipse iuravi, veni'.
to-incline otherwise he-would-have-come now as I swore I-have-come
Rex autem his auditis dolorem animi motu corporis
the-king however with-these heard the-grief of-mind by-the-motion of-body
non celabat, eo quod non adessent naves, per quas
not he-hid on-that because not were-at-hand ships through which
Renum transcendere posset; et ingens flumen aliud iter non
the-Rhine to-cross he-could and the-huge river another way not
prebebat, nec tempus subitanei certaminis in ulteriore ripa
offered nor the-time of-sudden contest on the-farther bank
constitutos aliud sinebat cogitare, nisi aut coram hostibus
placed other-thing allowed to-think except either before the-enemies
cadere debere aut certe armis vitam defendere. Unde ad
to-fall to-be-bound or certainly with-arms life to-defend whence to
Deum supplices expandens manus rex ait: 'Deus', inquit,
God suppliant spreading hands the-king says God he-says
'omnium rerum auctor et rector, respice populum tuum,
of-all things author and ruler look-upon people your
cui me preesse voluisti, ut, ereptus ab inimicis, sciant
over-which me to-preside you-wished that snatched from enemies may-know
omnes gentes ullum mortalium tuae dispositioni contraire non
all peoples any of-mortals your disposition to-oppose not
posse, qui omnia potes et vivis et regnas in aeternum'.
to-be-able who all-things can and live and reign into eternity
Qui autem erant in ulteriore ripa, sarcinas et inpedimenta
who however were on the-farther bank the-packs and baggage
quaeque transmittunt in locum qui dicitur Xantum. Ipsi
all send-across into the-place which is-called Xanten they
vero parati hostes expectant. Cumque esset piscina inter
however ready the-enemies await and-when there-was a-pond between
nostrates et hostes, Saxones divisis sociis, pars una ex
ours and the-enemies the-Saxons with-divided companions part one from

adverso ruit in hostes, altera pars a tergo insequitur, in
opposite rushes on the-enemies the-other part from behind follows in
mediis hostes obprimens, pauci plures vehementer urgebant.
the-middle the-enemies crushing the-few the-more vehemently pressed
Neque enim nostratium supra centum armatos fuisse
nor for of-ours above a-hundred armed-men to-have-been
perhibetur, adversariorum vero magnus satis exercitus. Sed
is-reported of-the-adversaries however a-great enough army but
cum a fronte pariter et a tergo urgerentur, qua parte
since from the-front equally and from behind they-were-pressed on-which side
potissimum cavere debuissent, in promptu non erat. Ex
most to-beware they-ought at hand not it-was of
nostris etiam fuere qui Gallica lingua ex parte loqui
ours also there-were those-who in-the-Gallic tongue in part to-speak
sciebant, qui clamore in altum Gallice levato exhortati sunt
knew who with-a-shout on high in-Gallic raised exhorted have
adversarios ad fugam. Illi socios huiuscemodi clamasse
the-adversaries to flight they comrades of-this-kind to-have-shouted
arbitrati, fugam, ut clamatum est, inierunt. Eo die ex
thinking flight as shouted it-was entered on-that day of
nostris multi vulnerati, aliqui etiam caesi; inter quos Ailbertus,
ours many wounded some also slain among whom Albert
qui cognominatus est Candidus, telo ducis Heinrici
who surnamed was the-White by-the-weapon of-the-duke Henry
vulneratus non multis interiacentibus diebus defunctus est.
wounded not many intervening days died has
Hostes autem omnes aut caesi vel capti vel certe fugati,
the-enemies however all either slain or captured or certainly routed
sarcinae omnes et omnis hostium suppellex inter victores
the-packs all and all of-the-enemies furniture among the-victors
divisa. Ex parte Lothariorum bene pugnasse predicabatur
divided from the-side of-the-Lotharingians well to-have-fought was-proclaimed

illo certamine Godofridus Niger cognominatus. Sed et
in-that contest Godfrey the-Black surnamed but also
Maincia, cuius supra mentionem fecimus, eo die cecidit.
Maincia of-whom above mention we-made on-that day fell

II.18–24 · HENRY'S SURRENDER AND THE SLAV WARS

Henry's towns are betrayed to the king; he holds out at Merseburg, surrenders, and withdraws. Gero kills thirty Slav princes at a banquet, and the Slavs fight on for their liberty. Tugumir betrays Brandenburg. Henry rejoins Giselbert, and Otto ravages Lotharingia. Immo goes over to the king and outwits Giselbert with a piglet and bees. Eberhard and Giselbert rise again, and the archbishops desert the king's camp.

XVIII. Dadi autem Thuring mandavit ad prefectos urbium,
XVIII Dadi however the-Thuringian sent-word to the-prefects of-the-cities
qui erant in oriente partis ducis Heinrici, de victoria
who were in the-east of-the-party of-duke Henry about the-victory
regis, et quia ipse dux in bello cecidisset, egitque
of-the-king and that himself the-duke in the-war had-fallen and-acted
callide, ut omnes se traderent regiae potestati.
cunningly that all themselves should-hand-over to-the-royal power
Heinricus autem hoc factum nequaquam reliquit inultum.
Henry however this deed in-no-way left unavenged
Ipsi autem duae tantummodo ex omnibus remanserant
to-him however two only of all had-remained
urbes, Mesburg et Scithingi. Regi autem post victoriam
cities Merseburg and Scheidungen to-the-king however after the-victory
visum est persequi fratrem suum generumque.
it-seemed has-been to-pursue brother his and-son-in-law

XVIIII. Audiens vero de defectione urbium suarum
XVIIII hearing however about the-defection of-cities his
fractusque recenti regis victoria, cum novem tantum
and-broken by-the-fresh of-the-king victory with nine only
armatis iter arripuit, Saxoniamque iam tardius adiens,
armed-men the-road seized and-Saxony now later approaching
urbem Mesburg ingressus est. Quo rex comperto et ipse
the-city Merseburg entered has which the-king learned he too
reversus est Saxoniam urbemque, in qua frater erat, cum
returned has to-Saxony and-the-city in which the-brother was with
exercitu obsedit. Sed cum non posset fortiori ac maiori
the-army besieged but since not he-could to-the-stronger and greater
resistere, post duos ferme menses tradita urbe egressus
resist after two almost months with-handed-over city gone-out
est Heinricus ad regem. Datae sunt autem ei indutiae
has Henry to the-king given were however to-him a-truce
triginta dierum, quatinus cum militibus sibi cohaerentibus
of-thirty days so-that with the-soldiers to-him cleaving
secederet a Saxonia. Si cui vero illorum regem
he-might-withdraw from Saxony if to-anyone however of-them the-king
adire placuisset, locum veniae haberet. Quievitque
to-approach had-pleased the-place of-pardon he-would-have and-rested
Saxonia post haec ab intestinis bellis paucis diebus.
Saxony after these-things from internal wars for-a-few days
XX. Barbari autem labore nostro elati nusquam ab
XX the-barbarians however by-trouble our lifted nowhere from
incendio, caede ac depopulatione vacabant, Geronemque,
burning slaughter and devastation were-free and-Gero
quem sibi rex prefecerat, cum dolo perimere cogitant.
whom over-them the-king had-set with guile to-destroy they-think
Ipse dolum dolo preoccupans, convivio claro delibutos ac
he the-guile with-guile forestalling at-a-banquet brilliant steeped and

vino sepultos ad triginta fere principum barbarorum una
in-wine buried up-to thirty almost of-the-princes of-the-barbarians in-one
nocte extinxit. Sed cum non sufficeret contra omnes nationes
night killed but since not he-sufficed against all nations
barbarorum — eo quippe tempore et Apodriti rebellaverant,
of-the-barbarians at-that indeed time also the-Abodrites had-rebelled
et caeso exercitu nostro ducem ipsum nomine Haicam
and with-slain army our the-leader himself by-name Haica
extinxerunt—, ab ipso rege saepius ductus exercitus eos
killed by the-very king often led the-army them
laesit et in multis afflixit et in ultimam pene calamitatem
harmed and in many afflicted and into last almost calamity
perduxit. Illi vero nichilominus bellum quam pacem
brought they however nonetheless war rather-than peace
elegerunt, omnem miseriam carae libertati postponentes. Est
chose all misery to-dear liberty putting-after is
namque huiuscemodi genus hominum durum et laboris
for of-this-kind a-race of-men hard and of-labor
patiens, victu levissimo assuetum, et quod nostris gravis
enduring to-food most-light accustomed and what for-ours of-heavy
oneris esse solet, Sclavi pro quadam voluptate ducunt.
burden to-be is-wont the-Slavs as a-certain pleasure reckon
Transeunt sane dies plurimi, his pro gloria et pro magno
pass surely days very-many with-these for glory and for great
latoque imperio, illis pro libertate ac ultima servitute
and-wide empire with-those for liberty and last servitude
varie certantibus. Multos quippe illis diebus Saxones
variously contending many indeed in-those days the-Saxons
patiebantur hostes, Sclavos ab oriente, Francos a meridie,
endured enemies the-Slavs from the-east the-Franks from the-south

Lotharios ab occidente, ab aquilone Danos itemque
the-Lotharingians from the-west from the-north the-Danes and-likewise
Sclavos: proptereaque barbari longum trahebant certamen.
the-Slavs and-therefore the-barbarians long drew-out the-contest
XXI. Fuit autem quidam Sclavus a rege Heinrico relictus,
XXI there-was however a-certain Slav by king Henry left
qui iure gentis paterna successione dominus esset
who by-the-right of-the-people by-paternal succession lord was
eorum qui dicuntur Heveldi, dictus Tugumir. Hic pecunia
of-those who are-called Hevelli called Tugumir he by-money
multa captus et maiori promissione persuasus professus est
much taken and by-greater promise persuaded professed has
se prodere regionem. Unde quasi occulte elapsus venit
himself to-betray the-region whence as-if secretly slipped-away he-came
in urbem quae dicitur Brennaburg, a populoque agnitus et
into the-city which is-called Brandenburg by and-the-people recognized and
ut dominus susceptus, in brevi quae promisit inplevit.
as lord received in a-short-time what he-promised fulfilled
Nam nepotem suum, qui ex omnibus principibus gentis
for nephew his who of all princes of-the-people
supererat, ad se invitans dolo captum interfecit, urbemque
survived to himself inviting by-guile seized he-killed and-the-city
cum omni regione ditioni regiae tradidit. Quo facto
with all region to-the-dominion royal handed-over which done
omnes barbarae nationes usque in Oderam fluvium simili
all barbarous nations up-to into the-Oder river in-like
modo tributis regalibus se subiugarunt.
manner to-tributes royal themselves subjected
XXII. Heinricus igitur discedens a Saxonia Lotharios
XXII Henry therefore departing from Saxony the-Lotharingians
iterum adiit et cum genero suo, duce scilicet Isilberhto, cum
again went-to and with son-in-law his duke namely Giselbert with

suis militibus aliquamdiu moratus est. Iterum ducitur exercitus
his soldiers for-some-while delayed has again is-led the-army
a rege contra Isilberhtum, et omnis regio Lothariorum
by the-king against Giselbert and all the-region of-the-Lotharingians
illius imperio subiacens igni traditur; obsessusque in urbe
his to-the-rule lying-under to-fire is-handed and-besieged in the-city
quae dicitur Kievermont, elapsus inde proficiscitur. Et
which is-called Chèvremont having-slipped-out thence he-sets-out and
cum obsidio difficultate locorum parum procederet, vastata
since the-siege by-the-difficulty of-the-places little advanced with-laid-waste
undique regione rex in Saxoniam revertitur.
on-all-sides region the-king into Saxony returns
XXIII. Sciens autem comitem Isilberhti versutum et callidum
XXIII knowing however the-count of-Giselbert crafty and cunning
nimis nomine Immonem, artibus illius melius arbitratus est
very by-name Immo by-arts his better thought has
pugnare quam armis. Ille vero, ut erat astutissimus, meliori
to-fight than by-arms he however as he-was most-astute to-the-better
ac maiori se subdens, arma sumit contra ducem; quod ipse
and greater himself subjecting arms takes-up against the-duke which himself
dux omnium laborum gravissime tulit, quia eum sibi
the-duke of-all labors most-heavily bore because him to-himself
adversum sustinere debuisset, cuius consilio ac fidei hactenus
hostile to-endure he-had-to whose on-counsel and faith hitherto
se maxime credebat. Augebat quoque indignationem ducis
himself most he-relied increased also the-indignation of-the-duke
grex porcorum ab Immone callide captus. Nam subulci
a-herd of-pigs by Immo cunningly captured for the-swineherds
ducis cum contra portas urbis transirent, Immo porcellum
of-the-duke when opposite the-gates of-the-city passed Immo a-piglet
pro porta agitari fecit et omnem gregem porcorum apertis
before the-gate to-be-driven made and all the-herd of-pigs with-opened

portis intra urbem recepit. Quam iniuriam dux ferre non
gates within the-city received which wrong the-duke to-bear not
valens coacto exercitu obsedit Immonem. Ille autem plurima
being-able with-gathered army besieged Immo he however very-many
apum examina habuisse fertur, quae frangens proiecit contra
of-bees swarms to-have-had is-said which breaking he-threw against
equites. Apes autem aculeis equos stimulantes in insaniam
the-horsemen the-bees however with-stings the-horses goading into madness
vertebant, ita ut equites periclitari coepissent. Quo viso
turned so that the-horsemen to-be-endangered began which seen
Immo prospiciens de muro eruptionem cum sociis minitavit.
Immo looking-out from the-wall a-sally with companions threatened
Huiuscemodi igitur artibus saepius dux ab Immone delusus
of-this-kind therefore by-arts often the-duke by Immo deluded
solvit obsidionem. Discedens vero fertur dixisse: 'Immone
loosed the-siege departing however he-is-said to-have-said with-Immo
mecum sentiente omnes Lotharios facile captos tenui, modo
with-me thinking all the-Lotharingians easily captured I-held now
ipsum solum cum omnibus Lothariis capere nequeo'.
him alone with all the-Lotharingians to-capture I-cannot
XXIIII. Tractum tamdiu bellum Evurhardus considerans ultra
XXIIII drawn-out so-long the-war Eberhard considering further
non quiescit; quin contempto rege et iure spreto
not rests nay-rather with-scorned king and with-right spurned
iuramentorum, ut initio, conserta manu cum Isilberhto
of-oaths as at-the-beginning with-joined hand with Giselbert
ad incentiva bellorum pariter conspirant. Nec contenti
to the-incitements of-wars together they-conspire nor content
regno occidentali solummodo, in Reni orientalem
with-the-realm western only into of-the-Rhine eastern
agrum depopulandum cum exercitu demerguntur. Haec
land to-be-devastated with army they-plunge these-things

cum audiuntur in castris regis — nam ea tempestate
when are-heard in the-camp of-the-king for at-that time
rex erat pugnans contra Briseg et alias urbes, quae erant
the-king was fighting against Breisach and other cities which were
Evurhardi ditionis—, multi se a castris eruebant,
of-Eberhard of-the-dominion many themselves from the-camp drew-off
nec ultra spes erat regnandi Saxones. Rex vero ea
nor further hope was of-reigning for-the-Saxons the-king however in-that
turbatione tanta constantia ac imperio usus est, licet raro
disturbance with-such constancy and command used has though by-scant
milite constiparetur, acsi nichil ei difficultatis obviasset.
soldiery he-was-thronged as-if nothing to-him of-difficulty had-met
Nam summi pontifices relictis tentoriis et alia qualibet
for the-highest pontiffs with-left tents and other whatever
suppellectili, ipsi etiam defecerunt a fide.
furniture they also defected from faith

II.25–31 · ANDERNACH AND THE EASTER PLOT

Archbishop Frederick, who had sworn to Eberhard, is exiled for a time. Hermann's men surprise the dukes at the Rhine; Eberhard falls fighting and Giselbert drowns. Immo submits and traps Giselbert's nephews. Henry is given lands in Lotharingia, but he conspires with the eastern Saxons to kill Otto at Easter; Otto learns of it, Eric dies fighting, the others are executed, and Henry flees.

XXV. Defectionis causam edicere et regalia misteria pandere
XXV of-the-defection the-cause to-declare and royal mysteries to-lay-open
super nos est, verum historiae satisfaciendum arbitramur;
above us is but to-history to-be-satisfied we-judge
quicquid in hac parte peccemus, veniabile sit. Summus
whatever in this part we-may-sin pardonable let-it-be the-highest

pontifex missus ad Evurhardum pro concordia et pace,
pontiff sent to Eberhard for concord and peace
cum esset earum rerum desiderantissimus, pacto mutuo
since he-was of-those things most-desirous in-the-pact mutual
suum interposuit iuramentum, et ideo ab eo non posse
his interposed oath and therefore from him not to-be-able
desipere fertur narrasse. Rex autem per pontificem officio
to-depart is-said to-have-related the-king however through the-pontiff to-office
suo congruentia dirigens responsa, nil ad se pertinere
his fitting directing answers nothing to himself to-pertain
voluit, quicquid episcopus egisset sine suo imperio. Quare
wished whatever the-bishop had-done without his command wherefore
quia contra auctoritatem regi quasi precellenti noluit
because against authority to-the-king as-if pre-eminent he-was-unwilling
subici, sed recessit ab eo, in Hammaburgensem urbem
to-be-subjected but withdrew from him into the-Hamburg city
quasi in exilium destinavit, Rothardum vero episcopum
as-if into exile he-destined Ruthard however the-bishop
Novam Corbeiam direxit. In brevi vero utrisque clementer
to-New Corvey he-directed in short-time however to-both mercifully
ignoscit, in sui gratiam suscipit et honori pristino reddidit.
he-forgives into his favor receives and to-honor former restored
XXVI. Ad coercendam igitur ducum presumptionem missus
XXVI for checking therefore of-the-dukes the-presumption sent
Herimannus cum exercitu invenit eos super litus Reni,
Hermann with an-army found them on the-bank of-the-Rhine
magnamque partem exercitus abesse, eo quod iam
and-a-great part of-the-army to-be-absent on-that because already
Renum cum preda transissent. Circumfusus itaque dux
the-Rhine with booty they-had-crossed surrounded therefore the-duke
ipse Evurhardus militum armis, multis vulneribus acceptis
himself Eberhard of-soldiers by-arms with-many wounds received

ac viriliter redditis, perfossus tandem telis corruit.
and manfully returned pierced at-last by-weapons fell
Isilberhtus autem fugiens navem cum pluribus ascendit,
Giselbert however fleeing a-ship with several climbed
quae onere pregravata subcumbens mergitur; ipseque dux
which by-the-load weighed-down sinking is-drowned and-he the-duke
cum caeteris mersus numquam est inventus. Rex autem
with the-rest drowned never was found the-king however
audita victoria suorum militum ac morte ducum gratias
with-heard the-victory of-his soldiers and the-death of-the-dukes thanks
egit omnipotenti Deo, cuius saepius auxilium expertus est
gave to-almighty God whose often help tested has
oportunum. Preficiensque regioni Lothariorum Oddonem
timely and-setting-over the-region of-the-Lotharingians Otto
Ricwinis filium, et ut nutriret nepotem suum, filium
of-Ricwin the-son and that he-might-rear nephew his the-son
Isilberhti, optimae spei puerulum, nomine Heinricum, reversus
of-Giselbert of-best hope a-little-boy by-name Henry returned
est in Saxoniam. Mater autem pueri copulata est coniugio
has into Saxony the-mother however of-the-boy joined was in-marriage
Hluthowico regi, et Heinricus frater regis discedens
to-Louis the-king and Henry the-brother of-the-king departing
a Lothariis secessit in regnum Karoli. Necem ducum
from the-Lotharingians withdrew into the-realm of-Charles the-death of-the-dukes
asperrima hiemps hiememque secuta est fames validissima.
a-most-harsh winter and-the-winter followed has a-famine most-severe
XXVII. Post haec Immo, re vera nescio an falso,
XXVII after these-things Immo in-truth true I-know-not or falsely
arma sumit contra regem, et media hieme circumdatus
arms takes-up against the-king and in-mid winter surrounded

exercitu se pariter cum urbe tradidit, ac deinceps fidelis
by-an-army himself together with the-city handed-over and thenceforth faithful
et utilis permansit.
and useful remained
XXVIII. Nepotes quoque Isilberhti servituti regiae se
XXVIII the-nephews also of-Giselbert to-the-servitude royal themselves
subiciebant, urbibus quas tenebant nichilominus retentis;
subjected with-the-cities which they-held nonetheless retained
Kievermont etiam ab Ansfrido et Arnoldo adhuc tenebatur.
Chèvremont also by Ansfrid and Arnold still was-held
Ad quos Immo mandatum huiuscemodi dirigens ait: 'De me
to whom Immo a-message of-this-kind directing says about me
non sentio nisi quod vos sentitis; de vobis autem notum
not I-think except what you think about you however known
est, quia huius gentis principes estis. Nulli ergo dubium,
it-is that of-this people the-princes you-are to-no-one therefore doubtful
quin duabus manibus quisque magis valeat quam una.
but-that with-two hands each more is-strong than with-one
Certum est itaque tres unum fortitudine precedere. Et nunc
certain it-is therefore three one in-strength to-surpass and now
quae necessitas cogit, ut serviamus Saxonibus, nisi nostra
what necessity compels that we-serve the-Saxons unless our
discordia? Quando vos armis circumdederunt, num victoria
discord when you with-arms they-surrounded whether in-victory
laetati sunt? Victoribus certe turpe est servire. Optimum
rejoiced have-they for-victors surely shameful it-is to-serve the-best
omnium mortalium, qui me a puero nutrivit et inter
of-all mortals who me from a-boy reared and among
amicos semper habuit et magna potestate clarificavit, nostrum
friends always held and with-great power made-famous our
communem dominum deserui et Saxoni me periculo capitis
common lord I-deserted and to-the-Saxon myself at-the-risk of-head

mei sociavi; modo, ut scitis, pro merito honore contumelia
my I-allied now as you-know for deserved honor with-insult
ab eo affectus, armis circumdatus, pene ex libero servus
by him affected with-arms surrounded almost from free a-slave
factus sum. Ut ergo noveritis me ex fide communi
made I-am that therefore you-may-know me from faith for-the-common
utilitati velle consulere, tibi, Ansfrid, unicam filiam meam
advantage to-wish to-take-thought to-you Ansfrid only daughter my
desponsabo, quo nullo apud vos infidelitatis scrupulo notari
I-will-betroth that with-no among you of-faithlessness by-scruple to-be-marked
queam. Date igitur locum mutui colloquii, et ex me
I-may-be-able give therefore a-place of-mutual colloquy and from me
ipso fidem probabitis, quam per nuntium necdum potestis'.
myself the-faith you-will-prove than through a-messenger not-yet you-can
Ipsi ad haec, quamvis ferrei pectoris essent et illum
they to these-things although of-iron breast they-were and him
iam olim suspectum haberent, tantae tamen calliditati
now long-since suspected they-held to-so-great nevertheless cunning
cedentes, suasibilibus emolliti verbis, mutuo dabant locum
yielding by-persuasive softened words mutually they-gave place
conspectui. At ille armatos habens locis oportunis absconditos
for-sight but he armed-men having in-places fit hidden
dolo ambos cepit et sub custodia regi destinavit,
by-guile both captured and under guard to-the-king dispatched
mandato in haec verba pariter directo: 'Elatior', inquit, 'est
with-a-message in these words together directed the-prouder he-says is
mollior, vinclis aut verberibus non indiget, minis pandit
softer with-chains or blows not he-needs by-threats he-lays-open
universa quae scit. Ansfrid vero durior ferro est, hunc
all-things which he-knows Ansfrid however harder than-iron is this-one
si tormenta acerrima rimentur, magnum est'. Quos cum
if torments most-keen should-probe great it-is whom when

rex suscepisset, aliquanto tempore custodiae mancipatione
the-king had-received for-some time of-custody by-confinement
castigavit. Postea suae gratiae lenitate sibi associans in
he-chastised afterward of-his of-favor by-mildness to-himself associating in
pace dimisit. Cum ergo causae causis et res rebus
peace dismissed since therefore causes with-causes and things with-things
ita copulatae sint, ut sententiarum ordine discerni adeo
so joined are that of-sentences by-the-order to-be-separated so
non debeant, nemo me temporum vicissitudine accuset,
not they-ought let-no-one me of-times by-the-sequence accuse
dum posteriora anterioribus preposuerim gesta.
while the-later-things to-the-earlier I-may-have-put-before deeds
XXVIIII. Rex igitur vicina sibi semper clementia graves
XXVIIII the-king therefore by-near to-him always clemency the-heavy
fratris miseratus labores, aliquantis urbibus suis usibus
of-the-brother pitying labors with-some cities for-his uses
concessis permissus est intra regionem Lotharíorum habitare.
granted allowed was within the-region of-the-Lotharingians to-dwell
XXX. Eo tempore bellum barbarorum fervebat. Et cum
XXX at-that time the-war of-the-barbarians was-boiling and when
milites ad manum Geronis presidis conscripti crebra
the-soldiers to the-band of-Gero the-governor enrolled by-frequent
expeditione attenuarentur et donativis vel tributariis premiis
expedition were-thinned and by-donatives or by-tributary rewards
minus adiuvari possent, eo quod tributa passim negarentur,
less to-be-helped could on-that because tributes everywhere were-denied
seditioso odio in Geronem exacuuntur. Rex vero ad
with-seditious hatred against Gero they-are-sharpened the-king however for
communes utilitates rei publicae Geroni semper iuxta
the-common advantages of-the-thing public to-Gero always beside

erat. Unde factum est, ut nimis exacerbati odia sua in
was whence done it-was that too-much embittered hatreds their against
ipsum quoque regem vertissent.
the-very also the-king they-should-have-turned
XXXI. Quae causa Heinricum minime latuit. Et ut solet,
XXXI which cause Henry least lay-hidden-from and as is-wont
amaris animis dum dulce aliquid offertur, facile persuadebat
with-bitter minds while sweet something is-offered easily he-persuaded
huiuscemodi homines sibi concordare, spem habens iterum
of-this-kind men to-himself to-agree hope having again
regnandi, dum nosset exercitum regi offensum. Denique
of-reigning since he-knew the-army with-the-king offended finally
multis intercurrentibus legatis et munusculis invicem missis
with-many running-between envoys and little-gifts mutually sent
omnes pene orientalium partium milites sibi colligavit.
all almost of-the-eastern parts the-soldiers to-himself he-bound
Quae res ad tantum nefas processit, ut coniuratione valida
which thing to so-great wickedness advanced that with-conspiracy strong
facta, in paschali festivitate, quae erat proxima, cum ipse
made at the-Easter festival which was nearest when himself
Heinricus ad palatium adisset, regem occidere cogitassent,
Henry to the-palace should-have-come the-king to-kill they-had-intended
ipsi vero regni diadema inponerent. Earum rerum dum
they however of-the-realm the-diadem should-place-on-him of-these things since
non esset publicus proditor, semper se protegente summa
not there-was a-public betrayer always him protecting the-highest
divinitate, notae factae sunt regi insidiae modicum ante
divinity known made were to-the-king the-ambushes a-little before
pascha. Qui fidelium militum vallatus manu die ac nocte,
Easter who of-faithful of-soldiers hedged by-a-band by-day and night
nichilque decoris vel maiestatis regiae coram populo ea
and-nothing of-the-glory or majesty royal before the-people at-that

sollempnitate minuens, nimium hostibus intulit timorem.
solemnity lessening excessive on-the-enemies brought fear
Post diem vero sollempnem consilio maxime Francorum,
after the-day however solemn by-the-counsel most of-the-Franks
qui eo tempore sibi adstabant, Herimanni scilicet, Udonis
who at-that time to-him stood-by of-Hermann namely of-Udo
atque Cuonradi qui dictus est Rufus, secrete proditos iubet
and of-Conrad who called is the-Red secretly the-betrayed he-orders
comprehendi vel certe occidi. Inter quos erat primus in
to-be-seized or certainly to-be-killed among whom was first in
caeteris omnium bonarum virtutum rebus absque hac noxa
the-other of-all good virtues things apart-from this guilt
fortissimus optimusque Erich. Hic cum armatos ad se
bravest and-best Eric he when armed-men to himself
properasse intellexisset, conscius causarum equum ascendit,
to-have-hastened he-had-understood aware of-the-causes the-horse climbed
arma sumit, circumfususque hostium turmis, memor
arms takes and-surrounded of-the-enemies by-squadrons mindful
pristinae virtutis ac nobilitatis elegit mori quam inimicorum
of-former valor and nobility chose to-die than of-the-enemies
dominationi subici. Nam lancea perfossus occubuit, vir
to-domination to-be-subjected for by-a-lance pierced he-fell a-man
omni virtute ac industria civibus carus atque clarus. Caeteri
in-every virtue and industry to-the-citizens dear and famous the-rest
autem insidiarum conscii in alteram ebdomadam differuntur
however of-the-ambush aware into the-second week are-deferred
et secundum leges sceleribus suis meritas poenas solventes
and according-to the-laws for-crimes their deserved penalties paying
capite caeduntur. Heinricus autem fugiens regno cessit.
with-the-head are-beheaded Henry however fleeing from-the-realm withdrew

Comets and other portents bring fear, a severed hand is restored after a year, and floods and a cattle plague follow. Conrad gets Lotharingia and Otto's daughter; Otto takes Burgundy. Henry is pardoned, made duke of Bavaria, and fights the Hungarians. Widukind describes the brothers: Otto pious, generous, and learned late in letters, Henry grave and handsome, Bruno learned and Lotharingia's pacifier. A persecution of the monks arises, which some think Archbishop Frederick pursued insincerely to strike at Abbot Hadamar.

XXXII. Eo anno et portenta quaedam apparuere, scilicet
XXXII in-that year also portents certain appeared namely
cometae. Nam a quinta decima Kalendas Novembris
comets for from the-fifth tenth Kalends of-November
usque in ipsas Kalendas visae sunt. Quibus visis multi
until to the-very Kalends seen were which seen many
mortales territi aut nimiam pestilentiam vel certe regni
mortals terrified either excessive pestilence or certainly of-the-realm
mutationem metuebant; quoniam quidem ante regis Heinrici
a-change feared since indeed before of-king of-Henry
excessum multa prodigia monstrata sunt, ita ut solis
the-death many prodigies shown were so that of-the-sun
splendor forinsecus aere absque nubilo pene nullus
the-splendor outside with-the-air without cloud almost none
appareret, intrinsecus autem per fenestras domorum rubeus
appeared inside however through the-windows of-houses red
tamquam sanguis infunderetur. Mons quoque, ubi ipse
as-if blood was-poured-in the-mountain also where himself
rerum dominus sepultus est, fama prodidit, quia multis
of-things the-lord buried is report reported that in-many
in locis flammas evomeret. Hominis etiam cuiusdam manus
in places flames it-vomited of-a-man also a-certain the-hand

sinistra ferro amputata post annum fere integrum restituta
left by-iron cut-off after a-year almost whole restored
est ei dormienti, qui pro signo miraculi sanguinea
was to-him sleeping who for a-sign of-the-miracle with-a-bloody
linea loco coniunctionis notabatur. Sed cometas inundatio
line at-the-place of-the-joining was-marked but the-comets a-flood
nimia inundationemque boum pestilentia subsecuta est.
excessive and-the-flood of-cattle a-pestilence followed has
XXXIII. Defuncto autem Oddone Lothariorum preside
XXXIII with-dead however Otto of-the-Lotharingians the-governor
ac regis nepote Heinrico, ducatus regionis conceditur
and of-the-king the-nephew Henry the-duchy of-the-region is-granted
Cuonrado; cui et unicam filiam suam rex desponsavit;
to-Conrad to-whom also only daughter his the-king betrothed
qui erat adolescens acer et fortis, domi militiaque optimus,
who was a-youth keen and brave at-home and-at-war the-best
commilitonibus suis carus.
to-fellow-soldiers his dear
XXXIIII. Illis diebus Berhtoldus frater Arnulfi procurabat
XXXIIII in-those days Berthold brother of-Arnulf managed
Boioariam, pugnansque contra Ungarios victorque existens
Bavaria and-fighting against the-Hungarians and-victor being
triumpho celebri factus est clarus.
by-triumph famous made was brilliant
XXXV. Rex autem de die in diem proficiens paterno
XXXV the-king however from day to day advancing with-the-paternal
regno nequaquam est contentus, sed abiit Burgundiam,
realm in-no-way was content but went-off to-Burgundy
regem cum regno in suam accepit potestatem. Hugonem
the-king with the-realm into his received power Hugh
alterum armis edomuit ac sibi subiectum fecit; cuius
the-other in-arms he-tamed and to-himself subject made whose

fibulam auream, regi dono concessam, gemmarum varietate
brooch golden to-the-king as-gift granted of-gems by-variety
mirabilem videmus in altari protomartyris Stephani rutilantem.
wondrous we-see on the-altar of-the-protomartyr Stephen glowing
XXXVI. Igitur cum omnia regna coram eo silerent,
XXXVI therefore when all realms before him were-silent
et potestati ipsius omnes hostes cederent, monitu et
and to-power his all enemies yielded by-the-warning and
intercessione sanctae matris eius recordatus est multis laboribus
intercession of-holy mother his remembered has by-many labors
fatigati fratris prefecitque eum regno Boioariorum,
wearied of-the-brother and-set-over him over-the-realm of-the-Bavarians
Berhtoldo iam defuncto, pacem atque concordiam cum eo
with-Berthold already dead peace and concord with him
faciens, qua usque in finem fideliter perduravit. Erat autem
making which until to the-end faithfully lasted was however
ipse dominus Heinricus copulatus matrimonio filiae ducis
himself lord Henry joined in-marriage to-the-daughter of-duke
Arnulfi, feminae egregiae formae mirabilisque prudentiae.
Arnulf a-woman of-outstanding beauty and-of-wondrous prudence
Fratrum vero pax atque concordia, Deo acceptabilis
of-the-brothers however the-peace and concord to-God acceptable
hominibusque amabilis, toto orbe fit iam celebris,
and-to-men lovable in-the-whole world becomes now famous
dum unanimes res publicas augent, hostes debellant,
while unanimous the-things public they-increase the-enemies they-subdue
civibus paterna potestate presunt. Ducatu igitur
over-the-citizens with-paternal power they-preside with-the-duchy therefore
Boioariorum accepto nequaquam desidia torpuit, sed abiens
of-the-Bavarians received in-no-way with-sloth he-grew-torpid but going-off
Aquilegiam cepit, Ungarios duabus vicibus armis superavit,
Aquileia he-took the-Hungarians on-two occasions in-arms overcame

Ticinum transnatavit, et preda magna intra regionem
the-Ticino swam-across and with-booty great within the-region
hostium capta exercitum incolumem patriam reduxit.
of-the-enemies captured the-army unharmed to-the-homeland led-back
Talium igitur et tantorum mores, habitum formamque,
of-such therefore and so-great-men the-character the-bearing and-the-form
quos summa clementia mundo ad delicias omnemque
whom highest clemency to-the-world for delights and-every
decorem destinavit, nostrae non est omnimodis virtutis
ornament destined of-our not is in-all-ways power
exponere; verum devotionem, quam erga eos habemus,
to-set-forth but the-devotion which toward them we-have
penitus celare nequimus. Ipse denique dominus rerum,
wholly to-hide we-cannot he finally the-lord of-things
fratrum natu maximus optimus, inprimis pietate erat
of-the-brothers by-birth the-greatest best especially in-piety was
clarus, opere omnium mortalium constantissimus, preter
famous in-work of-all mortals most-constant besides
regiae disciplinae terrorem semper iocundus, dandi largus,
of-royal discipline the-terror always pleasant in-giving generous
dormiendi parcus et inter dormiendum semper aliquid
in-sleeping sparing and during sleeping always something
loquens, quo eum semper vigilare aestimes; amicis nichil
saying so-that him always to-be-awake you-would-think to-friends nothing
negans et supra hominem fidelis. Nam quosdam audivimus
denying and above man faithful for some we-have-heard
accusatos et peccati manifestos, ipsum eorum advocatum
accused and of-sin manifest him their advocate
et intercessorem et criminis nullo modo credulum, et
and intercessor and of-the-charge in-no way believing and
ab eo post habitos, tamquam nichil umquam in eum
by him after held as-if nothing ever against him

peccassent. Ingenium ei admodum mirandum; nam post
they-had-sinned the-wit in-him very wondrous for after
mortem Edidis reginae, cum antea nescierit, litteras
the-death of-Edith the-queen when before he-had-not-known letters
in tantum didicit, ut pleniter libros legere et intelligere
in so-much he-learned that fully books to-read and to-understand
noverit. Preterea Romana lingua Sclavanicaque loqui scit;
he-knew besides in-the-Romance tongue and-in-the-Slavonic to-speak he-knows
sed rarum est, quo earum uti dignetur. In venationibus
but rare it-is that them to-use he-deigns in hunting
creber, tabularum ludos amat, equitatus gratiam regia
frequent of-boards the-games he-loves of-horsemanship the-grace with-royal
gravitate interdum exercens. Accessit ad haec et moles
gravity sometimes exercising was-added to these-things also the-bulk
corporis, omnem regiam ostendens dignitatem, capite cano
of-body all royal showing dignity with-head gray
sparsus capillo, oculi rutilantes et in modum fulguris cita
strewn with-hair the-eyes glowing and in the-manner of-lightning by-swift
repercussione splendorem quendam emittentes; facies rubicunda
reflection a-splendor a-certain sending-forth the-face ruddy
et prolixior barba, et haec contra morem antiquum.
and rather-long beard and this against custom ancient
Pectus leoninis quibusdam sparsum iubis; venter commodus;
the-breast with-lion's with-certain strewn manes the-belly suitable
incessus quondam citus, modo gravior; habitus patrius, et
the-gait once swift now heavier the-dress native and
qui numquam sit peregrino usus. Quotienscumque autem
who never has foreign used as-often-as however
sit opus corona portanda, ieiunium semper precedere pro
there-is need the-crown to-be-carried a-fast always to-precede for
vero traditur. Heinricus vero morum gravitate pollebat
true is-handed-down Henry however of-character in-gravity was-strong

et ob id ab ignotis minus clemens iocundusque
and on-account-of this by strangers less merciful and-pleasant
predicabatur; constanti admodum animo, fidelis et ipse amicis,
was-proclaimed of-constant very mind faithful also he to-friends
ita ut mediocris substantiae militem coniugis suae sororis
so that of-middling substance a-soldier of-wife his the-sister
matrimonio honoraret, socium sibi amicumque faceret. Erat
in-marriage he-honored companion to-himself and-friend made he-was
corpore prestanti, et qui in adolescentia omnem hominem
in-body outstanding and who in youth every man
egregia forma ad se inclinaret. Iunior vero fratrum
by-outstanding beauty to himself drew the-younger however of-the-brothers
domnus Brun magnus erat ingenio, magnus scientia et
lord Bruno great was in-wit great in-knowledge and
omni virtute ac industria. Quem cum rex prefecisset
in-every virtue and industry whom when the-king had-set-over
genti indomitae Lothariorum, regionem a latronibus
to-the-people untamed of-the-Lotharingians the-region from robbers
purgavit et in tantum disciplina legali instruxit, ut summa
he-purged and in so-much with-discipline lawful he-instructed that highest
ratio summaque pax illis in partibus locum tenerent.
reason and-highest peace those in parts place held
XXXVII. Igitur cum bella intestina externaque cessarent, leges
XXXVII therefore when wars internal and-external ceased laws
divinae atque humanae auctorali vigore pollent. Gravisque
divine and human with-authoritative vigor are-strong and-heavy
persecutio monachis oritur in diebus illis, affirmantibus
persecution for-monks arises in days those affirming
quibusdam pontificibus, melius arbitrati paucos vita claros
certain pontiffs better judged few in-life famous
quam plures negligentes inesse monasteriis oportere; obliti,
than many negligent to-be-in monasteries to-be-fitting forgetful

nisi fallor, sententiae patrisfamiliae prohibentis servos
unless I-am-mistaken of-the-sentence of-the-householder forbidding the-servants
zizania colligere, sed utraque crescere oportere et zizania
the-tares to-gather but both to-grow to-be-fitting both the-tares
et triticum usque ad messem. Quo factum est, ut plures
and the-wheat until to the-harvest by-which done it-was that many
propriae infirmitatis conscii deposito habitu et relictis
of-their-own weakness aware with-laid-down habit and with-left
monasteriis grave onus sacerdotum devitarent. Fuerunt autem
monasteries the-heavy burden of-the-priests avoided there-were however
quidam qui summum pontificem Frithericum hoc non pure,
some who the-highest pontiff Frederick this not purely
sed ficte fecisse arbitrati sunt, quatinus venerabilem virum
but falsely to-have-done thought have so-that the-venerable man
regique fidelissimum abbatem Hadumarum quoquo modo
and-to-the-king most-faithful abbot Hadamar in-whatever way
posset dehonestaret.
he-could he-might-dishonor

II.38–41 · HADAMAR AND EDITH'S DEATH

Abbot Hadamar of Fulda keeps the king's favor against the archbishop. Louis of France is captured by the Northmen and handed into custody on Hugh's counsel. Edith dies after nineteen years in Saxony, leaving Liudolf and Liutgard, and is buried at Magdeburg.

XXXVIII. Ipse enim erat vir magnae prudentiae ac
XXXVIII he for was a-man of-great prudence and
industriae; sub eius temporibus templum famosum Vuldense
industry under his times the-temple famous of-Fulda
igne consumptum est et ab eo restauratum et multo
by-fire consumed was and by him restored and with-much

maiori decore perfectum. Hic pontificem sub custodia tenuit
greater beauty completed he the-pontiff under guard held
secunda coniuratione culpabilem, primum honorifice, sed
in-the-second conspiracy guilty first honorably but
cum litteras ab eo scriptas reprehendisset, satis severe.
when the-letters by him written he-had-reproved very severely
Pontifex vero dimissus dum ultionem quaerit, contra tantum
the-pontiff however dismissed while vengeance he-seeks against so-great
virum leges non prevalent, humillima monasteria auctoritate
a-man the-laws not prevail the-humblest monasteries by-authority
temptavit, ut ad excellentissima aequaliter procederet. Sed
he-tried that to the-most-excellent equally he-might-proceed but
huiuscemodi simulationes incassum profusae. Nam abbas
of-this-kind pretenses in-vain poured-out for the-abbot
in gratia et amicitia regis permansit, et causis
in the-favor and friendship of-the-king remained and with-causes
intercurrentibus pontifex quod cogitavit non inplevit.
intervening the-pontiff what he-intended not fulfilled
XXXVIIII. Soror igitur regis Hluthowico regi genuit
XXXVIIII the-sister therefore of-the-king to-Louis the-king bore
tres filios, Karolum, Lotharium et Karlomannum. Ipse
three sons Charles Lothar and Carloman he
autem Hluthowicus rex a ducibus suis circumventus et
however Louis the-king by dukes his surrounded and
a Northmannis captus, consilio Hugonis Lugdunum missus
by the-Northmen captured by-the-counsel of-Hugh to-Laon sent
custodiae publicae traditur. Filium autem eius natu maiorem
to-custody public is-handed the-son however his by-birth the-elder
Karolum Northmanni secum duxerunt Rothun, ibi et
Charles the-Northmen with-themselves led to-Rouen there also
mortuus est. Audiens autem rex super fortuna amici
dead is hearing however the-king about the-fortune of-the-friend

satis doluit imperavitque expeditionem in Galliam contra
much grieved and-ordered an-expedition into Gaul against
Hugonem in annum secundum.
Hugh into the-year second
XL. Eo tempore cum moraretur rex in campis silvestribus
XL at-that time when was-staying the-king in the-fields woodland
venationem agens, obsides Bolizlavi [ibi] vidimus, quos
hunting doing the-hostages of-Boleslav there we-saw whom
populo rex presentari iussit satis super eis laetatus.
to-the-people the-king to-be-presented ordered much over them gladdened
XLI. Ille annus notabilis casu calamitoso totius populi,
XLI that year notable by-the-fall calamitous of-the-whole people
de morte scilicet beatae memoriae Edidis reginae, cuius dies
about the-death namely of-blessed memory of-Edith the-queen whose day
extrema VII. Kalend. Februar. celebrata est cum gemitu et
last on-the-seventh Kalends of-February celebrated was with groaning and
lacrimis omnium Saxonum. Haec nata ex gente Anglorum non
tears of-all the-Saxons she born from the-people of-the-English no
minus sancta religione quam regali potentia pollentium stirpe
less in-holy religion than in-royal power of-those-strong by-the-stock
claruit. Decem annorum regni consortia tenuit, XI.
shone ten years of-the-realm the-partnership she-held in-the-eleventh
obiit; Saxoniam vero XVIIII annis inhabitavit. Reliquit filium
she-died Saxony however for-nineteen years she-inhabited she-left a-son
nomine Liudulfum, omni virtute animi et corporis ea aetate
by-name Liudolf in-every virtue of-mind and of-body in-that age
nulli mortali secundum; filiam quoque nomine Liudgardam,
to-no mortal second a-daughter also by-name Liutgard
quae nupserat Cuonrado duci. Sepulta est autem in civitate
who had-married Conrad the-duke buried was however in the-city
Magathaburg in basilica nova, latere aquilonali ad orientem.
Magdeburg in the-basilica new on-the-side northern to the-east

Ad dominam Mahtildam imperatoris filiam libri tertii incipit prefatio

PREFACE TO BOOK THREE

Widukind likens the imperial majesty that brought Mathilda forth to God's providence, which draws the world's discordant variety to one light, and asks her to receive his unpolished third book for its devotion.

Quemadmodum caeli terraeque facies, hominum voces,
just-as of-heaven and-of-earth the-face of-men the-voices
vultus ac mores mille modis concordi discordia
faces and characters in-a-thousand ways with-harmonious discord
variantur, sed ad unius luminis sensusque ducatum Dei
are-varied but to of-one light and-sense the-leading of-God
cuncta regentis providentia coguntur, ita publicis ac privatis
all-things ruling by-the-providence are-driven so to-public and private
rebus intentis imperiale decus, quod te ut serenissimum
things intent the-imperial glory which you as most-serene
splendorem gemmamque lucidissimam mundo effudit, unum
splendor and-gem most-shining to-the-world poured-forth one
iustitiae moderamen est normaque rectitudinis. Unde laboris
of-justice the-governing is and-the-norm of-rectitude whence of-labor
nostri opus, quod a diversis moribus diverse accipitur, eo
our the-work which by diverse characters diversely is-received on-that
quod ingenii sermonisque claritate egeat, sinu gloriosae
because of-wit and-of-speech the-brightness it-lacks in-the-bosom of-glorious
clementiae tuae suscipiatur, nec in eo nostra insipientia,
clemency your may-it-be-received nor in it our foolishness
sed maior consideretur devotio, humiliter deposco.
but greater may-be-considered devotion humbly I-beg

Incipiunt capitula

THE CHAPTERS OF BOOK THREE

Kehr's list of the seventy-six chapters of Book Three, from Liudolf's designation to Otto's death and the election of his son.

I. Quomodo creavit rex filium suum Liudulfum post se
I how made the-king son his Liudolf after himself
regem.
king

II. De Gallia profectione et altercatione regis et Hugonis
II about the-Gallic expedition and the-dispute of-the-king and of-Hugh
ducis et rege Luthwico.
of-the-duke and king Louis

III. Quomodo rex Lucdunum adiit.
III how the-king Laon approached

IIII. Quomodo Rothun adiit et inde Saxoniam reversus
IIII how Rouen he-approached and thence to-Saxony returned
est.
has

V. Quomodo Huga occurrit regi iuxta fluvium Car.
V how Hugh met the-king near the-river Chiers

VI. De Liudulfo filio regis, quomodo Italiam adiit.
VI about Liudolf the-son of-the-king how Italy he-approached

VII. De Bernhario rege Longabardorum.
VII about Berengar king of-the-Lombards

VIII. Quomodo rex duxit exercitum contra Bolizlavum.
VIII how the-king led an-army against Boleslav

VIIII. Quomodo rex reginam sibi sociavit, et Liudulfus
VIIII how the-king the-queen to-himself joined and Liudolf
ideo tristis inde discedit.
therefore sad thence departs

X. Cęlebratis rex nuptiis revertitur in Saxoniam, secutusque
X with-celebrated the-king nuptials returns into Saxony and-followed
eum Bernharius pacem cum eo facturus.
him Berengar peace with him about-to-make
XI. De conventu populi apud urbem Augustanam et
XI about the-assembly of-the-people at the-city Augsburg and
miraculo quod ibi accidit.
the-miracle which there happened
XII. De filiis regis.
XII about the-sons of-the-king
XIII. De insidiis quas paraverunt regi.
XIII about the-ambushes which they-prepared for-the-king
XIIII. De apparatu paschali.
XIIII about the-preparations Easter
XV. De filio generoque regis et pontifice Frithurico.
XV about the-son and-son-in-law of-the-king and the-pontiff Frederick
XVI. De conventu populi apud Fridisleri et Dadano et
XVI about the-assembly of-the-people at Fritzlar and Dado and
Wilhelmo comitibus.
William the-counts
XVII. De pugna Lothariorum cum Conrado duce.
XVII about the-fight of-the-Lotharingians with Conrad the-duke
XVIII. De obsidione Mogantiaca et altercatione Heinrici
XVIII about the-siege of-Mainz and the-dispute of-Henry
et Liudulfi.
and Liudolf
XVIIII. De Ecberhto regis consobrino.
XVIIII about Ecbert of-the-king the-cousin
XX. De Boioariis, quomodo iuncti sunt Liudulfo.
XX about the-Bavarians how joined they-were to-Liudolf

XXI. De Arnulfo et fratribus eius, et quia exercitus
XXI about Arnulf and brothers his and that the-army
missionem petiit et accipit.
discharge sought and receives
XXII. De rege, et quia multi defecerunt a fide.
XXII about the-king and that many defected from faith
XXIII. De exercitu Saxonico qui Mogontiam adiit.
XXIII about the-army Saxon which Mainz approached
XXIIII. De Thiadrico et Wicmanno.
XXIIII about Theodoric and Wichmann
XXV. De Ecberhto et Wicmanno et duce Hirimannno.
XXV about Ecbert and Wichmann and duke Hermann
XXVI. De regis adventu in Boioariam.
XXVI about of-the-king the-arrival in Bavaria
XXVII. De pontifice Frithurico et ceteris pontificibus.
XXVII about the-pontiff Frederick and the-other pontiffs
XXVIII. Quomodo rex infecto negotio revertitur in
XXVIII how the-king with-unfinished business returns into
Saxoniam.
Saxony
XXVIIII. De causis Hirimanni et nepotum eius.
XXVIIII about the-causes of-Hermann and of-nephews his
XXX. Avares iunguntur Boioariis, rex vero occurrit eis
XXX the-Avars are-joined to-the-Bavarians the-king however meets them
cum valida manu.
with strong band
XXXI. Boioarii bello fatigati de pace tractant.
XXXI the-Bavarians by-war wearied about peace treat
XXXII. De placito regis apud Cinnam.
XXXII about the-assembly of-the-king at Zenn
XXXIII. De pontifice Frithurico et Conrado duce.
XXXIII about the-pontiff Frederick and Conrad the-duke

XXXIIII. De Liudulfo, qui a patre iratus discessit, et
XXXIIII about Liudolf who from the-father angry departed and
rex eum persequitur.
the-king him pursues
XXXV. Pugna apud Horsadal.
XXXV the-fight at Horsadal
XXXVI. Obsidio urbis quae dicitur Ręnesburg.
XXXVI the-siege of-the-city which is-called Regensburg
XXXVII. Liudulfus pacem postulat, sed non impetrat, et
XXXVII Liudolf peace asks but not obtains and
de morte Arnulfi.
about the-death of-Arnulf
XXXVIII. Liudulfo pax datur, et rex Saxoniam revertitur.
XXXVIII to-Liudolf peace is-given and the-king to-Saxony returns
XXXVIIII. Heinricus Novam urbem adiit.
XXXVIIII Henry New city approached
XL. Qualiter rex filium clementer suscipit.
XL how the-king the-son mercifully receives
XLI. De fine pontificis Frithurici.
XLI about the-end of-the-pontiff Frederick
XLII. Qualiter Ucri a Gerone capiuntur.
XLII how the-Ukrani by Gero are-captured
XLIII. Qualiter Ręinesburg se tradit, et regionem fratri
XLIII how Regensburg itself hands-over and the-region to-the-brother
restituit.
he-restores
XLIIII. De famoso triumpho, quem rex de Ungariis
XLIIII about the-famous triumph which the-king over the-Hungarians
obtinuit.
obtained
XLV. De pugna Thiadrici adversus Slavos.
XLV about the-fight of-Theodoric against the-Slavs

XLVI. De portentis quae interim acciderunt.

XLVI about the-portents which meanwhile happened

XLVII. De casu Conradi ducis.

XLVII about the-fall of-Conrad of-the-duke

XLVIII. De tribus ducibus Avarorum.

XLVIII about three leaders of-the-Avars

XLVIIII. De triumpho regis.

XLVIIII about the-triumph of-the-king

L. De rege et versutiis Wicmanni.

L about the-king and the-wiles of-Wichmann

LI. De exercitu, qui Wicmannum pene cępit in urbe

LI about the-army which Wichmann almost took in the-city

Suitleiscarę.

of-Suithleiscranne

LII. Quomodo capta est urbs Cocarescemiorum.

LII how taken was the-city of-the-Cocarescemi

LIII. Quomodo ultus est rex illam depopulationem.

LIII how avenged has the-king that devastation

LIIII. De Gerone preside.

LIIII about Gero the-governor

LV. De Stoineffo barbarorum rege et milite qui eum

LV about Stoinef of-the-barbarians the-king and the-soldier who him

occidit.

killed

LVI. De rege, quia crebris victoriis gloriosus factus est.

LVI about the-king that by-frequent victories glorious made he-was

LVII. De Liudulfo, quia patria cessit propter

LVII about Liudolf that from-the-homeland he-withdrew on-account-of

amicos.

friends

LVIII. De litteris obitum eius significantibus.

LVIII about the-letters the-death his signifying

LVIIII. De Wicmanno, qui Saxoniam occulte intravit.
LVIIII about Wichmann who Saxony secretly entered
LX. Quomodo fide Geronis susceptus est Wicmannus.
LX how on-the-faith of-Gero received was Wichmann
LXI. De prodigiis quae apparuerunt in vestimentis.
LXI about the-prodigies which appeared on clothes
LXII. De infirmitate imperatoris.
LXII about the-illness of-the-emperor
LXIII. De profectione secunda regis in Italiam.
LXIII about the-expedition second of-the-king into Italy
LXIIII. De Wicmanno, quomodo iterum rebellavit.
LXIIII about Wichmann how again he-rebelled
LXV. De Danis, quomodo Christiani perfecte facti sunt.
LXV about the-Danes how Christians perfectly made were
LXVI. Gero propter iuramentum dimisit Wicmannum.
LXVI Gero on-account-of the-oath dismissed Wichmann
LXVII. Quomodo Gero Lusiki vicit.
LXVII how Gero the-Lusizi conquered
LXVIII. De duobus regulis et Wicmanno.
LXVIII about two princelings and Wichmann
LXVIIII. De nece Wicmanni.
LXVIIII about the-death of-Wichmann
LXX. Acceptis armis Wicmanni imperator iam factus scripsit
LXX with-received arms of-Wichmann the-emperor now made wrote
ępistolam in Saxoniam mittendam.
a-letter into Saxony to-be-sent
LXXI. De legatis Grecorum et eorum fraude.
LXXI about the-envoys of-the-Greeks and their fraud
LXXII. De Gundthario et Sifrido.
LXXII about Gunther and Siegfried

LXXIII. De populo Constantinopolitano et eorum
LXXIII about the-people of-Constantinople and their
imperatoribus.
emperors
LXXIIII. De Mathilda matre imperatoris et obitu
LXXIIII about Mathilda the-mother of-the-emperor and the-death
episcoporum Bernhardi et Wilhelmi.
of-the-bishops Bernhard and William
LXXV. De reversione imperatoris ab Italia, et de obitu
LXXV about the-return of-the-emperor from Italy and about the-death
eius.
his
LXXVI. Quomodo populus pro patre elegit filium eius in
LXXVI how the-people for the-father chose son his as
principem.
prince

Incipit liber tertius

III.1–10 · FRANCE, ITALY, AND ADELHEID

Otto designates Liudolf his successor and invades France for Louis, laughing off Hugh's boast with a promise of straw hats. He besieges Paris and Laon, restores the bishop of Reims, and receives Hugh's submission. Liudolf marries Ida, daughter of Hermann. Boleslav of Bohemia submits. Otto marries Adelheid in Pavia; Liudolf leaves him aggrieved, and Berengar follows Otto to Germany and is kept waiting three days.

I. Post excessum Edidis reginae omnem amorem maternum
I after the-death of-Edith the-queen all love maternal
transfudit rex in unicum filium suum Liudulfum, factoque
transferred the-king into only son his Liudolf and-with-made
testamento creavit eum regem post se. Ipse autem tener adhuc
testament created him king after himself he however tender still
erat adolescens, aetatis non habens amplius quam sedecim annos.
was a-youth of-age not having more than sixteen years
II. Rex vero in Galliam proficiscens expeditionem, coacto
II the-king however into Gaul setting-out an-expedition with-gathered
apud Camaracam urbem exercitu, festinat intrare regnum
at Cambrai the-city army hastens to-enter the-realm
Karoli vindicandae causa iniuriae generi sui Hluthowici.
of-Charles of-avenging for-the-sake the-wrong of-son-in-law his of-Louis
Quo audito Hugo missa legatione iurat per patris sui animam,
which heard Hugh with-sent embassy swears by of-father his the-soul
qui iam olim periit Deo regique proprio repugnando, quia
who now long-ago perished to-God and-to-king own by-fighting that
tanta sibi esset copia armorum, quanta hactenus rex
so-great for-himself was abundance of-arms as-great-as hitherto the-king
numquam vidisset. Addiditque contemptum vane tumideque
never had-seen and-added contempt vainly and-swollenly

super Saxones loquendo, quia inbelles essent, et quia facile
about the-Saxons by-speaking that unwarlike they-were and that easily
posset una potione telorum Saxonicorum septem obsorbere.
he-could in-one draft of-weapons Saxon seven swallow
Ad quod rex famosum satis reddit responsum: sibi vero
to which the-king a-famous enough returns answer for-himself however
fore tantam multitudinem pilleorum foeninorum, quos ei
to-be so-great a-multitude of-hats of-straw which to-him
presentari oporteret, quantam nec ipse nec pater suus
to-be-presented it-would-be-needful as-great-as neither he nor father his
umquam viderit. Et revera, cum esset magnus valde exercitus,
ever had-seen and truly since there-was great very the-army
XXX scilicet duarum legionum, [fere] non est inventus, qui
thirty namely of-two legions almost not was found who
foenino non uteretur pilleo, nisi Corbeius abbas nomine Bovo
of-straw not used hat except the-Corvey abbot by-name Bovo
cum tribus suis sequacibus. Hic erat vir sapiens ac clarus,
with three his followers he was a-man wise and famous
a Deo nobis ostensus, non concessus. Huius patris
by God to-us shown not granted of-this-man of-the-father
avus Bovo Graecas litteras coram Cuonrado rege legendo
grandfather Bovo Greek letters before Conrad the-king by-reading
factus est clarus; et huic eiusdem nominis avus erat,
made was famous and to-this-one of-the-same name grandfather he-was
ut natu maior, omni virtute ac sapientia potior. Sed et
as by-birth elder in-every virtue and wisdom stronger but also
ipse nepos erat Warini, qui ex milite factus est monachus
he nephew was of-Warin who from soldier made was a-monk
et primus omnium apud Novam Corbeiam regulariter
and first of-all at New Corvey according-to-the-rule
electus est in patrem. Qui cum esset admirandae sanctitatis,
chosen was as father who since he-was of-admirable holiness

ad augmentum virtutum suarum beataeque memoriae Saxoniae
for the-increase of-virtues his and-of-blessed memory for-Saxony
preciosum attulit thesaurum, reliquias videlicet preciosi
a-precious brought treasure the-relics namely of-the-precious
martyris Viti. Dimissus igitur Hluthowicus regi occurrit
martyr Vitus released therefore Louis the-king meets
iungiturque cum sociis exercitui illius.
and-is-joined with companions to-the-army his
III. Rex autem cum exercitu Lugdunum adiit eamque
III the-king however with the-army Laon approached and-it
armis temptavit; inde Parisium perrexit Hugonemque ibi
with-arms tried thence to-Paris proceeded and-Hugh there
obsedit, memoriam quoque Dyonisii martyris digne honorans
besieged the-memory also of-Denis the-martyr worthily honoring
veneratus est. Ductus inde exercitus contra urbem Remensem,
venerated has led thence the-army against the-city of-Reims
ubi erat nepos Hugonis contra ius fasque omne subrogatus
where was the-nephew of-Hugh against right and-law all substituted
episcopus legitimo pontifice adhuc superstite. Armis autem
as-bishop with-the-lawful pontiff still surviving with-arms however
urbem capiens, iniuste constitutum expulit sacerdotem,
the-city taking the-unjustly appointed he-expelled the-priest
legitimum ecclesiae sedique propriae restituens.
lawful to-the-church and-to-the-see own restoring
IIII. Exinde collecta ex omni exercitu electorum militum
IIII thence with-gathered from all army of-chosen soldiers
manu Rothun Danorum urbem adiit; sed difficultate
a-band Rouen of-the-Danes the-city he-approached but by-the-difficulty
locorum asperiorique hieme ingruente plaga eos quidem
of-the-places and-by-harsher winter pressing with-a-blow them indeed
magna percussit, incolumi exercitu infecto negotio post
great he-struck with-unharmed army with-business unfinished after

tres menses Saxoniam regressus est, urbibus Remense atque
three months to-Saxony returned has with-the-cities Reims and
Lugduno cum caeteris armis captis Hluthowico regi concessis.
Laon with the-other by-arms captured to-Louis the-king granted
V. Huga autem expertus potentiam regis virtutemque
V Hugh however having-experienced the-power of-the-king and-the-valor
Saxonum non passus est ultra terminos suos hostiliter intrare,
of-the-Saxons not allowed has beyond boundaries his hostilely to-enter
sed pergenti in eandem expeditionem anno sequenti
but to-him-proceeding on the-same expedition in-the-year following
occurrit iuxta fluvium qui dicitur Car, manus dedit iuxtaque
he-met-him near the-river which is-called Chiers hands gave and-according-to
imperium regis pactum iniit, utilisque proinde permansit.
the-command of-the-king a-pact entered and-useful thenceforth remained
VI. Videns autem rex filium suum Liudulfum virum factum
VI seeing however the-king son his Liudolf a-man made
dedit ei coniugem divitiis ac nobilitate claram, ducis
gave to-him a-wife in-riches and nobility famous of-duke
Herimanni filiam nomine Idam. Quam cum accepisset, in
Hermann the-daughter by-name Ida whom when he-had-received in
brevi post haec socer moritur, cum ducatu omni
a-short-time after these-things the-father-in-law dies with the-duchy all
ei possessione relicta. Accepta autem potestate animum
to-him possession left with-received however power the-mind
tranquillum, quem in puero gessit, exuit, armatumque
tranquil which in boy he-bore he-put-off and-armed
militem in Italiam ducens, aliquantis ibi urbibus captis et
soldiery into Italy leading with-some there cities captured and
sub custodia traditis, ipse revertitur in Franciam.
under guard handed-over he returns into Franconia

VII. Eo tempore usurpato imperio regnavit in Longobardia
VII at-that time with-usurped rule reigned in Lombardy
homo ferus et avarus, et qui omnem iustitiam pecunia
a-man wild and greedy and who all justice for-money
venderet, Bernharius. Veritus autem singularis prudentiae
sold Berengar fearing however of-singular prudence
reginae virtutem a Hluthowico rege relictae, in multis
of-the-queen the-virtue by Louis the-king left in many-ways
eam afflixit, quo tanti decus splendoris extingueret vel
her he-afflicted so-that of-so-great the-glory of-splendor he-might-quench or
certe obscuraret.
certainly might-obscure
VIII. Illo tempore rex proficiscitur in militiam contra
VIII at-that time the-king sets-out on campaign against
Bolizlavum regem Boemiorum; et cum capienda esset urbs quae
Boleslav the-king of-the-Bohemians and when to-be-taken was the-city which
nuncupabatur Nova, in qua clausus obsidebatur Bolizlavi filius,
was-named New in which shut-in was-besieged of-Boleslav the-son
prudenti rex consilio diremit prelium, ne miles in rapiendis
by-prudent the-king counsel broke-off the-battle lest the-soldiery in seizing
hostium spoliis aliquod periculum incideret. Considerata
of-the-enemies the-spoils some danger should-fall-into with-considered
itaque virtute regis ac innumera multitudine exercitus,
therefore the-valor of-the-king and countless multitude of-the-army
Bolizlav urbe egressus maluit tantae maiestati subici
Boleslav from-the-city having-gone-out preferred to-so-great majesty to-be-subjected
quam ultimam perniciem pati. Sub signisque stans et
than last ruin to-suffer under and-the-standards standing and
regem audiens responsaque reddens, veniam tandem promeruit.
the-king hearing and-answers returning pardon at-last earned
Inde plena victoria gloriosus factus rex Saxoniam regreditur.
thence by-full victory glorious made the-king to-Saxony returns

VIIII. Cumque eum virtus prefatae reginae non lateret,
VIIII and-when him the-virtue of-the-aforesaid queen not lay-hidden-from
simulato itinere Romam proficisci statuit. Cumque in
with-feigned journey to-Rome to-set-out he-decided and-when into
Longobardiam ventum esset, aureis muneribus amorem
Lombardy come it-had-been with-golden gifts the-love
reginae super se probare temptavit. Quo fideliter experto,
of-the-queen toward himself to-prove he-tried which faithfully tested
in coniugium sibi eam sociavit cumque ea urbem Papiam,
in marriage to-himself her he-joined and-with her the-city Pavia
quae est sedes regia, obtinuit. Quod cum vidisset filius eius
which is the-seat royal obtained which when had-seen son his
Liudulfus, tristis a rege discessit, profectusque in Saxoniam
Liudolf sad from the-king departed and-having-set-out into Saxony
aliquamdiu moratus est in loco consiliis funesto Salaveldun.
for-some-while delayed has in the-place for-counsels deadly Saalfeld
X. Rex vero in Italia celebratis iuxta magnificentiam
X the-king however in Italy with-celebrated according-to magnificence
regalem nuptiis proficiscitur inde cum novi matrimonii
royal nuptials sets-out thence with of-the-new marriage
claritate acturus proximum pascha in Saxonia, laetitiam
the-brilliance about-to-keep the-next Easter in Saxony gladness
patriae magnamque gratiam conferens. Persuasus quoque
to-the-homeland and-great favor bringing persuaded also
rex Bernharius a Cuonrado duce, cui Papia cum presidio
king Berengar by Conrad the-duke to-whom Pavia with garrison
militari relicta erat custodienda, regem subsecutus est in
military left had-been to-be-guarded the-king followed has into
Germaniam, pacem cum eo facturus et omnibus quae
Germany peace with him about-to-make and in-all-things which
imperavisset obtemperaturus. Cui regiae urbi appropinquanti
he-should-command about-to-obey to-whom the-royal city approaching

occurritur miliario ab urbe a ducibus et prefectis
is-met at-a-milestone from the-city by the-dukes and prefects
palatinorumque primoribus, et regaliter susceptus, ductus in
and-of-the-palatines the-chief-men and royally received led into
urbem, iussus est in hospitio sibi parato manere. Neque
the-city ordered was in lodging for-him prepared to-stay nor
enim faciem regis intra tres dies videre promeruit. Quod
for the-face of-the-king within three days to-see did-he-earn which
aegre ferens Cuonradus, qui eum adduxerat, unumque cum
grievously bearing Conrad who him had-brought and-one-thing with
eo sentiens filius regis Liudulfus, suspectum super hac
him feeling the-son of-the-king Liudolf suspected about this
causa Heinricum fratrem regis habentes, quasi antiqua
cause Henry the-brother of-the-king holding as-if by-old
stimulatum invidia, devitaverunt eum. Heinricus autem sciens
goaded envy avoided him Henry however knowing
adolescentem maternis destitutum suffragiis, contemptui coepit
the-youth of-maternal deprived support in-contempt began
eum habere, in tantum ut a conviciis ei quoque non
him to-hold in so-much that from insults to-him even not
parceret. Interea rex regem alloquitur, in gratiamque regis
he-spared meanwhile the-king the-king addresses into and-the-favor of-the-king
ac reginae susceptus deditionis sponsionem dat foederisque
and of-the-queen received of-surrender a-pledge gives and-of-treaty
spontanei diem locumque apud urbem Augustanam designans.
voluntary the-day and-place at the-city Augsburg designating

At Augsburg Berengar submits. Otto's sons by Adelheid are named. Liudolf and Conrad plot against Otto, who is forced to a pact at Mainz and then repudiates it; Archbishop Frederick falls under suspicion. The Lotharingians rise against Conrad, and Otto besieges Liudolf in Mainz for sixty days. Henry taunts Liudolf with a straw from the ground.

XI. Ubi cum conventus fieret, Bernharius manus filii sui
XI where when the-assembly was-made Berengar the-hands of-son his
Adalberhti suis manibus inplicans, licet olim Hugonem fugiens
Adalbert in-his hands enfolding though once Hugh fleeing
regi subderetur, tunc tamen renovata fide coram omni
to-the-king he-had-been-subjected then nevertheless with-renewed faith before all
exercitu famulatui regis se cum filio subiugavit; et ita
the-army to-the-service of-the-king himself with the-son subjected and thus
dimissus in Italiam remeavit cum gratia et pace. Ibi mirae
dismissed into Italy returned with favor and peace there of-wondrous
magnitudinis lapis grandinis tonitru ac tempestate turbulenta
size a-stone of-hail with-thunder and storm turbulent
de caelo iactus ingens miraculum multis visentibus prebuit.
from heaven thrown a-huge miracle to-many seeing offered
XII. Nati sunt autem regi filii ex serenissima regina
XII born were however to-the-king sons from the-most-serene queen
primogenitus Heinricus, secundus Brun, tertius paterni
the-first-born Henry the-second Bruno the-third of-the-paternal
nominis maiestate designatus, quem iam post patrem
of-name by-the-majesty marked whom now after the-father
dominum ac imperatorem universus sperat orbis; filiam
as-lord and emperor the-whole hopes world a-daughter
quoque sanctae matris eius vocabulo insignitam, de qua
also of-the-holy mother his with-the-name marked about whom

non presumimus aliquid dicere, cum eius claritas precellat
not we-presume anything to-say since her brightness surpasses
omne quod dicere aut scribere valemus.
all which to-say or to-write we-are-able
XIII. Enimvero rex cum regiones Francorum urbesque
XIII indeed the-king when the-regions of-the-Franks and-cities
circuiret, audivit, quia ei insidiae pararentur a filio
he-went-round heard that for-him ambushes were-prepared by the-son
generoque; quapropter summus pontifex revocatus, ubi
and-son-in-law wherefore the-highest pontiff recalled where
austeriorem vitam more solito cum heremitis et
a-harsher life in-the-manner wonted with hermits and
solitariis ante pascha agebat, suscepit regem Mogontiae,
solitaries before Easter he-led received the-king at-Mainz
ibi ei aliquamdiu ministrans. Nefanda consilia prodita a
there to-him for-some-while ministering the-wicked counsels betrayed by
filio generoque animadversa; purgandi locum criminis cum
the-son and-son-in-law noticed of-purging a-place of-the-charge with
consilio pontificis petunt et inpetrant. Qui licet sceleris
the-counsel of-the-pontiff they-seek and obtain who though of-crime
manifeste arguerentur, paruit tamen rex eorum sententiis
manifestly they-were-convicted obeyed nevertheless the-king their sentences
in omnibus locorum temporumque angustia.
in all-things of-places and-of-times by-the-straitness
XIIII. Et cum apparatus paschalis apud Aquas fieri
XIIII and when the-preparations of-Easter at Aachen to-be-made
oporteret, comperit, quia nichil sibi dignum ibi paratum
it-behooved he-found that nothing for-him worthy there prepared
esset; maternis gaudiis et officiis decenter curatur, regemque,
was with-maternal joys and offices fittingly he-is-cared-for and-the-king
quem in Francia pene perdidit, in patria magnifice recepit.
whom in Franconia almost she-lost in the-homeland magnificently received

XV. Nam confortatus amicorum gentisque propriae presentia
XV for strengthened of-friends and-of-people own by-the-presence
irritum fecit pactum, quod coactus inire confessus
void he-made the-pact which compelled to-enter confessed
est. Edictumque est filio generoque auctores sceleris
has and-proclaimed it-was to-the-son and-son-in-law the-authors of-the-crime
puniendos tradere aut certe se hostes publicos
to-be-punished to-hand-over or certainly themselves enemies public
nosse. Pactis pristinis pontifex intercessit, tamquam
to-know-to-be for-the-pacts former the-pontiff interceded as-if
paci et concordiae consulturus. Ob id regi fit
for-peace and concord about-to-provide on-account-of this to-the-king he-becomes
suspectus, amicis regalibus consiliariisque omnimodis
suspect by-the-friends royal and-counselors in-all-ways
spernendus. De eo nostrum arbitramur nequaquam aliquid
to-be-spurned about him ours we-judge in-no-way anything
temere iudicare; sed quod de eo probamus, quia magnus
rashly to-judge but what about him we-attest that great
erat oratione die noctuque, magnus elemosinarum largitate,
he-was in-prayer by-day and-night great of-alms in-generosity
precipuus verbo predicationis, non silere dignum duximus;
outstanding in-word of-preaching not to-be-silent worthy we-have-reckoned
caeterum de accusatis causis qui iudicat Dominus est.
for-the-rest about the-accused causes he-who judges the-Lord is
XVI. Earum rerum dum ibi finis non fieret, universalis
XVI of-those things since there an-end not was-made of-the-universal
populi conventus esse iubetur apud villam quae dicitur
people an-assembly to-be is-ordered at the-estate which is-called
Fridisleri, super his causis discutiendum. Ubi cum frater
Fritzlar about these causes to-be-discussed where when the-brother
regis Heinricus adesset, multas ac graves causas summo
of-the-king Henry was-present many and heavy charges to-the-highest

pontifici obiciebat; proptereaque regis totiusque pene
pontiff he-objected and-therefore of-the-king and-of-the-whole almost
exercitus offensam incurrit, dum eum penitus culpabilem
army the-offense he-incurred since him wholly guilty
ex illius dictis censerent. Preterea rex severiorem animum
from his sayings they-judged besides the-king a-severer mind
gerens ex recenti iniuria, eminentissimos viros ac sibi
bearing from the-recent wrong most-eminent men and to-himself
quondam caros et in Biertanico bello fideles fratri traditos
once dear and in the-Birten war faithful to-the-brother handed-over
exilio dampnavit, dum accusati rationem redderent nec se
to-exile he-condemned since the-accused account rendered nor themselves
purgare sufficerent. Hi erant Thuringi genere, potestatis
to-purge sufficed these were Thuringians by-race of-power
prefectoriae, Dadanus et Wilhelmus nomine. Hoc facto
prefectorial Dado and William by-name this done
multi scelerum conscii satis perterriti. Soluta contione,
many of-crimes aware very thoroughly-terrified with-dissolved assembly
multitudine dimissa, sese rex in orientales partes contulit.
with-the-multitude dismissed himself the-king into the-eastern parts betook
XVII. Lotharii autem cum regem duci Cuonrado
XVII the-Lotharingians however when the-king with-duke Conrad
sensissent offensum, cum iam olim ei infesti essent,
they-had-perceived offended since now long-ago to-him hostile they-were
eo quod ducatum super eos administraret ipsis
on-that because the-duchy over them he-administered with-themselves
invitis, arma contra eum sumunt. Ille vero inperterritus,
unwilling arms against him take-up he however undaunted
leoninum exerens animum, signa signis contraria invexit
a-lion's putting-forth spirit standards to-standards opposed brought-on
et incredibilem multitudinem ex eis propria manu fudit,
and an-incredible multitude of them with-own hand routed

dum sanguine amici, quem in prelio amisit, Cuonradi
since by-the-blood of-a-friend whom in battle he-lost of-Conrad
scilicet, Evurhardi filii, ut fera saevissima acueretur.
namely of-Eberhard of-the-son as a-wild-beast most-savage he-was-sharpened
Itaque illi fortissimo subpeditante fortium militum manu,
therefore to-that bravest-one supplying of-brave soldiers a-band
adverso exercitui dum novus semper additur, a
against-the-opposing army while new always is-added from
meridie usque in vesperum protrahitur bellum. Nocte
noon until into evening is-drawn-out the-battle by-night
prelium dissolvitur, nullus victoria laetatur.
the-battle is-broken-off no-one in-victory rejoices
XVIII. Rex autem circa Kalendas Iulii moto exercitu
XVIII the-king however around the-Kalends of-July with-moved army
armis filium generumque quaerere temptavit; obvias urbes
with-arms the-son and-son-in-law to-seek tried in-the-way cities
partis adversae aut armis cepit aut in deditionem
of-the-party opposing either by-arms he-took or into surrender
accepit, quousque Mogontiam perveniret, quam filius cum
received until Mainz he-reached which the-son with
exercitu intravit, patremque, dictu miserabilius! armatus
the-army entered and-the-father to-say more-pitiable armed
expectavit. Ibi plus quam civile et omni calamitate
awaited there more than civil and than-every calamity
acerbius bellum coeptum. Multae machinae muris admotae,
more-bitter a-war was-begun many engines to-the-walls moved
sed ab urbanis destructae vel incensae. Crebrae ante portas
but by the-townsmen destroyed or burned frequent before the-gates
pugnae, raro forinsecus stationes fusae. Cunctando enim
fights rarely outside the-posts routed by-delaying for
res universae variavere, dum dominatorem regni foris,
the-things all varied since the-ruler of-the-realm outside

intus successorem metuebant. Obsidio itaque dum sexaginta
inside the-successor they-feared the-siege therefore when sixty
ferme dies excederet, sermo fit de pace; unde datus
almost days it-exceeded talk is-made of peace whence given
est obses in urbem consobrinus regis Ecberhtus, quo
was as-hostage into the-city the-cousin of-the-king Ecbert so-that
libera via cuilibet pateret in castra crimen purgandi,
a-free way to-anyone might-lie-open into the-camp the-charge of-purging
de pace atque concordia tractandi. Filius cum genero
about peace and concord of-treating the-son with the-son-in-law
castra ingressi regalibus vestigiis prosternuntur: pro scelere
the-camp having-entered at-the-royal feet are-prostrated for the-crime
omnia sustinere paratos fore, saltem ut amici auxiliatores
all-things to-endure ready to-be provided that the-friends helpers
in fide suscepti nichil adversi paterentur. Rex autem non
into faith received nothing adverse should-suffer the-king however not
inveniens, quomodo meritas poenas filio inferret, fautores
finding how deserved penalties on-the-son he-might-inflict the-abettors
insidiarum expostulat. Illi autem iuramentis vicariis obligati et
of-the-ambushes demands they however by-oaths reciprocal bound and
quodammodo arte antiqui hostis constricti hoc omnino
in-a-certain-way by-the-art of-the-ancient enemy constrained this wholly
negabant. Ingens interea oritur laetitia in castris, et a castris
denied huge meanwhile arises gladness in the-camp and from the-camp
circumquaque fama diffusa numquam urbe egressos,
round-about the-report spread never from-the-city to-have-gone-out
nisi omnibus essent a rege imperatis obtemperaturi. Eae spes
unless in-all-things they-were by the-king commanded about-to-obey those hopes
incassum conceptae. Nam cum non obedirent edictis regis,
in-vain conceived for when not they-obeyed the-edicts of-the-king
motus Heinricus adversus adolescentem: ‘Nichil te’, inquit,
moved Henry against the-youth nothing you he-says

‘iactitas contra dominum meum regem fecisse, et ecce omnis
boast against lord my the-king to-have-done and behold all
exercitus usurpatorem te regni invasoremque novit. Ipse
the-army as-usurper you of-the-realm and-invader knows I
ergo si accusor reus criminis, si culpabilis existo, quare non
therefore if I-am-accused guilty of-the-crime if guilty I-stand why not
contra me legiones ducis? Signa adversum me move’; et
against me the-legions do-you-lead the-standards against me move and
festucam de terra sumens: ‘Huius’, inquit, ‘pretii a me
a-straw from the-ground taking of-this he-says of-value from me
meaque potestate rapere non poteris. Quid tibi visum est
and-my power to-seize not you-will-be-able what to-you seemed has
sollicitare huiuscemodi rebus patrem tuum? contra summam
to-trouble of-this-kind with-things father your against the-highest
divinitatem agis, dum domino patrique tuo repugnas. Si
divinity you-act while the-lord and-father your you-oppose if
aliquid scis vel vales, in me furorem tuum evome, ipse
anything you-know or are-able on me fury your vomit-out I
enim tuam non timeo iram’. Ad haec adolescens nichil
for your not fear wrath to these-things the-youth nothing
respondit, sed audito rege cum suis urbem ingressus est.
answered but with-heard the-king with his-men the-city entered has

Ecbert defects; the Bavarians join Liudolf and take Regensburg. Wichmann rails against Hermann. The Hungarians, guided by Liudolf's men, ravage Franconia and are feasted at Worms. At Zenn Otto laments his son's treason, Henry calls the hiring of the Hungarians a crime, and Liudolf pleads necessity.

XVIIII. Consobrinus autem regis Ecberhtus cum obses
XVIIII the-cousin however of-the-king Ecbert when as-hostage
datus esset in urbem, suasibilibus corruptus verbis regi
given he-had-been into the-city by-persuasive corrupted words to-the-king
fit aversus, cum et antea ei iratus esset, eo quod
becomes hostile since also before with-him angry he-was on-that because
argueretur incauti certaminis, ubi oculum perdidisset.
he-was-blamed for-an-incautious contest where an-eye he-had-lost
XX. Dum haec agerentur, proxima nocte Boioarii
XX while these-things were-done on-the-next night the-Bavarian
comites fratris regis relicto eo iuncti sunt Liudulfo.
counts of-the-brother of-the-king with-left him joined were to-Liudolf
Qui pergens cum eis cepit urbem regiam quae dicitur
who proceeding with them took the-city royal which is-called
Rainesburg cum caeteris in ea regione munitissimis omnemque
Regensburg with the-other in that region most-fortified and-all
pecuniam ducis suis militibus divisit; coniugem cum filiis
the-money of-the-duke to-his soldiers he-divided the-wife with the-sons
patrui et amicis non solum urbe, sed et regione
of-the-paternal-uncle and the-friends not only from-the-city but also from-the-region
excedere cogit. Haec omnia a Deo credimus acta, ut qui
to-go-out he-compels these all by God we-believe done that he-who

serenissimum regem plurimis populis ac gentibus preficere
the-most-serene king over-very-many peoples and nations to-set
voluit, disceret parum in se, in Deo vero omnia posse.
wished might-learn little in himself in God however all-things to-be-able
XXI. Erat autem iunior Arnulfus cum fratribus, qui
XXI there-was however the-younger Arnulf with the-brothers who
tale consilium machinatus est contra Heinricum, eo
such counsel contrived has against Henry on-that
quod paterno regno subrogaretur, ipse autem honore
because to-the-paternal realm he-was-substituted he however from-the-honor
patrio privatus esset. Porro exercitus diutino labore fatigatus
paternal deprived was further the-army by-long labor wearied
missionem petit et accipit, rege cum paucis admodum
discharge seeks and receives with-the-king with few very
filium in Boioariam subsequente.
the-son into Bavaria following
XXII. Ipse namque erat patiens laborum supra quam
XXII he for was patient of-labors above than
credi possit de homine ab adolescentia delicate nutrito.
to-be-believed could about a-man from youth delicately reared
Multitudine denique deficiente a fide, rari admodum
with-the-multitude finally failing from faith rare very
erant, qui partes regis adiuvarent. Inter quos erat quidam
were who the-side of-the-king helped among whom was a-certain
Adalberhtus et alii cum eo admodum pauci.
Adalbert and others with him very few
XXIII. Militante adversus Mogontiam rege Herimannus
XXIII with-campaigning against Mainz the-king Hermann
dux Saxoniam procurabat. Cum novus exercitus a
the-duke Saxony managed when a-new army from
Saxonia ad supplementum veteris mitti debuisset, Thiadricus
Saxony for the-supplement of-the-old to-be-sent ought Theodoric

iuniorque Wichmannus ei prefuere. Attingentes terminos
and-the-younger Wichmann over-it were-set reaching the-borders
Francorum, a Liudulfo duceque Cuonrado subito circumfusi,
of-the-Franks by Liudolf and-duke Conrad suddenly surrounded
in desertum quoddam coguntur castellum. Quod cum
into a-deserted certain they-are-driven castle which when
obpugnare nituntur, iactu rotae signifer ante
to-assault they-strive by-the-throw of-a-wheel the-standard-bearer before
portam brachium perdidit. Quo facto bellum est sedatum,
the-gate an-arm lost which done the-war was calmed
indutiaeque concessae trium dierum in Saxoniam revertendi.
and-a-truce granted of-three days into Saxony of-returning
XXIIII. Thiadricus a Liudulfo magnis promissionibus
XXIIII Theodoric by Liudolf with-great promises
est temptatus, Wichmannus autem admodum corruptus.
was tempted Wichmann however very corrupted
Patruum exin arguere, paternae hereditatis raptorem
the-paternal-uncle thenceforth to-blame of-the-paternal inheritance the-robber
dicere et suorum thesaurorum predonem vocare coepit. Ipse
to-call and of-his treasures the-plunderer to-call he-began he
autem consilii nequaquam ignarus, quanta sapientia
however of-the-counsel in-no-way ignorant with-how-great wisdom
quantaque prudentia contra propinquos et hostes manifestos
and-how-great prudence against kinsmen and enemies manifest
vigilaverit, difficile est omnimodis edicere.
he-watched difficult it-is in-every-way to-tell
XXV. Iungitur quippe Ecberhtus Wichmanno, eademque
XXV is-joined indeed Ecbert to-Wichmann and-with-the-same
sententia consurgunt in ducem nullumque ei dant
purpose they-rise against the-duke and-no to-him they-give
quietis otium. Ille autem nobili patientia iuvenum furorem
of-quiet leisure he however with-noble patience of-the-youths the-fury

frangens cavet tumultum aliquem rege absente illis
breaking takes-care-lest tumult any with-the-king absent those
in partibus accrescere.
in parts should-grow
XXVI. Boioarii repentino regis adventu nec ad pacem
XXVI the-Bavarians at-the-sudden of-the-king arrival neither to peace
vertuntur nec bellum publicum presumunt, sed clausi muris
are-turned nor war public venture but shut-in by-walls
grandem exercitui laborem suaeque regionis solitudinem
great for-the-army labor and-for-their region desolation
parant. Unde minus procedente negotio, absque animabus
prepare whence less with-advancing business except-for souls
exercitus a nulla re abstinebat, sed omnia vastabat.
the-army from no thing abstained but all-things laid-waste
XXVII. Summus pontifex interea, ut ipse aiebat timore regis,
XXVII the-highest pontiff meanwhile as he said from-fear of-the-king
officio pontificali amisso heremiticam cum solitariis ducebat
with-office pontifical lost a-hermit's with solitaries led
vitam. Non minima quoque caeteris pontificibus cunctatio erat
life not least also for-the-other pontiffs hesitation was
in Boioaria, dum favent partibus, nunc regi assistendo, nunc
in Bavaria while they-favor the-parties now the-king by-assisting now
alienas partes adiuvando, quia nec sine periculo alienabantur
another's side by-helping because neither without danger were-they-estranged
a rege nec sine sui detrimento ei adhaerebant.
from the-king nor without their-own loss to-him did-they-cleave
XXVIII. Agens tres integros menses — a Mogontia
XXVIII spending three whole months from Mainz
recedens — rex in illis regionibus, demum circa Kalend.
withdrawing the-king in those regions at-last around the-Kalends
Ianuar. infecto negotio, amissis duobus principalibus
of-January with-unfinished business with-lost two principal

viris ac potestate claris, Immede et Mainwerco, quorum
men and in-power famous Immed and Meinwerk of-whom
uterque ictu sagittarum periit, alter Mogontiae, alter
each by-the-stroke of-arrows perished the-one at-Mainz the-other
in itinere Boioariam pergentibus, revertitur in Saxoniam.
on the-journey to-Bavaria with-them-proceeding returns into Saxony
XXVIIII. Causas dicentibus coram rege Herimanno
XXVIIII with-pleading causes before the-king Hermann
suisque nepotibus, omnes iusti tenaces sententiam ducis
and-his nephews all of-the-just holding-fast the-sentence of-the-duke
laudavere, adolescentes castigandos iudicantes. Rex autem
praised the-youths to-be-chastised judging the-king however
amans parcebat illis, sub custodia militari tantum intra
loving spared them under custody military only within
palatium tradens Wichmannum.
the-palace handing-over Wichmann
XXX. Interea audit, quia Avares intrantes Boioariam iungerentur
XXX meanwhile he-hears that the-Avars entering Bavaria were-joined
adversariis disponerentque publico bello eum temptare. At
to-the-adversaries and-were-arranging in-public war him to-try but
ille satis inperterritus tali necessitate numquam se gratia
he very undaunted in-such necessity never himself by-the-grace
Dei dominum ac regem oblitus est, sed collecta valida
of-God lord and king forgot has but with-gathered strong
manu obviam procedit acerrimis hostibus. Illi autem divertunt
band to-meet-them advances the-fiercest enemies they however turn-aside
ab eo acceptisque ducibus a Liudulfo omnem Franciam
from him and-with-received guides from Liudolf all Franconia
pervagati sunt et tantam stragem dederunt primum amicis,
roamed-through have and such slaughter gave first to-the-friends
ut cuidam Ernusto vocabulo, qui erat partis adversae,
that from-a-certain Ernst by-name who was of-the-party opposing

sui iuris familias supra millesimum numerum captivassent,
of-his-own right households above the-thousandth number they-took-captive
deinde caeteris omnibus, ut dictu fidem excedat. Dominica
then to-the-others all so-that to-say faith exceeds on-the-Sunday
ante pascha Wormatiae eis est publice ministratum et
before Easter at-Worms to-them was publicly served and
muneribus auri et argenti plurimum donatum. Inde in
with-gifts of-gold and of-silver very-much presented thence into
Galliam profecti per aliam viam in patriam revertuntur.
Gaul having-set-out by another way into the-homeland they-return
XXXI. Boioarii civili exercitu externoque fatigati — nam
XXXI the-Bavarians by-civil army and-external wearied for
Ungariis egressis exercitu regali premuntur — coacti
with-the-Hungarians gone-out by-the-army royal are-pressed compelled
sunt de pace tractare. Factumque est, ut pax daretur
were about peace to-treat and-done it-was that peace be-given
usque in XVI. Kalend. Iulii, et locus esset apud
until to the-sixteenth Kalends of-July and the-place be at
Cinnam rationis dandae et responsionis reddendae.
Zenn of-account to-be-given and of-answer to-be-returned
XXXII. Ad condictum locum dum universalis populi conventus
XXXII to the-agreed place when of-the-universal people the-assembly
fieret, talem rex orationem exorsus est: 'Paterer', inquit,
was-made such the-king speech begun has I-would-bear-it he-says
'si indignatio filii mei caeterorumque insidias tendentium
if the-indignation of-son my and-of-the-others ambushes laying
me solum torqueret et non totum Christiani nominis
me alone tormented and not the-whole of-the-Christian name
populum perturbaret. Parum esset urbes meas more
people disturbed little it-would-be cities my in-the-manner
latronum invasisse regionesque a mea potestate rapuisse,
of-robbers to-have-invaded and-regions from my power to-have-seized

nisi propinquorum meorum ac carissimorum comitum
unless of-kinsmen my and dearest counts
sanguine satiarentur. Ecce sine filiis sedeo orbatus, dum
with-the-blood they-were-sated behold without sons I-sit bereaved while
filium gravissimum hostem patior; quem plurimum amavi
the-son most-grievous enemy I-suffer whom very-much I-loved
et a mediocri loco ad summum gradum summumque
and from a-middling place to the-highest rank and-highest
honorem provexi, unicum filium meum habet adversum me.
honor I-advanced only son my he-has against me
Tolerabile hoc utcumque foret, si non Dei hominumque
bearable this somehow would-be if not of-God and-of-men
inimici his causis introducerentur. Modo regnum meum
enemies by-these causes were-brought-in now realm my
habent desolatum, populum captum vel interfectum, urbes
they-hold desolate the-people captured or killed the-cities
destructas, templa succensa, sacerdotes extinctos; adhuc
destroyed the-temples burned the-priests destroyed still
madent sanguine plateae. Auro meo et argento, quibus
are-wet with-blood the-streets with-gold my and silver with-which
filium generumque ditavi, hostes Christi sedes suas remeunt
the-son and-son-in-law I-enriched the-enemies of-Christ seats their return-to
referti. Quid igitur supersit sceleris, quid perfidiae, excogitare
crammed what therefore may-remain of-crime what of-treachery to-devise
nequeam'. His dictis tacuit rex. Heinricus laudans
I-cannot with-these said fell-silent the-king Henry praising
sententiam regis subiunxit, quia hostes secundo victi
the-sentence of-the-king added that the-enemies a-second-time conquered
publico certamine maligne ac pessime conducerentur, quo
in-public contest maignly and most-wickedly were-hired by-which
via eis iterum laedendi aperiretur; omnem calamitatem
the-way to-them again of-harming might-be-opened all calamity

omnemque laborem consultius velle pati, quam communem
and-all labor more-advisedly to-wish to-suffer than the-common
hostem umquam in fide susciperet. His dictis Liudulfus
enemy ever into faith he-should-receive with-these said Liudolf
procedens ait: 'Conductos adversum me pecunia, fateor,
advancing says hired against me with-money I-confess
obtinui, ne me michique subiectos laederent. Si in
I-obtained-them lest me and-to-me subject-ones they-should-harm if in
hac parte culpabilis predicor, sciat me omnis populus
this part guilty I-am-proclaimed let-know me all the-people
hoc non voluntarie, sed ultima necessitate coactum fecisse'.
this not voluntarily but by-last necessity compelled to-have-done
Postremum pontifex summus rationem redditurus intravit,
last the-pontiff highest account about-to-render entered
promittens se quocumque rex imperavisset iudicio
promising himself by-whatever the-king should-have-commanded judgment
significaturum numquam contra regem sensisse vel velle vel
about-to-signify never against the-king to-have-thought or wished or
fecisse; timore coactum a rege discessisse, offensum sibi
done by-fear compelled from the-king to-have-departed offended at-himself
eum quia intellexisset, innocentem gravissimis accusationibus
him because he-had-understood the-innocent by-most-heavy accusations
obrutum; de caetero iuramentorum omnibus argumentis
overwhelmed for the-rest of-oaths by-all arguments
fidem servaturum. Ad haec rex: 'A vobis non exigo
faith about-to-keep to these-things the-king from you not I-demand
iuramentum, nisi pacis et concordiae consilium, in quantum
an-oath only of-peace and concord the-counsel in as-much-as
possitis, adiuvetis'. Et hoc dato in fide ac pace eum dimisit.
you-can may-you-help and this given in faith and peace him he-dismissed

Conrad and Archbishop Frederick desert Liudolf. Otto besieges Regensburg, where Arnulf the younger dies; Liudolf at last falls at his father's feet in penance. Frederick dies, and Regensburg surrenders. The Hungarians invade again; Otto draws up eight legions near Augsburg, the Hungarians cross the Lech and fall on the baggage, and Conrad recovers it.

XXXIII. Pontifex cum duce Cuonrado, cum adolescentem
XXXIII the-pontiff with duke Conrad when the-youth
non possent inclinare, quatinus patri subderetur
not they-could incline so-that to-the-father he-should-be-subjected
eiusque sententiam secutus sustineret, discesserunt ab eo,
and-his sentence following he-should-bear departed from him
Deo regique sese iungentes.
to-God and-to-the-king themselves joining
XXXIIII. Proxima nocte Liudulfus cum suis a rege
XXXIIII on-the-next night Liudolf with his-men from the-king
discedens urbem Rainesburg cum exercitu intravit. Rex
departing the-city Regensburg with the-army entered the-king
autem sequens filium, urbem offendens quae dicitur Horsadal,
however following the-son the-city coming-upon which is-called Horsadal
obsedit eam.
besieged it
XXXV. Facta autem pugna durius certamen circa murum
XXXV made however the-fight a-harder contest around a-wall
nemo umquam viderat mortalium. Multi ibi ex utraque
no-one ever had-seen of-mortals many there from each
parte caesi, plures sauciati; noctis tenebrae prelium dirimere.
side slain more wounded of-night the-darkness the-battle broke-off

Saucius ancipiti bello postera luce ducitur inde exercitus,
wounded in-doubtful war on-the-next light is-led thence the-army
diutius ibi non morari visum ad graviora tendentibus.
longer there not to-stay it-seemed to graver-things to-those-tending
XXXVI. Trium dierum itiner proinde ad Rainesburg.
XXXVI of-three days the-march thereupon to Regensburg
Castrorum loca occupata munitionibusque circumsepta,
of-the-camp the-places occupied and-with-fortifications fenced-round
obsidio urbis diligenter est incepta. Sed cum multitudo
the-siege of-the-city diligently was begun but since the-multitude
machinas muris adplicari non sineret, satis dure interdum
the-engines to-the-walls to-be-applied not allowed very harshly sometimes
ab utrisque pugnatum pro muris. Diu tracta obsidio cogit
by both it-was-fought before the-walls long drawn-out the-siege compels
clausos belli negotiis aliquid actitare. Arbitrati sunt enim
the-shut-in of-war in-affairs something to-do judged they-have for
fame peius torqueri, si ad id cogerentur, quam in
by-hunger worse to-be-tortured if to that they-were-compelled than in
acie fortiter mori. Iussum itaque occidentali porta erumpere
battle bravely to-die ordered therefore by-the-western gate to-burst-out
equites quasi inpetum in castra facturos; alios naves
the-horsemen as-if an-attack on the-camp about-to-make others ships
ascendere, et per flumen urbi contiguum, dum equestri
to-board and by the-river to-the-city adjoining while with-equestrian
prelio pugnaretur, castra armatis deserta invaderent. Urbani
battle it-was-fought the-camp of-armed-men deserted to-invade the-townsmen
signo nolae congregati condicta peragere; quod in
by-the-signal of-the-bell gathered the-agreed-things to-carry-out which in
castris usu non ignotum; quapropter et ipsi non segniter
the-camp by-use not unknown wherefore also they not sluggishly
preparantur. Moram facientibus in erumpendo equitibus,
are-prepared with-making delay in bursting-out the-horsemen

classis ab urbe longius elabitur. Exilientesque de navibus
the-fleet from the-city further slips-away and-leaping from the-ships
irruunt in castra, offendentesque armatos, dum trepidi fugae
they-rush into the-camp and-meeting armed-men while trembling for-flight
consulunt, circumfusi undique caeduntur. Alii naves ingredi
they-provide surrounded on-all-sides are-slain others the-ships to-enter
nisi, timore perculsi deviantes, flumine absorbentur;
having-striven by-fear struck straying by-the-river are-swallowed
alii naves plus aequo ingressi dimerguntur; factumque
others the-ships more than-fair entering are-sunk and-done
est, ut vix pauci de pluribus superessent. Equites vero
it-was that scarcely few of many survived the-horsemen however
ab equitibus fatigati devictique, plures saucii, in urbem
by the-horsemen wearied and-conquered many wounded into the-city
coguntur. Miles regius victor in castra reversus, unum
are-driven the-soldiery royal victor into the-camp returned one
solummodo letali vulnere percussum pro portis secum
only by-a-deadly wound struck before the-gates with-themselves
revehunt. Pecus omne urbis loco herboso delatum, qui
carry-back the-cattle all of-the-city to-a-place grassy brought which
erat inter Rain et Donou fluvios, sed a fratre regis
was between the-Regen and the-Danube rivers but by the-brother of-the-king
Heinrico captum et inter socios divisum est. Urbani
Henry captured and among the-companions divided was the-townsmen
crebris preliis triti fame quoque periclitari coeperunt.
by-frequent battles worn by-hunger also to-be-endangered began
XXXVII. Unde egressus urbe Liudulfus cum
XXXVII whence having-gone-out from-the-city Liudolf with
principalibus viris pacem postulat, sed non inpetrat, quia
the-principal men peace asks but not obtains because
patri obedientiam negat. Ingressus vero urbem, portam
to-the-father obedience he-denies having-entered however the-city the-gate

orientalem obsidentem armis temptat Geronem, tot
eastern besieging with-arms he-tests Gero by-as-many
victoriis quot preliis clarum. A tertia hora usque in nonam
victories as battles famous from the-third hour until to the-ninth
acriter pugnatum; ante portam urbis equo cadente
keenly it-was-fought before the-gate of-the-city with-the-horse falling
ascensor Arnulfus armis exutus ilicoque telis perfossus
the-rider Arnulf of-arms stripped and-at-once by-weapons pierced
occubuit. Post biduum a muliere famem urbis fugiente
fell after two-days by a-woman the-hunger of-the-city fleeing
mors illius notificatur, dum antea incertum esset. Cuius
the-death his is-made-known since before uncertain it-was whose
morte urbani satis confusi iam de pace tractabant.
by-death the-townsmen much confounded now about peace treated
XXXVIII. Interventu proinde principum iterum Liudulfus
XXXVIII by-the-intervention thereupon of-the-princes again Liudolf
cum sociis urbe egressus, dum mense integro et
with companions from-the-city having-gone-out when for-a-month whole and
dimidio obsideretur, pacem obtinuit usque ad condictum
a-half he-was-besieged peace obtained until to the-agreed
diem, dum de his causis diiudicaretur, locusque concilii
day while about these causes it-should-be-judged and-the-place of-the-council
apud Fridisleri notabatur. Rex inde in patriam reversus.
at Fritzlar was-marked the-king thence into the-homeland returned
XXXVIIII. Heinricus vero Novam urbem obtinuit; Rainesburg
XXXVIIII Henry however New city obtained Regensburg
pene omnis proxima nocte arsa.
almost all on-the-next night burned
XL. Exercitandi gratia venationem agens rex in loco qui
XL of-exercising for-the-sake hunting doing the-king in the-place which
dicitur Suveldun, filius patri nudatis plantis prosternitur,
is-called Suveldun the-son to-the-father with-bared soles is-prostrated

intima tactus poenitentia, oratione flebili patris primum,
inmost touched by-penitence by-prayer tearful of-the-father first
deinde omnium presentium lacrimas extorquet. Amore itaque
then of-all present tears he-wrings-out by-love therefore
paterno susceptus in gratiam spondet se obtemperaturum
paternal received into favor he-pledges himself about-to-obey
consensurumque omni paternae voluntati.
and-about-to-consent to-all paternal will
XLI. Interea summus pontifex aegrotasse nuntiatur ac
XLI meanwhile the-highest pontiff to-have-fallen-ill is-announced and
desperari. Quapropter regis placitum modice est dilatum.
to-be-despaired-of wherefore of-the-king the-assembly moderately was postponed
Finem summi pontificis qui interfuere satis laudabilem
the-end of-the-highest pontiff those-who were-present very praiseworthy
predicant. Defuncto pontifice universalis conventus populi
proclaim with-dead pontiff the-universal assembly of-the-people
celebratus; Mogontia post annum et dimidium regi
was-celebrated Mainz after a-year and a-half to-the-king
tradita cum omni Francia; filius ac gener in gratiam
handed-over with all Franconia the-son and son-in-law into favor
suscepti, qua et in finem usi sunt fideliter.
received which also to the-end used have faithfully
XLII. Eo anno Sclavi qui dicuntur Uchri a Gerone cum
XLII in-that year the-Slavs who are-called Ukrani by Gero with
magna gloria devicti, cum ei presidio esset dux Cuonradus
great glory conquered when to-him for-help was duke Conrad
a rege missus. Preda inde ingens ducta; Saxoniae laetitia
by the-king sent booty thence huge led of-Saxony gladness
magna exorta.
great arose

XLIII. Proximum agens rex pascha cum fratre, ducit
XLIII the-next spending the-king Easter with the-brother leads
post haec exercitum contra Rainesburg, iterum armis
after these-things the-army against Regensburg again with-arms
machinisque urbem torquens. Dum presidio Saxonum
and-engines the-city torturing while of-the-garrison of-the-Saxons
destituitur ac fame vexatur, portis urbani egressi
it-is-deprived and by-hunger is-harried by-the-gates the-townsmen having-gone-out
cum urbe tradiderunt semet ipsos regi. Qui principes exilio
with the-city handed-over themselves selves to-the-king who the-princes to-exile
dampnans, reliquae multitudini parcit, victoriaque gloriosus
condemning to-the-remaining multitude spares and-in-victory glorious
remeavit in patriam, omni regione Boioarica fratri restituta.
returned into the-homeland with-all region Bavarian to-the-brother restored
XLIIII. Ingressusque Saxoniam circa Kalend. Iulii obvios
XLIIII and-having-entered Saxony around the-Kalends of-July meeting-him
habet legatos Ungariorum, tamquam ob antiquam fidem
he-has the-envoys of-the-Hungarians as-if on-account-of ancient faith
ac gratiam eum visitantes; re autem vera, ut quibusdam
and favor him visiting in-truth however true as to-some
videbatur, eventum belli civilis considerantes. Quos cum
it-seemed the-outcome of-the-war civil considering whom when
secum aliquantis diebus retinuisset et aliquibus munusculis
with-himself for-some days he-had-kept and with-some little-gifts
donatos remisisset in pace, audivit a nuntiis fratris,
presented had-sent-back in peace he-heard from the-messengers of-the-brother
ducis scilicet Boioariorum, quia ‘Ecce Ungarii diffusi
of-the-duke namely of-the-Bavarians that behold the-Hungarians spread
invadunt terminos tuos statuuntque tecum inire certamen’.
invade boundaries your and-decide with-you to-enter contest
His auditis rex, quasi nichil laboris preterito bello
with-these heard the-king as-if nothing of-labor in-the-past war

toleravisset, coepit ire contra hostes, sumptis secum paucis
he-had-endured began to-go against the-enemies with-taken with-himself few
admodum ex Saxonibus, eo quod iam bellum Sclavanicum
very of the-Saxons on-that because already the-war Slavonic
urgeret. Castris positis in confiniis Augustanae urbis, occurrit
pressed with-the-camp placed in the-borders of-the-Augsburg city met
ei exercitus Francorum Boioariorumque. Cum valido quoque
him the-army of-the-Franks and-of-the-Bavarians with strong also
equitatu venit in castra Cuonradus dux; cuius adventu erecti
cavalry came into the-camp Conrad the-duke whose by-arrival roused
milites iam optabant non differre certamen. Nam erat natura
the-soldiers now wished not to-defer the-contest for he-was by-nature
audacis animi et, quod rarum est audacibus, bonus consilii
of-bold mind and what rare is in-the-bold good in-counsel
et, dum eques et dum pedes iret in hostem, bellator
and whether on-horse and whether on-foot he-went against the-enemy a-warrior
intolerabilis, domi militiaque sociis carus. Igitur ab
unbearable at-home and-at-war to-companions dear therefore by
utriusque exercitus latrocinantibus agminibus notificabatur non
of-each army the-raiding columns it-was-made-known not
longe exercitus ab altero fore. Ieiunio in castris predicato,
far one-army from the-other to-be with-a-fast in the-camp proclaimed
iussum est omnes in crastino paratos esse ad bellum. Primo
ordered it-was all on the-morrow ready to-be for war at-first
diluculo surgentes, pace data et accepta operaque sua
dawn rising with-peace given and received and-effort their
primum duci, deinde unusquisque alteri cum sacramento
first to-the-leader then each to-the-other with oath
promissa, erectis signis procedunt castris, numero quasi
promised with-raised standards they-advance from-the-camp in-number as-if
octo legionum. Ducitur exercitus per aspera et difficilia
of-eight legions is-led the-army through rough and difficult

loca, ne daretur hostibus copia turbandi sagittis agmina,
places lest be-given to-the-enemies the-chance of-disturbing with-arrows the-columns
quibus utuntur acerrime, arbustis ea protegentibus. Primam
which they-use most-keenly with-the-thickets them protecting the-first
et secundam tertiamque legionem direxerunt Boioarii, quibus
and second and-third legion drew-up the-Bavarians over-whom
prefuerunt prefecti ducis Heinrici. Nam ipse bello interim
presided the-prefects of-duke Henry for he from-the-war meanwhile
aberat, eo quod valitudine corporis laborasset, qua
was-absent on-that because by-sickness of-body he-had-labored from-which
et mortuus est. Quartam ordinavere Franci, quorum rector
also dead he-is the-fourth arranged the-Franks whose ruler
ac procurator [erat] dux Cuonradus. In quinta, quae erat
and manager was duke Conrad in the-fifth which was
maxima, quae et dicebatur regia, ipse princeps vallatus lectis
greatest which also was-called royal himself the-prince hedged by-chosen
ex omnibus militum milibus alacrique iuventute, coramque
from all of-the-soldiers thousands and-eager youth and-before
eo angelus, penes quem victoria, denso agmine circumseptus.
him the-angel with whom victory by-dense column surrounded
Sextam et septimam construxerunt Suavi, quibus prefuit
the-sixth and seventh built the-Swabians over-whom presided
Burchardus, cui nupserat filia fratris regis. In octava
Burchard to-whom had-married the-daughter of-the-brother of-the-king in the-eighth
erant Boemi, electi milites mille, armis potius instructi
were the-Bohemians chosen soldiers a-thousand with-arms rather equipped
quam fortuna; in qua et sarcinae omnes ac inpedimenta
than with-fortune in which also the-packs all and baggage
quaeque, quasi ipsa esset tutissima, quae esset novissima.
all as-if it were most-safe which was the-last
Sed aliter res acta est ac arbitrabatur. Nam Ungarii
but otherwise the-thing done was than was-thought for the-Hungarians

nichil cunctantes Lech fluvium transierunt, circumeuntesque
nothing delaying the-Lech river crossed and-going-around
exercitum extremam legionem sagittis lascessere coeperunt;
the-army the-last legion with-arrows to-harass began
et inpetu cum ingenti vociferatione facto, aliis caesis
and with-an-attack with huge shouting made with-some slain
vel captis, sarcinis omnibus potiti, caeteros legionis
or captured of-the-packs all having-gained-possession the-rest of-legion
illius armatos fugere compulerunt. Similiter septimam ac
that armed to-flee compelled likewise the-seventh and
sextam aggressi, plurimis ex eis fusis, in fugam verterunt.
sixth attacking with-very-many of them routed into flight turned
Rex autem cum intellexisset bellum ex adverso esse et post
the-king however when he-had-understood the-battle in front to-be and behind
tergum novissima agmina periclitari, misso duce cum quarta
the-back the-last columns to-be-endangered with-sent duke with the-fourth
legione captivos eripuit, predam excussit latrocinantiaque
legion the-captives he-snatched-away the-booty he-shook-off and-the-raiding
hostium agmina proturbavit. Fusis latrocinantibus undique
of-the-enemies columns drove-off with-routed raiding on-all-sides
adversariorum agminibus, signis victricibus dux Cuonradus
of-the-adversaries columns with-standards victorious duke Conrad
ad regem revertitur. Mirumque in modum, cunctantibus
to the-king returns and-wondrous in manner with-delaying
veteranis militibus gloria victoriae assuetis, cum novo milite
veteran soldiers to-the-glory of-victory accustomed with new soldiery
et fere bellandi ignaro triumphum peregit.
and almost of-warring ignorant the-triumph he-accomplished

Theodoric loses fifty men in a marsh. Otto, holding the holy lance, exhorts his men and charges; the Hungarians break, and many drown or burn in the villages. Conrad, loosening his mail in the heat, is killed by an arrow. Three Hungarian leaders are hanged, and the army hails Otto emperor. Wichmann escapes from custody and allies himself with the Slav princes.

XLV. Dum ea geruntur in Boioaria, varie pugnatum est
XLV while these-things are-done in Bavaria variously fought it-was
a preside Thiadrico adversus barbaros. Cum capere nisus esset
by the-governor Theodoric against the-barbarians when to-take striven he-had
quandam urbem illorum, usque ad introitum portae persecutus
a-certain city of-theirs up-to to the-entrance of-the-gate pursued
est adversarios, cogens illos intra murum, oppido potito
has the-adversaries driving them within the-wall with-the-town gained
et incenso et omnibus quae foras murum erant captis vel
and burned and with-all which outside the-wall were captured or
interfectis; cum iam incendio extincto reverteretur, et paludem,
killed when now with-the-fire extinguished he-was-returning and the-marsh
quae erat urbi adiacens, medietas militum transisset, Sclavi
which was to-the-city adjacent half of-the-soldiers had-crossed the-Slavs
videntes nostros in arto sitos ob difficultatem loci
seeing ours in a-strait placed on-account-of the-difficulty of-the-place
nec copiam habere pugnandi nec locum adeo fugiendi,
neither the-chance to-have of-fighting nor place so of-fleeing
insequebantur a tergo revertentes clamore magno; peremerunt
pursued from behind returning with-a-shout great they-destroyed
ex eis ad quinquaginta viros, foeda fuga nostrorum facta.
of them up-to fifty men with-a-foul flight of-ours made

XLVI. Ingens interea pavor omnem Saxoniam trepidam pro
XLVI huge meanwhile dread all Saxony trembling for
rege et exercitu eius pro hac re adversa invasit. Terrebant
the-king and army his for this thing adverse seized terrified
nos preterea portenta inusitata. Templa denique plerisque in
us besides portents unwonted the-temples finally very-many in
locis tempestate valida concussa visentibus et audientibus
places by-storm strong shaken to-those-seeing and hearing
horrorem nimium incussere utriusque sexus; sacerdotes
horror excessive struck of-each sex priests
ictu fulminis interierunt, et alia multa illo tempore
by-the-stroke of-lightning perished and other many-things at-that time
contigerunt dictu horrenda et propterea nobis pretereunda.
happened to-say dreadful and therefore by-us to-be-passed-over
Totum pondus prelii ex adverso iam adesse conspiciens
the-whole weight of-the-battle in front now to-be-present seeing
rex exhortandi gratia allocutus est socios hoc
the-king of-exhorting for-the-sake addressed has the-companions in-this
modo: ‘Opus esse nobis bonorum animorum in hac tanta
way need to-be for-us of-good spirits in this so-great
necessitate, milites mei, vos ipsi videtis, qui hostem non
necessity soldiers my you yourselves see who the-enemy not
longe, sed coram positum toleratis. Hactenus enim inpigris
far but before-you placed endure hitherto for tireless
manibus vestris ac armis semper invictis gloriose usus
with-hands your and arms always unconquered gloriously having-used
extra solum et imperium meum ubique vici, et nunc
outside soil and empire my everywhere I-conquered and now
in terra mea et regno meo terga vertam? Superamur, scio,
in land my and realm my backs shall-I-turn we-are-surpassed I-know
multitudine, sed non virtute, sed non armis. Maxima enim ex
in-multitude but not in-valor but not in-arms the-greatest for in

parte nudos illos armis omnibus penitus cognovimus et, quod
part bare them of-arms all wholly we-have-learned and what
maximi est nobis solatii, auxilio Dei. Illis est sola pro
of-greatest is to-us comfort by-the-help of-God for-them is only for
muro audatia, nobis spes et protectio divina. Pudeat iam
wall boldness for-us hope and protection divine let-it-shame already
nunc dominos pene totius Europae inimicis manus dare.
now the-lords of-almost the-whole of-Europe to-the-enemies hands to-give
Melius bello, si finis adiacet, milites mei, gloriose moriamur,
better in-war if the-end lies-near soldiers my gloriously let-us-die
quam subiecti hostibus vitam serviliter ducamus aut certe
than subject to-enemies life slavishly let-us-lead or certainly
more malarum bestiarum strangulo deficiamus. Plura
in-the-manner of-evil beasts by-the-noose let-us-perish more-things
loquerer, milites mei, si nossem verbis virtutem vel audatiam
I-would-say soldiers my if I-knew by-words valor or boldness
animis vestris augeri. Modo melius gladiis quam linguis
in-minds your to-be-increased now better with-swords than with-tongues
colloquium incipiamus'. Et his dictis, arrepto clipeo ac
the-colloquy let-us-begin and with-these said with-seized shield and
sacra lancea, ipse primus equum in hostes vertit, fortissimi
holy lance he first the-horse against the-enemies turned of-the-bravest
militis ac optimi imperatoris officium gerens. Hostium
soldier and best commander the-office bearing of-the-enemies
audaciores primum resistere, deinde, ut socios viderunt
the-bolder first to-resist then when the-companions they-saw
terga vertere, obstupefacti nostrisque intermixti extinguuntur.
backs to-turn astounded and-with-ours mingled are-destroyed
Caeterorum vero alii equis fatigatis villas proximas intrant,
of-the-rest however some with-horses wearied the-villages nearest enter
circumfusique armatis cum moeniis pariter concremantur;
and-surrounded by-armed-men with the-walls together are-burned

alii flumen contiguum transnatantes, dum ripa ulterior
others the-river adjoining swimming-across since the-bank farther
ascendentes non sustinet, flumine obvolvuntur et pereunt.
those-climbing not holds by-the-river are-enveloped and perish
Eo die castra invasa captivique omnes erepti, secundo
on-that day the-camp invaded and-the-captives all snatched-away on-the-second
die ac tertio a vicinis urbibus reliqua multitudo in
day and third by the-neighboring cities the-remaining multitude in
tantum consumpta est, ut nullus aut rarus evaderet; sed
so-much consumed was that none or rarely-one escaped but
non adeo incruenta victoria fuit de tam saeva gente.
not so bloodless the-victory was over so savage a-people
XLVII. Cuonradus quippe dux fortiter pugnans, animi
XLVII Conrad indeed the-duke bravely fighting of-mind
fervore solisque ardore, qui eo die nimius erat,
by-the-fervor and-of-the-sun by-the-heat which on-that day excessive was
accensus aestuat, vinclisque [loricae] solutis dum auram
kindled burns and-with-the-straps of-the-hauberk loosed while air
captat, vulnere sagittae adverso gutturis defixae cadit.
he-catches by-a-wound of-an-arrow in-front of-the-throat fixed falls
Cuius corpus iuxta regis imperium honorifice collectum
whose body according-to of-the-king the-command honorably gathered
transportatur Wormatiam ibique sepelitur, vir omni virtute
is-carried-across to-Worms and-there is-buried a-man in-every virtue
animi et corporis magnus atque famosus, cum fletu et
of-mind and of-body great and famous with weeping and
planctu omnium Francorum.
lament of-all the-Franks

XLVIII. Tres duces gentis Ungariae capti ducique Heinrico
XLVIII three leaders of-the-people Hungarian captured and-to-duke Henry
presentati mala morte, ut digni erant, multati sunt,
presented by-an-evil death as worthy they-were punished were
suspendio namque crepuerunt.
by-hanging for they-burst
XLVIIII. Triumpho celebri rex factus gloriosus ab exercitu
XLVIIII by-triumph famous the-king made glorious by the-army
pater patriae imperatorque appellatus est; decretis
father of-the-homeland and-emperor called was with-decreed
proinde honoribus et dignis laudibus summae divinitati
thereupon honors and worthy praises to-the-highest divinity
per singulas ecclesias, et hoc idem sanctae matri eius
through each church and this same to-holy mother his
per nuntios demandans, cum tripudio ac summa laetitia
through messengers sending-word with dancing and highest gladness
Saxoniam victor reversus a populo suo libentissime suscipitur.
to-Saxony victor returned by people his most-gladly is-received
Neque enim tanta victoria quisquam regum intra ducentos
nor for in-so-great victory has-anyone of-kings within two-hundred
annos ante eum laetatus est. [Nam ipsi bello Ungarico
years before him rejoiced has for they from-the-war Hungarian
aberant, Sclavanico certamini reservati].
were-absent for-the-Slavonic contest reserved
L. Igitur, ut supra retulimus, cum deficeret in ratione
L therefore as above we-have-related when he-failed in account
reddenda contra suum patruum Wichmannus, intra palatium
to-be-rendered against his paternal-uncle Wichmann within the-palace
custoditur. Cum vero rex in Boioariam proficisci vellet,
is-guarded when however the-king into Bavaria to-set-out wished
simulata infirmitate ipse iter negavit; unde monitus ab
with-feigned illness he the-journey refused whence warned by

imperatore, quia destitutus a patre et matre loco filiorum
the-emperor that deprived of father and mother in-place of-sons
eum assumpserit liberaliterque educaverit, honore paterno
him he-had-taken-up and-generously had-reared with-honor paternal
promoverit, rogatque, ne ei molestiam inferret, cum
had-advanced and-asks that to-him trouble he-should-not-bring since
alia plura gravaretur. Ad haec nichil utile audiens
with-other more-things he-was-burdened to these-things nothing useful hearing
imperator discessit, commendato eo Iboni comiti. Aliquantis
the-emperor departed with-commended him to-Ibo the-count for-some
diebus cum eo degens, petit post haec venandi gratia
days with him spending he-asks after these-things of-hunting for-the-sake
silvam ire liceret. Ibi absconditos socios secum
to-the-forest to-go it-be-allowed there hidden companions with-himself
sumens perrexit in patriam, et occupatis aliquibus urbibus,
taking he-proceeded into the-homeland and with-occupied some cities
iuncto sibi Ecberhto arma sumit contra imperatorem.
with-joined to-himself Ecbert arms takes-up against the-emperor
Industria autem ducis Herimanni facile eos obpressit trans
by-the-industry however of-duke Hermann easily them he-crushed across
Albiamque coegit. Illi cum se sensissent duci resistere
and-the-Elbe compelled they when themselves had-perceived the-duke to-resist
non posse, sociaverunt sibi duos subregulos barbarorum,
not to-be-able allied to-themselves two sub-kings of-the-barbarians
Saxonibus iam olim infestos, Naconem et fratrem eius.
to-the-Saxons now long-ago hostile Nako and brother his

Wichmann and the Slavs massacre the Cocarescemi, who had surrendered on terms, after a Slav seizing his slave woman is struck. Otto marches against the Slavs and is trapped at the Raxa; Gero parleys with Stoinef and is mocked. While Otto feints a crossing, Gero builds three bridges, and the Slavs, spent, are cut down.

LI. Ductus exercitus a duce, reperti sunt in urbe quae dicitur
LI led the-army by the-duke found they-were in the-city which is-called
Suithleiscranne. Et pene erat, ut cum urbe caperentur,
Suithleiscranne and almost it-was that with the-city they-should-be-taken
nisi clamore cuiusdam citarentur et ad arma prosilirent;
unless by-the-shout of-a-certain-one they-were-roused and to arms leapt
caesis tamen ante portam urbis ad quadraginta armatis
with-slain nevertheless before the-gate of-the-city up-to forty armed-men
caesorumque spoliis potitus dux Herimannus discedit. Erant
and-of-the-slain the-spoils having-gained duke Hermann departs there-were
autem qui eum adiuvarent Heinricus preses cum fratre
however those-who him helped Henry the-governor with brother
Sigifrido, viri eminentes et fortes, domi militiaque optimi.
Siegfried men eminent and brave at-home and-at-war the-best
Facta sunt autem haec initio quadragesimalis ieiunii.
done were however these-things at-the-beginning of-the-Lenten fast
LII. Barbari vero post proximum pascha irruunt in
LII the-barbarians however after the-next Easter rush into
regionem, ducem habentes Wichmannum ad facinus tantum,
the-region a-leader having Wichmann for crime only
non ad imperium. Nullam moram agens sed et ipse dux
not for command no delay making but also he duke
Herimannus cum presidio militari adest; videnque exercitum
Hermann with garrison military is-present and-seeing the-army

hostium gravem sibique parvas admodum belli copias
of-the-enemies heavy and-for-himself small very of-war forces
affore civili bello urgente, arbitratus est consultius differre
to-be-at-hand with-civil war pressing judged has more-advisable to-defer
certamen in dubiis rebus constitutis, multitudinique imperare,
the-contest in doubtful things placed and-to-the-multitude to-command
quae maxima in unam urbem confluxerat, dum caeteris
which greatest into one city had-flowed-together since to-the-rest
diffiderent, quoquo pacto possent, pacem expostularent. Quod
they-mistrusted on-whatever terms they-could peace to-demand which
tamen consilium milites aegre valde tulerunt, et maxime
nevertheless counsel the-soldiers grievously very bore and most
Sigifridus, qui erat bellator acerrimus. Faciunt tamen cives
Siegfried who was a-warrior most-keen do nevertheless the-citizens
Cocarescemiorum, ut dux imperarat, pacemque eo pacto
of-the-Cocarescemi as the-duke had-ordered and-peace on-that pact
obtinent, quo liberi cum uxoribus et natis supra murum
obtain by-which the-free with wives and children onto the-wall
inermes ascenderent, conditione servili et omni suppellectili in
unarmed should-climb with-the-class servile and all furniture in
medio urbis hostibus relicta. Cum intra urbem irruerent
the-middle of-the-city to-the-enemies left when within the-city rushed
barbari, quidam illorum suum mancipium agnoscit in
the-barbarians a-certain-one of-them his slave recognizes in
cuiusdam liberti uxore; quam cum rapere de manu viri
of-a-certain of-freedman the-wife whom when to-snatch from the-hand of-the-man
niteretur, ictum pugni accipit, irritumque pactum ex parte
he-strove a-blow of-the-fist he-receives and-void the-pact on the-part
Saxonum proclamitat. Unde fit, ut omnes ad caedem
of-the-Saxons proclaims whence it-comes-about that all to slaughter

verterentur nullumque relinquerent, sed omnes perfectae
were-turned and-none left but all of-full
aetatis neci darent, matres cum natis captivos ducerent.
age to-death gave the-mothers with the-children as-captives led
LIII. Quod scelus imperator ulcisci gestiens, victoria iam
LIII which crime the-emperor to-avenge longing with-victory already
de Ungariis patrata, regiones barbarorum hostiliter intravit.
over the-Hungarians accomplished the-regions of-the-barbarians hostilely entered
Consultum de Saxonibus, qui cum Sclavis conspiraverant,
counsel-taken about the-Saxons who with the-Slavs had-conspired
iudicatum est Wichmannum et Ecberhtum pro hostibus
judged it-was Wichmann and Ecbert as enemies
publicis habere oportere, caeteris vero parcere, siquidem
public to-hold to-be-needful the-rest however to-spare if-indeed
remeare voluissent ad suos. Aderat et legatio barbarorum
to-return they-wished to their-own was-present also an-embassy of-the-barbarians
tributa socios ex more velle persolvere nuntians, caeterum
the-tributes as-allies by custom to-wish to-pay announcing for-the-rest
dominationem regionis velle tenere; hoc pacto pacem velle,
the-lordship of-the-region to-wish to-hold on-this pact peace to-wish
alioquin pro libertate armis certare. Imperator ad haec
otherwise for liberty with-arms to-contend the-emperor to these-things
respondit: pacem quidem eis nequaquam negare, sed
answered peace indeed to-them in-no-way to-deny but
omnimodis dare non posse, nisi iniuriam perpetratam digno
in-any-way to-give not to-be-able unless the-wrong perpetrated by-worthy
honore ac emendatione purgarent. Omniaque vastando et
honor and amendment they-purged and-all-things by-laying-waste and
incendendo per illas regiones duxit exercitum, donec tandem
burning through those regions he-led the-army until at-last
castris positis super Raxam fluvium ad transmeandum
with-the-camp placed on the-Raxa river for crossing

paludibus difficillimum ab hostibus circumfunditur. A tergo
by-marshes most-difficult by the-enemies he-is-surrounded from behind
namque [via] arborum robore obstruitur, eademque armatorum
for the-way of-trees with-timber is-blocked and-the-same of-armed-men
manu vallatur. Ex adverso fluvius fluvioque contigua palus
by-a-band is-hedged from opposite the-river and-to-the-river adjoining a-marsh
et cum ingenti exercitu Sclavus bellatores et ab opere et
and with huge army the-Slav the-warriors both from work and
ab itinere prohibens. Vexatur autem et aliis incommodis
from the-march preventing is-harried however also with-other discomforts
exercitus, morbo pariter ac fame. Dum talia agerentur per
the-army by-sickness equally and hunger while such-things were-done through
plures dies, mittitur ad principem barbarorum, qui dicebatur
several days is-sent to the-prince of-the-barbarians who was-called
Stoinef, Gero comes, quatinus imperatori se dedat:
Stoinef Gero the-count so-that to-the-emperor himself he-should-surrender
amicum per id adepturum, non hostem experturum.
a-friend through this about-to-gain not an-enemy about-to-experience
LIIII. Erant quippe in Gerone multae artes bonae, bellandi
LIIII there-were indeed in Gero many arts good of-warring
peritia, in rebus civilibus bona consilia, satis eloquentiae,
skill in things civil good counsels enough of-eloquence
multum scientiae, et qui prudentiam suam opere ostenderet
much of-knowledge and one-who prudence his by-work would-show
quam ore; in adquirendo strenuitas, in dando largitas
rather-than by-mouth in acquiring vigor in giving generosity
et, quod optimum erat, ad cultum divinum bonum studium.
and what best was for the-worship divine good zeal
Igitur preses super paludem et flumen, cui palus
therefore the-governor over the-marsh and the-river to-which the-marsh
adiacens erat, barbarum salutabat. Cui Sclavus aequalia
adjacent was the-barbarian greeted to-whom the-Slav equal-things

respondit. Ad quem preses: ‘Satis tibi esset, si bellum
answered to whom the-governor enough for-you it-would-be if war
gereres contra unum nostrum de servis domini mei, et
you-waged against one of-us of the-servants of-lord my and
non etiam contra dominum meum regem. Quis tibi exercitus,
not also against lord my the-king what to-you army
quae arma, ut talia presumas? Si aliqua vobis virtus adsit,
what arms that such-things you-presume if any to-you valor be-present
si artes, si audatia, date nobis locum ad vos transeundi, sive
if arts if boldness give to-us room to you to-cross or
nos vobis huc veniendi, et aequato loco fortitudo appareat
us to-you hither of-coming and with-leveled place the-strength may-appear
pugnatoris’. Sclavus barbarico more frendens et multa
of-the-fighter the-Slav in-barbarian manner gnashing and many
convicia evomens irrisit Geronem imperatoremque et omnem
insults vomiting-forth mocked Gero and-the-emperor and all
exercitum, sciens eum multis molestiis aggravatum. Gero ad
the-army knowing it by-many troubles burdened Gero at
haec commotus, ut erat animi ardentissimi: ‘Crastinus’,
these-things moved as he-was of-mind most-ardent tomorrow's
inquit, ‘dies declarabit, tu et populus tuus fortes viribus
he-says day will-declare you and people your strong in-strength
sitis an non. Cras enim nos vobiscum congredientes
whether-you-are or not tomorrow for us with-you engaging
procul dubio videbitis’. Gero denique, olim licet multis
far-from doubt you-will-see Gero indeed once although by-many
gestis insigniis clarus haberetur, iam tamen magnus ac
deeds notable famous he-was-held now however great and
celebris ubique predicabatur, eo quod Sclavos qui dicuntur
celebrated everywhere was-proclaimed on-that because the-Slavs who are-called
Uchri cum magna gloria cepisset. Gero reversus in castra
Ukrani with great glory he-had-taken Gero returned into the-camp

retulit quae audierat. Imperator vero de nocte consurgens
reported what he-had-heard the-emperor however by night rising
iubet sagittis et aliis machinis ad pugnam provocare, et
orders with-arrows and other engines to fight to-provoke and
quasi vi flumen paludemque transcendere velle. Sclavi
as-if by-force the-river and-the-marsh to-cross to-wish the-Slavs
autem hesterna comminatione nichil aliud arbitrati ad
however by-yesterday's threat nothing other thinking for
pugnam pariter conspiravere, iter totis viribus defendentes.
fight together conspired the-way with-all strength defending
At Gero cum amicis Rúanis miliario ferme uno a castris
but Gero with friends the-Rani at-a-milestone about one from the-camp
descendens hoste ignorante tres pontes celeriter construxit
descending with-the-enemy unaware three bridges swiftly built
et misso nuntio ad imperatorem totum exercitum revocavit.
and with-sent messenger to the-emperor the-whole army recalled
Quo viso barbari et ipsi obviare legionibus contendunt.
which seen the-barbarians too themselves to-meet the-legions strive
Pedites barbarorum dum longiorem viam currunt et certamen
the-foot of-the-barbarians while a-longer way they-run and the-contest
ineunt, fatigatione dissoluti militibus citius cedunt; nec
enter by-weariness dissolved to-the-soldiers more-quickly yield nor
mora, dum fugae presidium quaerunt, obtruncantur.
delay while of-flight the-defense they-seek they-are-cut-down

Stoinef is beheaded and seven hundred captives killed around his head. Envoys come from Rome, the Greeks, and the Saracens. Liudolf dies in Italy and is buried at Mainz. Wichmann returns and swears faith; crosses appear on clothes; Otto recovers from illness, goes to Italy, takes Berengar, and wins Rome. Wichmann seeks the Danish king Harald's help, and his raids are betrayed.

LV. Stoinef autem colle eminenti cum equitibus eventum
LV Stoinef however on-a-hill eminent with horsemen the-outcome
rei expectabat. Socios inire fugam cernens fugit et
of-the-thing awaited the-companions to-enter flight seeing fled also
ipse, lucoque quodam cum duobus satellitibus repertus a
he and-in-a-grove a-certain with two attendants found by
viro militari, cuius vocabulum erat Hosed, certamine fatigatus
a-man military whose name was Hosed by-the-contest wearied
armisque nudatus capite caesus est. Satellitum alius
and-of-arms stripped by-the-head cut was of-the-attendants one
vivus captus imperatorique cum capite et spoliis reguli
alive captured and-to-the-emperor with the-head and spoils of-the-princeling
ab eodem milite presentatus est. Ex hoc Hosed clarus
by the-same soldier presented was from this Hosed famous
et insignis habitus. Merces tam famosi gesti donativum
and distinguished was-held the-reward of-so famous a-deed a-gift
imperiale cum reditu viginti mansuum. Eo die castra
imperial with revenue of-twenty manses on-that day the-camp
hostium invasa, et multi mortales interfecti vel capti,
of-the-enemies invaded and many mortals killed or captured
caedesque in multam noctem protrahebatur. Postera luce
and-the-slaughter into much night was-drawn-out on-the-next light
caput subreguli in campo positum, circaque illud septingenti
the-head of-the-princeling on the-field placed and-around it seven-hundred

captivorum capite caesi, eiusque consiliarius oculis erutis
of-the-captives by-the-head cut and-his counselor with-eyes torn-out
lingua est privatus in medioque cadaverum inutilis relictus.
of-the-tongue was deprived in and-the-middle of-the-corpses useless left
Wichmannus vero et Ecberhtus scelerum conscii in Galliam
Wichmann however and Ecbert of-the-crimes aware into Gaul
profecti, ad Hugonem ducem fuga elapsi sunt.
having-set-out to Hugh the-duke by-flight slipped-away have
LVI. Crebris victoriis imperator gloriosus factus atque famosus
LVI by-frequent victories the-emperor glorious made and famous
multorum regum ac gentium timorem pariter et favorem
of-many kings and peoples the-fear equally and favor
promeruit. Unde plurimos legatos suscipit, Romanorum
earned whence very-many envoys he-receives of-the-Romans
scilicet et Graecorum Sarracenorumque, per eosque diversi
namely and of-the-Greeks and-of-the-Saracens through and-them of-diverse
generis munera, vasa aurea et argentea, aerea quoque et
kind gifts vessels of-gold and of-silver of-bronze also and
mira varietate operis distincta, vitrea vasa, eburnea etiam
with-wondrous variety of-work distinguished glass vessels of-ivory also
et omni genere modificata stramenta, balsamum et totius
and in-every kind made coverings balsam and of-every
generis pigmenta, animalia Saxonibus antea invisa, leones
kind spices animals to-the-Saxons before unseen lions
et camelos, simias et strutiones; omniumque circumquaque
and camels apes and ostriches and-of-all round-about
Christianorum in illo res atque spes sitae.
Christians in him the-affairs and hope placed
LVII. Liudulfus autem filius imperatoris, cum fidem vult
LVII Liudolf however the-son of-the-emperor since faith he-wishes
servare amicis, patria cessit Italiamque cum eis
to-keep to-the-friends from-the-homeland withdrew and-Italy with them

adiit; quo agente annum fere totum, diem extremum
approached with-whom spending a-year almost whole the-day last
obiit, toto Francorum imperio relinquens suo vulnere
he-met for-the-whole of-the-Franks empire leaving by-his wound
vulnus durum. Funus autem eius a militibus debito honore
a-wound hard the-funeral however his by the-soldiers with-due honor
curatum, et ab Italia Mogontiae corpus translatum, in
cared-for and from Italy to-Mainz the-body transferred in
basilica Albani martyris sepultum est cum luctu et planctu
the-basilica of-Alban the-martyr buried was with mourning and lament
multorum populorum. Reliquit post se filium patris
of-many peoples he-left after himself a-son of-the-father
vocabulo insignitum.
by-name marked

LVIII. Litterae autem obitus eius allatae sunt imperatori,
LVIII the-letters however of-the-death his brought were to-the-emperor
cum esset in militia, qua militavit contra Redarios;
when he-was on campaign on-which he-campaigned against the-Redarii
quapropter satis plurimum lacrimarum pro filii interitu
wherefore very-much very of-tears for of-the-son the-death
fudit; de caetero, qui adhuc ordinavit imperium suum,
he-poured for the-rest who still ordered empire his
rectori omnium Deo fideliter commisit.
to-the-ruler of-all God faithfully committed

LVIIII. Eodem tempore Wichmannus sciens Saxoniam
LVIIII at-the-same time Wichmann knowing Saxony
bellatoribus vacuam, a Gallia profectus Saxoniam occulte
of-warriors empty from Gaul having-set-out Saxony secretly
intravit, domum coniugemque revisit, inde se iterum
entered home and-wife revisited thence himself again

alienigenis inmersit. Ecberhtus vero interventu magni
among-foreigners plunged Ecbert however by-the-intervention of-the-great
pontificis Brunonis in gratiam recipitur.
pontiff Bruno into favor is-received
LX. Ductus exercitus contra Wichmannum tertia
LX led the-army against Wichmann for-the-third
vice vix obtinuit, ut in fide Geronis filiique sui
time scarcely he-obtained that into the-faith of-Gero and-of-son his
susciperetur, ipsique apud imperatorem obtinerent, quo
he-should-be-received and-they with the-emperor should-obtain that
patria coniugisque patrimonio cum gratia imperiali
the-homeland and-of-his-wife the-patrimony with favor imperial
frueretur. Iniussus sacramentum terribile dedit se contra
he-might-enjoy unbidden an-oath terrible he-gave himself against
imperatorem imperatorisque regnum numquam aliquid inique
the-emperor and-of-the-emperor the-realm never anything unjustly
consilio aut actu facturum. Ita fide data in pace est
in-counsel or in-act about-to-do thus with-faith given in peace was
dimissus et bonis promissionibus ab imperatore erectus.
dismissed and with-good promises by the-emperor raised
LXI. Peracta caede barbarorum eo anno prodigiosae res
LXI with-completed slaughter of-the-barbarians in-that year prodigious things
apparuere, notae scilicet crucis in vestimentis plurimorum.
appeared marks namely of-the-cross on the-clothes of-very-many
Quibus visis plurimi salubri timore perculsi adversa
with-which seen very-many by-wholesome fear struck adversities
formidabant, idemque vitia multa ex parte emendaverunt.
feared and-the-same vices many in part amended
Fuerunt et qui lepras vestium interpretarentur, eo quod
there-were also those-who as-leprosies of-the-clothes interpreted-them on-that because
subsequens lepra multos mortales corrumperet. Sapientiores
the-following leprosy many mortals corrupted the-wiser

autem signum crucis salutem victoriamque prefigurasse
however the-sign of-the-cross salvation and-victory to-have-prefigured
predicabant, quibus et nos fidelem assensum prebemus.
proclaimed to-whom also we faithful assent offer
LXII. Eo tempore imperator et ipse aegrotare coepit,
LXII at-that time the-emperor also he to-be-ill began
sed meritis sanctorum, quibus fidele iugiter obsequium
but by-the-merits of-the-saints to-whom faithful continually service
prebet, maximeque patrocinio incliti martyris Viti, cui
he-offers and-most by-the-patronage of-the-famous martyr Vitus to-whom
aperuit os suum, de infirmitate convalescit et mundo
he-opened the-mouth his from illness he-recovers and to-the-world
ut sol lucidissimus post tenebras ad omnem decorem et
as the-sun most-shining after darkness for all beauty and
delicias condonatur.
delights is-given
LXIII. Rebus igitur rite compositis per omnem Franciam
LXIII with-things therefore duly arranged through all Franconia
Saxoniamque et vicinos circumquaque gentes, Romam
and-Saxony and the-neighboring round-about peoples to-Rome
statuens proficisci, Longobardiam perrexit. Ergo qualiter
deciding to-set-out to-Lombardy he-proceeded therefore how
regem Longobardorum Bernharium, duobus annis obsessum,
the-king of-the-Lombards Berengar for-two years besieged
cum coniuge et filiis captum in exilium destinaverit,
with wife and sons captured into exile he-destined
Romanos duobus preliis vicerit Romamque expugnaverit,
the-Romans in-two battles conquered and-Rome stormed
duces Beneventorum subiecerit, Graecos in Calabria
the-dukes of-the-Beneventans subjected the-Greeks in Calabria
Apuliaque superaverit, terra Saxonia venas argenti aperuerit,
and-Apulia overcame in-the-land Saxon veins of-silver opened

imperiumque cum filio quam magnifice dilataverit, nostrae
and-the-empire with the-son how magnificently he-widened of-our
tenuitatis non est edicere, sed, ut initio historiae
slenderness not it-is to-tell but as at-the-beginning of-the-history
predixi, in tantum fideli devotione elaborasse sufficiat.
I-foretold in so-much with-faithful devotion to-have-labored let-it-suffice
Caeterum erga tuam claritatem serenitatemque, quam patris
for-the-rest toward your brightness and-serenity which of-father
fratrisque celsitudo patriae ad omnem honorem nobisque
and-of-brother the-loftiness to-the-homeland for all honor and-to-us
ad solatium reliquit, magna devotio opus humile magnificet.
for solace has-left great devotion the-work humble may-magnify
At finis civilis belli terminus sit libelli.
but the-end of-the-civil war the-boundary let-it-be of-the-little-book
LXIIII. Enimvero donatus patriae Wichmannus
LXIIII indeed given to-the-homeland Wichmann
aequanimiter se continuit, donec imperatoris adventum
calmly himself contained until of-the-emperor the-arrival
speravit. Cum autem eius reversio differretur, ad aquilonales
he-hoped when however his return was-deferred to the-northern
partes se contulit, quasi cum rege Danorum Haraldo bellum
parts himself he-betook as-if with the-king of-the-Danes Harald war
ab integro machinaturus. At ille mandavit ei, si ducem
from the-beginning about-to-contrive but he sent-word to-him if the-duke
necasset vel alium quemlibet principum, nosset sine dolo
he-had-killed or another any of-the-princes he-should-know without guile
eum sibi sociare velle, aliter rem fraudulenter agitasse
him to-himself to-ally to-wish otherwise the-thing fraudulently to-have-pursued
non dubitaret. Interea ab emptore pretereunte latrocinia eius
not he-should-doubt meanwhile by a-buyer passing-by the-robberies his
produntur, sociorumque aliqui comprehensi et tamquam
are-betrayed and-of-the-companions some seized and as-if

contra publicam rem agentes a duce dampnati strangulo
against the-public thing acting by the-duke condemned by-the-noose
vitam perdiderunt. Ipse autem cum fratre vix evasit.
life lost he however with the-brother scarcely escaped

III.65–69 · POPPA'S ORDEAL AND WICHMANN'S DEATH

The cleric Poppa carries red-hot iron before King Harald, who decrees that Christ alone be worshiped. Gero hands Wichmann back to the Slavs, among whom Wichmann defeats Mieszko twice; Gero subdues the Lusizi. Hermann humbles Selibur. Wichmann, defeated by Mieszko's men, will surrender to Mieszko alone and dies fighting, sending his sword through Mieszko to the emperor.

LXV. Dani antiquitus erant Christiani, sed nichilominus
LXV the-Danes of-old were Christians but nonetheless
idolis ritu gentili servientes. Contigit autem altercationem
idols in-rite gentile serving it-happened however a-dispute
super cultura deorum fieri in quodam convivio rege
about the-worship of-the-gods to-be-made at a-certain banquet with-the-king
presente, Danis affirmantibus Christum quidem esse
present with-the-Danes affirming Christ indeed to-be
deum, sed alios eo fore maiores deos, quippe qui potiora
a-god but others than-him to-be greater gods since they greater
mortalibus signa et prodigia per se ostenderent. Contra
to-mortals signs and prodigies through themselves showed against
haec clericus quidam, nunc vero religiosam vitam ducens,
these-things a-cleric a-certain now however a-religious life leading
episcopus nomine Poppa, unum verum deum patrem cum
a-bishop by-name Poppa one true God the-father with
filio unigenito domino nostro Iesu Christo et spiritu sancto,
the-son only-begotten Lord our Jesus Christ and the-spirit holy

simulacra vero daemonia esse et non deos testatus est.
the-images however demons to-be and not gods testified has
Haraldus autem rex, utpote qui velox traditur fore ad
Harald however the-king as one-who swift is-reported to-be for
audiendum, tardus ad loquendum, interrogat, si hanc fidem
hearing slow for speaking asks if this faith
per semet ipsum declarare velit. Ille incunctanter velle
through himself self to-declare he-wishes he without-hesitation to-wish
respondit. Rex vero custodire clericum usque in crastinum
answered the-king however to-guard the-cleric until to the-morrow
iubet. Mane facto ingentis ponderis ferrum igne succendi
orders with-morning made of-huge weight iron with-fire to-be-heated
iubet, clericumque ob fidem catholicam candens ferrum
he-orders and-the-cleric for the-faith catholic the-glowing iron
portare iussit. Confessor Christi indubitanter ferrum rapit
to-carry ordered the-confessor of-Christ without-doubting the-iron seizes
tamdiuque deportat, quo ipse rex decernit. Manum
and-so-long carries as himself the-king decides the-hand
incolumem cunctis ostendit, fidem catholicam omnibus
unharmed to-all he-shows the-faith catholic to-all
probabilem reddit. Ad haec rex conversus Christum
provable he-renders at these-things the-king converted Christ
deum solum colendum decrevit, idola respuenda subiectis
as-God alone to-be-worshiped decreed the-idols to-be-rejected to-the-subject
gentibus imperat, Dei sacerdotibus et ministris honorem
peoples he-commands of-God to-the-priests and ministers honor
debitum deinde prestitit. Sed et haec virtutibus merito
due thenceforth he-showed but also these-things to-the-virtues by-merit
patris tui adscribuntur, cuius industria in illis regionibus
of-father your are-ascribed whose by-industry in those regions
ecclesiae sacerdotumque ordines in tantum fulsere.
of-the-church and-of-priests the-orders in so-much shone

LXVI. Gero igitur comes non inmemor iuramenti, cum
LXVI Gero therefore the-count not unmindful of-the-oath when
Wichmannum accusari vidisset reumque cognovisset,
Wichmann to-be-accused he-had-seen and-guilty had-recognized
barbaris, a quibus eum assumpsit, restituit. Ab eis
to-the-barbarians from whom him he-took-up restored by them
libenter susceptus longius degentes barbaros crebris preliis
gladly received further dwelling barbarians by-frequent battles
contrivit. Misacam regem, cuius potestatis erant Sclavi
he-wore-down Mieszko the-king of-whose power were the-Slavs
qui dicuntur Licicaviki, duabus vicibus superavit fratremque
who are-called Licicaviki on-two occasions he-overcame and-the-brother
ipsius interfecit, predam magnam ab eo extorsit.
his killed booty great from him extorted
LXVII. Eo quoque tempore Gero preses Sclavos
LXVII at-that also time Gero the-governor the-Slavs
qui dicuntur Lusiki potentissime vicit et ad ultimam
who are-called Lusizi most-mightily conquered and to last
servitutem coegit, non sine sui tamen gravi vulnere
servitude compelled not without his-own nevertheless heavy wound
nepotisque optimi viri casu, caeterorum quoque quam
and-of-the-nephew of-the-best man by-the-fall of-the-rest also of-very
plurimorum nobilium virorum.
very-many noble men
LXVIII. Erant duo subreguli Herimanno duci, inimicitiae a
LXVIII there-were two princelings to-Hermann the-duke enmities from
patribus vicariae relicti; alter vocabatur Selibur, alter Mistav.
the-fathers reciprocal left the-one was-called Selibur the-other Mistav
Selibur preerat Waaris, Mistav Abdritis. Dum invicem quam
Selibur presided-over the-Wagri Mistav the-Abodrites while one-another very
saepe accusantur, victus tandem ratione Selibur condempnatus
often they-accuse conquered at-last in-reason Selibur condemned

est quindecim talentis argenti a duce. Eam dampnationem
was to-fifteen talents of-silver by the-duke that condemnation
graviter ferens arma sumere contra ducem cogitavit. Sed cum
heavily bearing arms to-take-up against the-duke he-thought but since
ei belli copiae non sufficerent, missa legatione postulat
for-him of-war the-forces not sufficed with-sent embassy he-asks
presidium ab Wichmanno contra ducem. Ille nichil iocundius
help from Wichmann against the-duke he nothing more-pleasant
ducens, quam aliquam molestiam inferre posset patruo,
reckoning than some trouble to-bring he-could on-the-paternal-uncle
cito cum sociis adest Sclavo. Ut autem suscipitur in
quickly with companions is-present with-the-Slav as however is-received into
urbem Wichmannus, statim urbs obsidione vallatur ab inimico.
the-city Wichmann at-once the-city with-siege is-hedged by the-enemy
Ductus quoque exercitus a duce urbem obsedit. Interim,
led also the-army by the-duke the-city besieged meanwhile
casu nescio an prudenti consilio, Wichmannus cum paucis
by-chance I-know-not or by-prudent counsel Wichmann with few
urbem est egressus, quasi ad extrahenda sibi de Danis
from-the-city has went-out as-if for drawing for-himself from the-Danes
auxilia. Pauci dies intererant, dum victus bellatoribus et
help few days intervened while food for-the-warriors and
pabulum iumentis defecerat. Fuerunt etiam qui dicerent
fodder for-the-beasts had-failed there-were also those-who said
Sclavum speciem quidem belli gessisse, non verum
the-Slav the-appearance indeed of-war to-have-borne not true
bellum. Incredibile omnimodis fore hominem a puero bellis
war incredible in-every-way to-be a-man from boyhood to-wars
assuetum bellicas res tam male preparatas habuisse; sed id
accustomed warlike things so badly prepared to-have-had but this
consilii machinatum ducem, ut quoquo pacto posset nepotem
of-counsel contrived the-duke that in-whatever way he-could the-nephew

vinceret, ut saltem in patria salutem recuperaret, quam
he-might-conquer that at-least in the-homeland safety he-might-recover which
inter paganos penitus perdidisset. Fame itaque urbani ac
among pagans wholly he-had-lost by-hunger therefore the-townsmen and
foetore pecorum aggravati urbe egredi sunt coacti. Dux
by-the-stench of-cattle weighed-down from-the-city to-go-out were compelled the-duke
Sclavum austerius alloquens de perfidia et nequam eius actibus
the-Slav more-sternly addressing of the-treachery and wicked his acts
arguit, hocque ab eo responsi accepit: 'Quid me', inquit, 'de
accused and-this from him of-answer received why me he-says of
perfidia arguis? Ecce, quos nec tu nec dominus tuus
treachery do-you-accuse behold those-whom neither you nor lord your
imperator vincere potuistis, mea perfidia inermes assistunt'. Ad
the-emperor to-conquer could by-my treachery unarmed stand-by to
haec dux conticuit, eum suae ditionis regione privans,
these-things the-duke fell-silent him of-his dominion from-the-region depriving
filio ipsius, quem antea obsidem accepit, omni ipsius
to-the-son his whom before as-hostage he-received with-all his
potestate tradita. Milites Wichmanni variis poenis afflixit,
power handed-over the-soldiers of-Wichmann with-various penalties he-afflicted
urbis predam suis militibus donavit, simulacro Saturni ex
of-the-city the-booty to-his soldiers he-gave with-the-image of-Saturn of
aere fuso, quod ibi inter alia urbis spolia repperit, magnum
bronze cast which there among other of-the-city spoils he-found a-great
spectaculum populo prebuit victorque in patriam remeavit.
spectacle to-the-people he-offered and-victor into the-homeland returned
LXVIIII. Audiens autem Wichmannus urbem captam
LXVIIII hearing however Wichmann the-city captured
sociosque afflictos ad orientem versus iterum se
and-the-companions afflicted to the-east toward again himself
paganis inmersit, egitque cum Sclavis qui dicuntur Vuloini,
among-the-pagans plunged and-acted with the-Slavs who are-called Wolini

quomodo Misacam amicum imperatoris bello lascesserent;
how Mieszko the-friend of-the-emperor in-war they-might-harass
quod eum minime latuit. Qui misit ad Bolizlavum regem
which him least lay-hidden-from who sent to Boleslav the-king
Boemiorum — gener enim ipsius erat — accepitque ab
of-the-Bohemians son-in-law for his he-was and-received from
eo equitum duas acies. Cumque contra eum Wichmannus
him of-horsemen two lines and-when against him Wichmann
duxisset exercitum, pedites primum ei inmisit. Cumque
had-led an-army the-foot first against-him he-sent-in and-when
ex iussu ducis paulatim coram Wichmanno fugerent, a
by the-order of-the-duke little-by-little before Wichmann they-fled from
castris longius protrahitur, equitibus a tergo inmissis,
the-camp further he-is-drawn-out with-the-horsemen from behind sent-in
signo fugientes ad reversionem hostium monet. Cum
by-a-signal the-fleeing to the-return against-the-enemy he-warns when
ex adverso et post tergum premeretur, Wichmannus fugam
from in-front and behind the-back he-was-pressed Wichmann flight
inire temptavit. A sociis igitur arguitur sceleris, quia
to-enter tried by the-companions therefore he-is-accused of-crime because
ipse eos ad pugnam instigaverit fidensque equo, cum
he them to the-fight had-urged and-trusting in-the-horse when
necesse fuerit, fugam facile inierit. Coactus itaque equo
necessary it-should-be flight easily would-enter compelled therefore from-the-horse
cessit, pedestris cum sociis certamen iniit, eoque die
he-withdrew on-foot with the-companions the-contest entered and-on-that day
viriliter pugnans armis defenditur. Ieiunio autem et longiori
manfully fighting with-arms is-defended by-fasting however and by-the-longer
via, qua per totam noctem armatus incessit, mane
way by-which through the-whole night armed he-advanced in-the-morning
cum paucis admodum aream cuiusdam iam fessus intravit.
with few very the-yard of-a-certain-man now weary entered

Optimates autem hostium cum eum repperissent, ex armis
the-nobles however of-the-enemies when him they-had-found from the-arms
agnoscunt, quia vir eminens esset. Interrogatusque ab eis,
recognize that a-man eminent he-was and-asked by them
quisnam esset, Wichmannum se fore professus est. At
who he-might-be Wichmann himself to-be professed has but
illi arma deponere exhortati sunt. Fidem deinde spondent
they the-arms to-lay-down exhorted have faith then they-pledge
salvum eum domino suo presentari hocque apud ipsum
safe him to-lord their to-be-presented and-this with him
obtinere, quatinus incolumem imperatori restituat. Ille, licet
to-obtain that unharmed to-the-emperor he-may-restore he though
in ultima necessitate sit constitutus, non inmemor pristinae
in last necessity he-is placed not unmindful of-former
nobilitatis ac virtutis, dedignatus est talibus manum dare,
nobility and valor disdained has to-such the-hand to-give
petit tamen, ut Misaco de eo adnuntient: illi velle arma
he-asks nevertheless that to-Mieszko about him they-announce to-him to-wish arms
deponere, illi manus dare. Dum ad Misacam ipsi pergunt,
to-lay-down to-him the-hand to-give while to Mieszko they proceed
vulgus innumerabile eum circumdat eumque acriter inpugnat.
the-crowd countless him surrounds and-him keenly attacks
Ipse autem, quamvis fessus, multis ex eis fusis, tandem
he however although weary with-many of them routed at-last
gladium sumit et potiori hostium cum his verbis tradidit:
the-sword takes and to-the-greater of-the-enemies with these words handed-over
'Accipe', inquit, 'hunc gladium et defer domino tuo, quo pro
take he-says this sword and carry-it to-lord your that for
signo victoriae illum teneat imperatorique amico transmittat,
a-sign of-victory it he-may-hold and-to-the-emperor friend may-send-across
quo sciat aut hostem occisum irridere vel certe
that he-may-know either the-enemy killed to-mock or certainly

propinquum deflere'. Et his dictis conversus ad orientem,
the-kinsman to-weep and with-these said turned to the-east
ut potuit, patria voce Dominum exoravit animamque
as he-could in-the-native voice the-Lord he-besought and-the-soul
multis miseriis et incommodis repletam pietati creatoris
with-many miseries and discomforts filled to-the-piety of-the-creator
omnium effudit. Is finis Wichmanno, talisque omnibus fere,
of-all poured-out this the-end for-Wichmann and-such for-all almost
qui contra imperatorem arma sumpserunt [patrem tuum].
who against the-emperor arms took father your

III.70–74 · THE GREEK MARRIAGE AND MATHILDA'S DEATH

Otto writes to the dukes about the Greek embassy and the Redarii. The Greeks ambush the escort sent for the bride; Gunther and Siegfried avenge it. The emperor of Constantinople is murdered, and his successor sends the bride. Queen Mathilda dies after a life of prayer and alms, and her grandson Archbishop William dies before her, his funeral preceding hers.

LXX. Imperator itaque acceptis armis Wichmanni de
LXX the-emperor therefore with-received arms of-Wichmann about
nece eius iam certus factus scripsit epistolam ad duces
the-death his now certain made wrote a-letter to the-dukes
et prefectos Saxoniae in hunc modum:
and prefects of-Saxony in this manner
Oddo divino nutu imperator augustus Herimanno et Thiadrico
Otto by-divine nod emperor august to-Hermann and to-Theodoric
ducibus caeterisque publicae rei nostrae prefectis omnia
the-dukes and-to-the-other of-the-public thing our prefects all
amabilia. Deo volente salus omniaque prospera plane
lovable-things with-God willing health and-all prosperous-things plainly

succedunt. Caeterum nuntii Constantinopolitani regis dignitate
succeed for-the-rest the-envoys of-the-Constantinopolitan king in-dignity
satis insignes nos adeunt, pacem, ut intelleximus, admodum
very notable us approach peace as we-have-understood very
quaerentes. Quoquo modo tamen res agatur, bello Deo
seeking in-whatever way nevertheless the-thing be-done in-war with-God
volente nullo modo nos temptare audebunt. Apuliam et
willing in-no way us to-try will-they-dare Apulia and
Calabriam provincias, quas hactenus tenuere, nisi conveniamus,
Calabria provinces which hitherto they-have-held unless we-agree
dabunt. Si vero voluntati nostrae paruerint, ut presenti
they-will-give if however to-the-will our they-obey that in-the-present
aestate coniugem cum aequivoco nostro in Franciam dirigentes
summer a-wife with namesake our into Franconia directing
per Fraxanetum ad destruendos Sarracenos Deo comite
through Fraxinetum for destroying the-Saracens with-God as-companion
iter arripiemus, et sic ad vos, disponimus. Preterea
the-journey we-shall-seize and thus to you we-arrange besides
volumus, ut, si Redares, sicut audivimus, tantam stragem passi
we-wish that if the-Redarii as we-have-heard so-great slaughter have
sunt — scitis enim, quam saepe fidem fregerint, quas
suffered you-know for how often faith they-have-broken what
iniurias attulerint—, nullam vobiscum pacem habeant. Unde
wrongs they-have-brought no with-you peace they-should-have whence
haec cum Herimanno duce ventilantes totis viribus instate,
these-things with Hermann the-duke discussing with-all strength press
ut in destructione eorum finem operi inponatis. Ipsi, si
that in the-destruction their an-end to-the-work you-may-put we if
necesse fuerit, ad eos ibimus. Filius noster in nativitate Domini
necessary it-be to them shall-go son our on the-Nativity of-the-Lord

coronam a beato apostolico in imperii dignitatem suscepit.
the-crown from blessed the-apostolic into of-empire the-dignity received
Scripta XV. Kal. Febr. in Campania iuxta Capuam.
written on-the-fifteenth Kalends of-February in Campania near Capua
His litteris lectis in conventu populi in loco qui
with-these letters read in the-assembly of-the-people in the-place which
dicitur Werla coram principibus et frequentia plebis,
is-called Werla before the-princes and the-crowd of-the-commons
visum est pacem iam datam Redariis oportere stare,
seemed has the-peace already given to-the-Redarii to-be-needful to-stand
eo quod tunc bellum adversum Danos urgeret, et quia
on-that because then the-war against the-Danes pressed and because
copiae minus sufficerent ad duo bella pariter conficienda.
the-forces less sufficed for two wars together to-be-carried-out
LXXI. Graecorum itaque legatis imperator satis credens
LXXI of-the-Greeks therefore to-the-envoys the-emperor too-much trusting
partem exercitus cum plerisque principalibus viris direxit ad
part of-the-army with very-many principal men directed to
condictum locum, quo eis secus sponsionem legatorum
the-agreed place where to-them according-to the-pledge of-the-envoys
puella traderetur et cum honore filio adduceretur.
the-girl would-be-handed-over and with honor to-the-son would-be-brought
Graeci vero ad artes paternas conversi — nam erant
the-Greeks however to arts paternal turned for they-were
ab exordio fere mundi plurimarum gentium domini,
from the-beginning almost of-the-world of-very-many peoples lords
et quos virtute nequibant, artibus superabant — subito
and those-whom by-valor they-could-not by-arts they-overcame suddenly
super inprovisos et nichil adversi suspicantes irruunt,
upon the-unwary and nothing adverse suspecting they-rush
castra diripiunt, plures occidunt, plures capiunt, quos et
the-camp they-plunder many they-kill many they-capture whom also

Constantinopolim imperatori suo presentant. Qui vero effugere
to-Constantinople to-emperor their they-present who however to-escape
poterant, reversi ad imperatorem quae acta sunt nuntiant.
could returned to the-emperor what done was announce
LXXII. At ille super his commotus ad hoc dedecus
LXXII but he over these-things moved for this disgrace
diluendum cum gravi manu viros eminentes, domesticis
to-be-washed-out with heavy band men eminent in-domestic
et externis rebus iam saepe claros factos, Guntharium
and external things already often famous made Gunther
et Sigifridum mittit in Calabriam. Graeci autem preterita
and Siegfried sends into Calabria the-Greeks however by-the-past
victoria elati et minus cauti ceciderunt in manus eorum;
victory lifted and less wary fell into the-hands of-them
ex quibus innumera multitudine caesa, quos supererant
of whom with-countless multitude slain those-who survived
capientes, obtruncatis naribus novam Romam remeare
capturing with-cut-off noses to-new Rome to-return
permiserunt. Tributum in Calabria et Apulia a Graecis
they-allowed tribute in Calabria and Apulia from the-Greeks
extorserunt, talique victoria illustres facti et spoliis
they-extorted and-by-such victory illustrious made and with-the-spoils
hostium ditati ad imperatorem reversi sunt.
of-the-enemies enriched to the-emperor returned have
LXXIII. Populus autem Constantinopolitanus audiens a
LXXIII the-people however of-Constantinople hearing by
suis male pugnatum, consurrexerunt adversus imperatorem
their-own badly fought rose-up against emperor
suum et machinatione coniugis propriae cuiusdam militis
their and by-the-contrivance of-the-wife own of-a-certain soldier
insidiis occiderunt, locoque domini militem imperio
by-the-ambushes killed-him and-in-place of-the-lord the-soldier for-the-empire

designantes. Constitutus autem rex continuo captivos
designating set-up however the-king at-once the-captives
absolvit, puellam cum magno exercitu et claris muneribus
freed the-girl with great army and brilliant gifts
ad imperatorem destinavit. Quam ipse statim filio tradidit,
to the-emperor dispatched whom he at-once to-the-son handed-over
celebratisque magnifice nuptiis omnem Italiam super hoc et
and-with-celebrated magnificently nuptials all Italy over this and
Germaniam laetiores reddidit. Eo tempore, quo haec
Germany gladder made at-that time in-which these-things
intra Italiam gerebantur, summus pontifex Wilhelmus, vir
within Italy were-done the-highest pontiff William a-man
sapiens et prudens, pius et cunctis affabilis, a patre
wise and prudent pious and to-all affable by the-father
sibi commendatum regebat Francorum imperium.
to-himself entrusted ruled of-the-Franks the-empire
LXXIIII. Cuius mater, licet peregrina, nobili tamen erat
LXXIIII whose mother though foreign of-noble nevertheless was
genere procreata. Hic cum audisset aegrotare coepisse matrem
race born he when he-had-heard to-be-ill to-have-begun the-mother
imperatoris, mirae sanctitatis feminam, nomine Mahthildam,
of-the-emperor of-wondrous holiness a-woman by-name Mathilda
dumque eius expectat funus, proprio funere ipsius funus
and-while her he-awaits funeral by-own funeral her funeral
procedit. De cuius laude si aliquid dicere cupimus, deficimus,
he-precedes about whose praise if anything to-say we-desire we-fail
quia omne argumentum ingenioli nostri superat virtus tantae
because all argument of-little-wit our surpasses the-virtue of-so-great
feminae. Quis enim digne possit explicare eius vigilantiam
a-woman who for worthily could set-out her vigilance
erga cultum divinum? Omnis nox omnibus modis et
toward the-worship divine every night in-all ways and

omni genere cellulam suam divinorum carminum melodia
in-every kind cell her of-divine songs with-the-melody
inplebat. Erat enim ei cellula ecclesiae proxima, in qua
she-filled there-was for to-her a-cell to-the-church next in which
modice requiescebat, de qua omnibus noctibus consurgens
moderately she-rested from which on-all nights rising
intrat ecclesiam, nichilominus cantoribus et cantricibus intra
she-enters the-church nonetheless with-cantors and songstresses within
cellulam et pro foribus et in via triformiter constitutis,
the-cell and before the-doors and on the-way in-threefold-manner placed
qui divinam clementiam laudarent atque benedicerent; ipsa
who the-divine clemency should-praise and bless she
intra ecclesiam in vigiliis et orationibus perseverans missarum
within the-church in vigils and prayers persevering of-the-masses
sollempnia expectabat. Deinde infirmos ubicumque audivit in
the-solemnities awaited then the-sick wherever she-heard in
vicino visitavit, necessaria prebuit; deinde pauperibus
the-neighborhood she-visited necessary-things she-supplied then to-the-poor
manum porrexit; deinde hospites, qui semper aderant, cum
the-hand she-stretched-out then the-guests who always were-present with
omni largitate suscepit; neminem sine affatu blando dimisit,
all generosity she-received no-one without address kind she-dismissed
nullum fere sine munusculis vel necessariis adiumentis
none almost without little-gifts or necessary aids
vacuum reliquit. Saepe viatoribus, quos longius de cella
empty she-left often to-travelers whom far from the-cell
prospexit, necessaria transmisit. Talia opera licet valde
she-saw necessary-things she-sent-across such works though very
humiliter diebus ac noctibus exerceret, tamen nichil de
humbly by-days and nights she-practiced nevertheless nothing of
honore regio minuebat; et sicut scriptum est, quamvis sederet
honor royal she-lessened and as written it-is although she-sat

tamquam regina circumstante populo, semper et ubique
as queen with-the-people standing-around always and everywhere
tamen erat moerentium consolatrix. Domesticos omnes
nevertheless she-was of-the-grieving the-consoler the-household all
famulos et ancillas variis artibus, litteris quoque instituit;
servants and maids in-various arts in-letters also she-instructed
nam et ipsa litteras novit, quas post mortem regis lucide
for also she letters knew which after the-death of-the-king clearly
satis didicit. Ergo si omnes virtutes eius velim narrare,
enough she-learned therefore if all virtues her I-should-wish to-tell
hora deficeret; facundia Homeri vel Maronis michi si
the-hour would-fail the-eloquence of-Homer or of-Maro to-me if
adesset, non sufficeret. Igitur plena dierum, plena omni
it-were-present not would-suffice therefore full of-days full of-all
honore, plena operibus bonis et elemosinis, cunctis divitiis
honor full of-works good and with-alms with-all riches
regalibus distributis servis Dei et ancillis ac pauperibus,
royal distributed to-the-servants of-God and handmaids and to-the-poor
secundo Idus Martias animam Christo reddidit. Illo quoque
on-the-second Ides of-March the-soul to-Christ she-returned at-that also
tempore Bernhardus, ut ab omni populo predicabatur, suis
time Bernhard as by all the-people was-proclaimed in-his
temporibus sacerdotio dignissimus, diem funxit extremum.
times of-the-priesthood most-worthy the-day performed last
Piam famam super his nemo nos vituperet prodidisse,
a-pious report about these-things let-no-one us blame to-have-handed-down
dum veri periculo non subcumbimus. Audivimus enim
while of-the-truth to-the-danger not we-succumb we-have-heard for
a quodam solitario, in spiritu nescio an manifesta
from a-certain solitary in spirit I-know-not or by-manifest

visione, animam reginae et episcopi infinita multitudine
vision the-soul of-the-queen and of-the-bishop by-an-infinite multitude
angelorum cum gloria ineffabili caelos deferre vidisse.
of-angels with glory ineffable to-the-heavens to-bear to-have-seen

III.75–76 · OTTO'S DEATH

Otto returns from Italy, keeps Easter at Quedlinburg, and grieves for Duke Hermann. At Memleben, after vespers, he grows faint and dies with the sacrament. The people recall his fatherly rule and his victories over the Avars, Saracens, Danes, and Slavs. His son is chosen as prince, and the body is buried at Magdeburg.

LXXV. Igitur imperator audita morte matris et filii
LXXV therefore the-emperor with-heard the-death of-the-mother and of-the-son
caeterorumque principalium virorum — nam et Gero, vir
and-of-the-other principal men for also Gero a-man
magnus et potens, iam antea defunctus est—, iudicavit ab
great and mighty already before died has judged from
expeditione Fraxaneti abstinere et dispositis in Italia rebus
the-expedition of-Fraxinetum to-abstain and with-arranged in Italy things
patriam remeare. Pulsavit quoque fama eum, quasi plerique
to-the-homeland to-return struck also report him as-if very-many
Saxonum rebellare voluissent; quod quia inutile erat, nec
of-the-Saxons to-rebel had-wished which because useless it-was nor
relatione dignum arbitramur. Egressus est itaque de Italia cum
of-relation worthy we-judge went-out has therefore from Italy with
magna gloria, capto rege Longobardorum, superatis Graecis
great glory with-captured king of-the-Lombards with-overcome Greeks
victisque Sarracenis, cum victricibus alis Galliam ingressus
and-conquered Saracens with victorious wings Gaul entered
est, inde Germaniam transiturus et proximum pascha loco
has thence to-Germany about-to-cross and the-next Easter in-the-place

celebri Quidilingaburg celebraturus; ubi diversarum gentium
famous Quedlinburg about-to-celebrate where of-diverse peoples
multitudo conveniens, restitutum patriae cum filio cum
a-multitude gathering him-restored to-the-homeland with the-son with
magno gaudio celebrabant. Manens autem ibi decem et septem
great joy celebrated remaining however there ten and seven
non amplius diebus, descendit inde, ascensionem Domini
not more days he-went-down thence the-Ascension of-the-Lord
apud Mesburg celebraturus. Tristis autem illa loca perambulat
at Merseburg about-to-celebrate sad however those places he-walks-through
obitu optimi viri ducis Herimanni, qui prudentiae ac
at-the-death of-the-best man duke Hermann who of-prudence and
iustitiae miraeque vigilantiae in rebus civilibus et externis
justice and-wondrous vigilance in things civil and external
cunctis retro mortalibus aeternam reliquit memoriam. Post
to-all hitherto mortals an-eternal left memory after
susceptos ab Africa legatos eum regio honore et munere
the-received from Africa envoys him with-royal honor and gift
visitantes secum fecit manere. Tertia autem feria ante
visiting with-himself he-made to-stay on-the-third however weekday before
pentecosten locum devenit qui dicitur Miminlevu. Proxima
Pentecost the-place he-reached which is-called Memleben on-the-next
nocte iuxta morem diluculo de lecto consurgens nocturnis
night according-to custom at-dawn from bed rising at-the-nocturnal
et matutinis laudibus intererat. Post haec paululum
and matutinal lauds he-was-present after these-things a-little
requievit; missarum deinde officiis celebratis pauperibus iuxta
he-rested of-the-masses then the-offices celebrated to-the-poor according-to
morem manus porrexit, paululum gustavit, iterumque in lecto
custom the-hand he-stretched-out a-little he-tasted and-again in bed
requievit. Cum autem hora esset, processit, laetus et hilaris
rested when however the-hour was he-went-forth glad and cheerful

ad mensam resedit. Peracto ministerio vespertinis laudibus
at the-table sat-down with-completed service at-the-vesper lauds
interfuit; peracto cantico evangelii aestuari atque fatigari
he-was-present with-completed the-canticle of-the-gospel to-burn and to-be-wearied
iam coepit. Quod cum intellexissent principes circumstantes,
now he-began which when had-understood the-princes standing-around
sedili eum inposuerunt. Inclinantem autem caput, quasi iam
on-a-seat him they-placed bowing however the-head as-if already
defecisset, refocillaverunt; expetitoque sacramento divini
he-had-failed they-revived and-with-sought the-sacrament of-the-divine
corporis ac sanguinis et accepto, sine gemitu cum magna
body and blood and received without groan with great
tranquillitate ultimum spiritum cum divinis officiis pietati
tranquility the-last spirit with the-divine offices to-the-piety
creatoris omnium tradidit. Transportatur inde in cubiculum;
of-the-creator of-all handed-over he-is-carried thence into the-chamber
et cum esset iam sero, nuntiatur populo mors eius.
and when it-was already late is-announced to-the-people the-death his
Populus autem pro eius laude et gratiarum actione multa
the-people however for his praise and of-thanks the-giving many-things
locutus memoravit eum paterna subiectos rexisse pietate,
having-spoken recalled him with-paternal the-subjects to-have-ruled piety
ab hostibus eos liberasse, superbos hostes Avares, Sarracenos,
from enemies them to-have-freed the-proud enemies Avars Saracens
Danos, Sclavos armis vicisse, Italiam subiugasse,
Danes Slavs in-arms to-have-conquered Italy to-have-subjugated
delubra deorum in vicinis gentibus destruxisse, templa
the-shrines of-the-gods in the-neighboring peoples to-have-destroyed temples
ministrorumque ordines constituisse; multaque alia bona
and-of-ministers the-orders to-have-established and-many other good-things
invicem conferentes regali funeri insistebant.
mutually recounting on-the-royal funeral they-pressed-on

LXXVI. Mane autem iam facto, licet iam olim
LXXVI with-morning however already made although already long-ago
unctus esset in regem et a beato apostolico designatus
anointed he-had-been as king and by the-blessed apostolic designated
in imperatorem, spei unicae totius ecclesiae, imperatoris
as emperor of-the-hope only of-the-whole church of-the-emperor
filio, ut in initio certatim manus dabant, fidem pollicentes
to-the-son as in the-beginning vying hands they-gave faith promising
et operam suam contra omnes adversarios sacramentis
and effort their against all adversaries by-oaths
militaribus confirmantes. Igitur ab integro ab omni populo
military confirming therefore from the-beginning by all the-people
electus in principem transtulit corpus patris in civitatem,
chosen as prince he-transferred the-body of-the-father into the-city
quam ipse magnifice construxit, vocabulo Magathaburg. Itaque
which he magnificently built by-name Magdeburg therefore
defunctus est Nonis Maii, quarta feria ante pentecosten,
dead is on-the-Nones of-May the-fourth weekday before Pentecost
imperator Romanorum, rex gentium, divinarum humanarumque
the-emperor of-the-Romans king of-peoples of-divine and-human
rerum multa ac gloriosa saeculis relinquens monimenta.
things many and glorious to-the-ages leaving monuments

HROTSVITHA OF GANDERSHEIM

Gesta Ottonis

The Deeds of Otto

Hrotsvitha writes to Abbess Gerberga that she has set out the emperor's deeds in verse at her command, like one walking a snowy forest without a guide, finding no written account to follow. She fears the charge of rashness but trusts that her sex and the command excuse her, and leaves the work to Gerberga's judgment and Archbishop William's.

Gerbergae, illustri abbatissae, cui pro sui eminentia
to-Gerberga illustrious abbess to-whom for her eminence
probitatis haut minor obsequela venerationis, quam pro insigni
of-uprightness not less the-obedience of-veneration than for the-notable
regalis stemmate generositatis, Hrotsvit Gandeshemensis,
of-royal lineage nobility Hrotsvit of-Gandersheim
ultima ultimarum sub huiusmodi personae dominio
the-last of-the-last under of-this-kind of-a-person the-lordship
militantium, quod famula herae.
serving what a-maidservant to-her-mistress
O mea domna, quae rutilanti spiritalis varietate sapientiae
O my lady who with-glowing of-spiritual by-the-variety of-wisdom
praelucetis, non pigescat vestri almitiem perlustrare, quod
shine-forth not let-it-irk of-your the-kindness to-look-through what
vestra confectum si ignoratis ex iussione.
your done if you-know-not from command
Id quidem oneris mihi inposuistis, ut gesta caesaris
this indeed of-burden on-me you-have-imposed that the-deeds of-the-caesar
augusti, quae nec auditu unquam affatim valui colligere,
august which neither by-hearing ever adequately I-could gather
metrica percurrerem ratione. In huius sudore progressionis
in-metrical I-should-run-through reckoning in of-this the-sweat of-progress
quantum meae inscitiae obstiterit difficultatis, ipsa
how-much to-my ignorance has-stood-in-the-way of-difficulty you-yourself

conicere potestis, quia haec eadem nec prius scripta repperi,
to-guess can because these same-things neither before written I-found
nec ab aliquo digestim sufficienterque dicta elicere quivi,
nor from anyone in-order and-sufficiently told to-draw-out could
sed veluti si aliquis nescius ignoti per latitudinem saltus
but as-if if someone ignorant of-an-unknown through the-breadth forest
esset iturus, ubi omnis semita nivali densitate velaretur
were about-to-go where every path with-snowy density were-veiled
obducta, hicque nullo duce, sed solo praemonstrantium
covered and-here with-no guide but by-the-sole of-those-showing-the-way
nutu inductus, nunc per devia erraret, nunc
nod led now through pathless-ways should-wander now
recti tramitem callis inprovise incurreret, donec tandem
of-the-straight the-track of-path unexpectedly should-run-upon until at-last
emensa arboreae medietate spissitudinis locum optatae
with-traversed of-the-wooded the-middle thicket a-place of-desired
comprehenderet quietis, illicque gradum figens ulterius progredi
should-reach rest and-there the-step fixing further to-advance
non praesumeret, usquedum vel alio superveniente
not should-presume until either with-another arriving
induceretur vel praecedentis vestigia subsequeretur: haut aliter
be-should-be-led or of-one-going-before the-footsteps should-follow not otherwise
ego, magnificarum prolixitatem rerum iussa ingredi, regalium
I of-magnificent the-length of-things ordered to-enter of-royal
multiplicitatem gestorum nutando et vacillando aegerrime
the-multitude of-deeds by-tottering and by-wavering most-painfully
transcurri, hisque admodum lassata competenti in loco
have-run-through and-by-these very wearied a-fitting in place
pausando silesco nec augustalis proceritatem excellentiae sine
by-pausing I-fall-silent nor of-the-imperial the-height of-excellence without
ducatu appono subire. Si enim facundissimis disertissimorum
guidance I-venture to-approach if for by-the-most-eloquent of-the-most-skilled

sententiis, quas vel modo scriptas vel ocius de his
sentences which either already written or quite-soon about these
rebus non dubito fore scribendas, fuerim animata, fortasse
things not I-doubt to-be to-be-written I-had-been animated perhaps
nanciscerer, unde mei rusticitas velaretur aliquantisper.
I-would-find whence my rusticity might-be-veiled somewhat
Nunc autem omne latus tanto magis caret defensione,
now however every side by-so-much more lacks defense
quanto minus ulla fulcitur auctoritate; unde etiam
by-as-much-as less by-any it-is-propped authority whence also
vereor me temeritatis argui tendiculasque multorum non
I-fear myself of-rashness to-be-accused and-the-snares of-many not
devitare convicii, eo quod pomposis facetae urbanitatis
to-avoid of-reproach on-that because in-pompous of-witty urbanity
exponenda eloquentiis praesumpserim dehonestare inculti
things-to-be-set-out eloquences I-presumed to-dishonor of-uncultivated
vilitate sermonis. Si tamen sanae mentis examen
by-the-cheapness speech if nevertheless of-sound mind the-judgment
accesserit, quae res recte pensare non nescit, quanto
shall-have-come which things rightly to-weigh not knows-not by-as-much-as
sexus fragilior scientiaque minor, tanto venia erit facilior;
the-sex frailer and-knowledge less by-so-much pardon will-be easier
praesertim cum si meae praesumptionis, sed vestrum causa
especially since if of-my presumption but of-your for-the-sake
iussionis huius stamen opusculi coeperim ordiri.
of-command of-this the-warp of-little-work I-began to-weave
Cur tamen aliorum iudicia formido, quae vestri solummodo
why nevertheless of-others the-judgments do-I-dread who to-your only
censurae, si quid fefelli, obnoxia existo? vel cur nequeam
censure if anything I-have-erred liable stand or why can-I-not
devitare convicia, quae solummodo silentio studere debeo, ne, si
avoid reproaches which only by-silence to-strive I-ought lest if

seriem pro sui vilitate nulli ostendendam velim propalari,
the-series for its cheapness to-no-one to-be-shown I-should-wish to-be-published
merito omnium succumbam reprehensioni? Vestro autem
deservedly of-all I-should-succumb reproof to-your however
vestrique familiarissimi, cui hanc rusticitatem sanxistis
and-of-yours most-familiar to-whom this rusticity you-have-sanctioned
praesentatum iri, scilicet archipraesulis Wilhelmi,
presented to-be-about-to-be namely of-the-archbishop William
iudicio, quoquomodo factum sit, aestimandum relinquo.
to-the-judgment how-ever done it-be to-be-reckoned I-leave

PREFACE TO OTTO THE GREAT

She asks Otto, emperor and king, not to spurn this small gift from the least of Gandersheim's flock; no earlier book taught her, and devotion alone moved her. She has written what she was told and asks only that her little book not be last. Though he holds the empire, let him not disdain to be called king here until his imperial glory is told in a second work.

Pollens imperii regnator caesariani,
Mighty of-the-empire ruler caesarean,
Oddo, qui regis pietate favente perennis
Otto, who of-the-king with-piety favoring everlasting
in sceptris augustalis praeclarus honoris
in the-scepters of-august famous honor
augustos omnes superas pietate priores,
the-augusts all you-surpass in-piety former,
quem plures gentes passim metuunt habitantes,
whom many peoples far-and-wide fear dwelling,
muneribus variis Romanus donat et orbis!
with-gifts various the-Roman presents and the-world!

Exiguum munus ne spernas carminis huius,
The-slight gift do-not spurn of-song this,
iste sed oblatus laudum placeat tibi census,
this but offered of-praises may-it-please you the-tax,
quem postrema gregis solvit tibi Gandeshemensis,
which the-last of-the-flock pays to-you of-Gandersheim,
quem dulcis patrum collegit cura tuorum,
which the-sweet of-fathers gathered care your,
continuumque tibi debet studium famulandi.
and-continual to-you owes zeal of-serving.
Forsan gestorum plures scripsere tuorum
Perhaps of-deeds many have-written your
et sunt scripturi post haec insignia multi:
and are about-to-write after these the-notable-things many:
sed non exemplum quisquam mihi praebuit horum,
but not an-example anyone to-me has-offered of-these,
nec scribenda prius scripti docuere libelli;
nor the-things-to-be-written before written taught little-books;
causa sed est operis tantum devotio mentis,
the-cause but is of-the-work only the-devotion of-the-mind,
haec et ad audendum suadebat opus metuendum.
this also to daring urged the-work to-be-feared.
Nam sat formido, quod gesta tui modulando
For enough I-dread, that the-deeds your by-setting-to-measure
incaute sim falsa sequens, non vera retexens:
incautiously I-may-be false-things following, not true-things unweaving:
sed non hoc suasit mala mis praesumptio mentis,
but not this urged evil to-me presumption of-mind,
nec summa veri contempta sponte fefelli;
nor the-sum of-the-true scorned willingly have-I-falsified;

sed res, ut scripsi, sese sic prorsus habere
but the-things, as I-wrote, themselves so wholly to-hold
ipsi dicebant, mihi qui scribenda ferebant.
they said, to-me who the-things-to-be-written brought.
Hinc augustalis pietas non spernat honoris,
Hence the-august piety not let-it-spurn of-honor,
quod supplex humilis gessit devotio mentis;
what suppliant humble did the-devotion of-mind;
et, cum te libri laudantes congrue multi
and, when you books praising fittingly many
post haec scribantur meritoque placere probentur:
after these may-be-written and-deservedly to-please be-proved:
ordine postremus non sit tamen iste libellus,
in-order last not let-it-be nevertheless this little-book,
quem prius exemplo constat scriptum fore nullo;
which before by-example it-is-agreed written to-have-been by-none;
et, licet imperii teneas decus Octaviani,
and, though of-the-empire you-hold the-glory of-Octavian,
non dedigneris vocitari nomine regis,
do-not disdain to-be-called by-the-name of-king,
donec, perscripto vitae regalis honore,
until, with-written-out of-life royal the-honor,
ordine digesto necnon sermone decoro
in-order set-out and-also in-speech seemly
dicatur sceptri decus imperiale secundi.
be-told of-the-scepter the-glory imperial of-the-second.

PREFACE TO OTTO II

She asks the young Otto, who shares his father's rule as Solomon shared David's, to read the poem of his nun, so that his name may lift its rusticity.

Oddo, Romani praefulgens gemmula regni,
Otto, of-the-Roman shining-out little-gem realm,
Oddonis flos augusti splendens venerandi,
of-Otto the-flower august splendid venerable,
cui rex altithronus perpes quoque filius eius
to-whom the-king high-throned everlasting also son his
praestitit imperium pollens in vertice rerum:
has-granted an-empire strong at the-peak of-things:
vilem ne spernas vilis textum monialis,
cheap do-not spurn of-a-cheap the-weaving nun,
quem praesentari, si digneris reminisci,
which to-be-presented, if you-deign to-remember,
ipse tui claris iussisti nuper ocellis;
you-yourself to-your brilliant ordered lately little-eyes;
et cum perspicias maculis sordescere crebris,
and when you-see with-blemishes to-be-sordid frequent,
ad celerem tanto veniam mox pronior esto,
to swift so-much pardon soon more-inclined be,
in monstrando tuis quantum plus pareo iussis:
in showing to-your how-much more I-obey commands:
si tis praecepto non urgerer metuendo,
if by-your command not I-were-pressed to-be-feared,
non foret ullomodo mihimet fiducia tanta,
not would-there-be in-any-way to-myself confidence so-great,

ut tibi praesentis scrutandum rusticitatis
that to-you of-present to-be-examined rusticity
auderem satis exiguum praeferre libellum;
I-should-dare very slight to-offer a-little-book;
qui, praestante deo patri subiunctus in aula
who, with-God granting to-the-father joined in the-hall
ipsius et monitis promptus parere paternis,
of-him and to-the-warnings ready to-obey paternal,
par decus imperii retines concorditer ampli,
equal glory of-the-empire you-hold harmoniously ample,
conportans dextra sceptrum regale tenella.
carrying in-the-right-hand the-scepter royal tender.
Sed quia te memini sublimiter assimilari
But because you I-remember sublimely to-be-likened
nato famosi regis David Salomoni,
to-the-son of-the-famous king David to-Solomon,
qui genitore suo praesente iubenteque sancto
who with-father his present and-ordering holy
optata regnum suscepit pace paternum,
with-wished-for the-realm received peace paternal,
ipsius exemplo te contentum fore spero;
of-him by-the-example you content to-be-about-to-be I-hope;
qui cum regnando resideret in arce superba,
who when by-reigning he-sat in the-citadel proud,
prudenter legum condens decreta sacrarum
prudently of-laws founding the-decrees sacred
ac penetrans animo rerum secreta profundo,
and penetrating with-mind of-things the-secrets deep,
nunc libet et minimis mentem laxare rimandis,
now it-pleases also to-the-least the-mind to-relax to-be-searched,

sed nec conflictum fastidit rite duarum
but nor the-conflict disdains duly of-two-women
solvere iudicii celeri discrimine recti,
to-loose of-judgment swift by-decision right,
prolem restitui verae mandans genitrici.
the-offspring to-be-restored to-the-true commanding mother.
Hinc supplex te posco quidem, nostrum Salomonem,
Hence suppliant you I-ask indeed, our Solomon,
ut, licet imperii tenearis sollicitandi
that, though of-the-empire you-are-held to-be-attended-to
cura, digneris tamen et propriae monialis
by-care, you-deign nevertheless also of-your-own nun
ludendo seriem nunc lectitare recentem,
in-playing the-series now to-read recent,
quo male compositis verbis mox decidat omnis
so-that from-badly composed words soon may-fall-away all
rusticitas oris de tractibus imperialis
rusticity of-the-mouth from the-tracts of-the-imperial
nominis, et titulo signata tui venerando
name, and by-the-title marked your venerable
despectus nimia meriti tueantur ab aura.
of-contempt excessive of-merit may-they-be-shielded from the-breeze.

God moves the realm from the Franks to the Saxons, and Henry reigns justly with Mathilda. Their three sons are Otto, Henry, and Bruno. Henry seeks a wife for Otto across the sea, and the English king sends his sisters Edith and Adiva, descended from the martyr Oswald; Otto chooses Edith.

Postquam rex regum, qui solus regnat in aevum,
After the-king of-kings, who alone reigns for ever,
per se cunctorum transmutans tempora regum,
through himself of-all changing the-times of-kings,
iussit Francorum transferri nobile regnum
ordered of-the-Franks to-be-transferred the-noble realm
ad claram gentem Saxonum, nomen habentem
to the-famous people of-the-Saxons, a-name having
a saxo per duritiam mentis bene firmam, —
from stone through the-hardness of-mind well firm,—
filius Oddonis magni ducis et venerandi,
the-son of-Otto the-great duke and venerable,
scilicet Henricus, suscepit regia primus
namely Henry, took-up royal first
iusto pro populo moderamine sceptra gerenda.
with-just for the-people governance the-scepters to-be-borne.
Hic pollens quantae fuerat bonitatis honore,
He strong of-how-great he-had-been goodness honor,
et quanta populos rexit pietate subactos,
and with-how-great the-peoples he-ruled piety subdued,
qualiter et reges meritis tunc temporis omnes
how also the-kings by-merits then of-time all
praeminet eximiis, excedit denique vilis
surpasses outstanding, exceeds finally of-cheap

huius carminuli textum nimium vitiosi.
of-this of-the-little-song the-weaving very faulty.
Nam fuit inmitis reprobis, blandus quoque iustis,
For he-was harsh to-the-wicked, gentle also to-the-just,
summo conservans studio legalia iura,
with-highest preserving zeal the-legal rights,
aequa satis meritis reddens quoque praemia cunctis
fair enough to-merits returning also rewards to-all
huic rex pacificus dederat de sidere Christus
to-this-one the-king peaceful had-given from the-star Christ
eius civilem vitae per tempora pacem;
his civil of-life through the-times peace;
omine felici tenuit quoque culmina regni,
with-omen happy he-held also the-heights of-the-realm,
ni fallor, denos labentis temporis annos
unless I-am-mistaken, ten of-gliding time years
necnon bis ternos multum feliciter actos,
and-also twice three very happily spent,
conregnante sua Mathilda coniuge clara,
with-co-reigning his Mathilda wife famous,
cui nunc in regno non compensabitur ulla,
to-whom now in the-realm not will-be-matched any-woman,
quae posset meritis illam superare supremis.
who could in-merits her surpass highest.
Trina quibus deitas dederat tres denique natos,
Threefold to-whom the-deity had-given three finally sons,
iam tunc felici disponendo pie genti,
already then for-the-happy by-arranging piously people,
ne post Henrici mortem, regis venerandi,
lest after of-Henry the-death, of-the-king venerable,

imperium regni male surriperent scelerosi,
the-rule of-the-realm badly should-snatch the-wicked,
hi sed regalis nati de germine stirpis
these but of-royal born from the-shoot of-stock
rexissent regnum concordi pace paternum;
should-have-ruled the-realm in-harmonious peace paternal;
quamvis dissimiles his servarentur honores,
although unlike to-these were-kept honors,
binis regnanti subiectis scilicet uni.
with-the-two to-the-reigning subject namely one.
Inter quos primus fulsit ceu lucifer ortus
Among whom first shone like the-morning-star risen
Oddo, micans radiis nimium clarae bonitatis;
Otto, glittering with-rays very of-bright goodness;
gratia quem regis solita pietate perennis
the-grace whom of-the-king by-wonted piety everlasting
rectorem plebi praevidit rite fideli.
as-ruler for-the-people foresaw duly faithful.
Hic aetate prior fuerat, meritis quoque maior,
He in-age prior had-been, in-merits also greater,
congruus et sceptris defuncto patre gerendis.
fitting and for-the-scepters with-dead father to-be-borne.
Non opus est verbis eius summam probitatis
Not need is in-words his the-sum of-uprightness
dicere vel pueri meritum laudabile tanti:
to-tell or of-the-boy the-merit praiseworthy so-great:
cui Christus talem iam nunc augessit honorem,
to-whom Christ such already now has-increased honor,
possidet ut Romam pollenti iure superbam,
he-possesses that Rome by-strong right proud,

quae semper stabilis summum fuerat caput orbis,
which always stable the-highest had-been head of-the-world,
edomat et gentes, Christo favente, feroces,
he-tames and peoples, with-Christ favoring, fierce,
quae prius ecclesiam laniabant saepe sacratam.
which before the-church tore often consecrated.
Post hunc Henricus fuerat feliciter ortus
After him Henry had-been happily born
inpositoque patris famosus nomine regis;
and-with-imposed of-the-father famous the-name of-the-king;
provida quem domini pariter sapientia Christi
provident whom of-the-Lord equally the-wisdom of-Christ
dignatur servare ducem populo bene fortem,
deigns to-keep as-duke for-the-people well strong,
belliger ut fortis, belli doctissimus artis,
warlike so-that brave, of-war most-learned of-the-art,
fortiter ecclesiam praemuniret venerandam,
bravely the-church he-might-fortify venerable,
ceu murus iaculis obstans fortissimus hostis.
like a-wall to-the-javelins standing-against most-strong of-the-enemy.
Post hunc ecclesiae pastor Brun nascitur almae;
After him of-the-church the-shepherd Bruno is-born kindly;
gratia pontificis quem duxit summa perennis
the-grace of-the-pontiff whom led highest everlasting
dignum catholici curam gestare popelli:
worthy of-the-catholic the-care to-bear little-people:
hinc quoque divino nutu patris pia cura
hence also by-the-divine nod of-the-father the-pious care
ipsum servitio Christi fecit religari,
him to-the-service of-Christ made to-be-bound,

abstractum gremio carae nutricis amando,
drawn from-the-lap of-dear of-the-nurse to-be-loved,
ut regni pompis posset constare relictis
that of-the-realm with-the-pomps he-might to-stand-firm left
miles stelligera semper regnantis in aula;
a-soldier star-bearing always of-the-reigning-one in hall;
at Christus, patris sapientia vera perennis,
but Christ, of-the-father the-wisdom true everlasting,
tironem refovendo suum clementius istum
the-recruit by-cherishing his more-mercifully this
ipsi dona dedit tantae praeclara sophiae,
to-him gifts gave of-so-great brilliant of-wisdom,
quod non est illo penitus sapientior ullus
that not is than-him wholly wiser anyone
inter mortales fragilis mundi sapientes.
among the-mortals of-the-frail world wise.
His igitur pueris regali more nutritis,
With-these therefore boys in-royal manner reared,
ipsorum patri famoso denique regi
to-their father famous finally king
Henrico placuit, factis quod rite replevit,
to-Henry it-pleased, with-deeds which duly he-fulfilled,
ut, vitae calidas sospes dum carperet auras,
that, of-life the-warm safe while he-plucked breezes,
ipse suo primogenito regique futuro
he to-his first-born and-king future
Oddoni dignam iam disponsaret amicam,
to-Otto a-worthy now should-betroth beloved,
quae propriae proli digne posset sociari.
who to-own offspring worthily could be-joined.

Hanc non in proprio voluit conquirere regno,
Her not in own he-wished to-seek realm,
trans mare legatos sed transmisit bene cautos
across the-sea envoys but he-sent-across well cautious
gentis ad Anglorum terram sat deliciosam,
of-the-people to of-the-English the-land very delightful,
demandans, ut continuo cum munere misso
sending-word, that at-once with gift sent
Aedwardi regis natam peterent Eaditham,
of-Edward the-king the-daughter they-should-seek Edith,
quae patre defuncto iam tunc residebat in aula,
who with-the-father dead already then resided in the-hall,
fratre suo regni sceptrum gestante paterni;
with-brother her of-the-realm the-scepter bearing paternal;
quem peperit regi consors non inclita regni,
whom bore to-the-king the-consort not famous of-the-realm,
istius egregiae genitrix clarissima domnae,
of-this outstanding the-mother most-famous lady,
altera sed generis mulier satis inferioris.
another but of-race a-woman very inferior.
Haec nam versiculis proles quam scriptito regis,
This for in-little-verses the-offspring whom I-write of-the-king,
haec, inquam, fama cunctis fuerat bene nota:
this-one, I-say, by-report to-all had-been well known:
nobilitate potens, primis meritis quoque pollens,
in-nobility mighty, in-first merits also strong,
edita magnorum summo de germine regum;
born of-great highest from shoot of-kings;
cuius praeclaro facies candore serena
whose with-brilliant the-face whiteness serene

regalis formae miro rutilabat honore;
of-royal form with-wondrous glowed honor;
ipsaque perfectae radiis fulgens bonitatis
and-she of-perfect with-the-rays shining goodness
in patria talis meruit praeconia laudis,
in the-homeland such earned the-proclamations of-praise,
ut fore iudicio plebis decernitur omnis
that to-be by-the-judgment of-the-commons is-decided all
optima cunctarum, quae tunc fuerant, mulierum.
best of-all, who then had-been, women.
Nec mirum, meritis si lucebat bene primis,
Nor wonder, in-merits if she-shone well first,
germen sanctorum quam producebat avorum:
the-shoot of-holy whom produced of-ancestors:
hanc tradunt ergo natam de stirpe beata
her they-relate therefore born from the-stock blessed
Oswaldi regis, laudem cuius canit orbis,
of-Oswald the-king, the-praise of-whom sings the-world,
se quia subdiderat morti pro nomine Christi.
himself because he-had-subjected to-death for the-name of-Christ.
At regis nostri venientes denique missi
But of-the-king our coming at-last the-envoys
ad fratrem domnae iam tunc residentis in arce,
to the-brother of-the-lady now then residing in the-citadel,
illi nudabant, quaecumque secreta ferebant.
to-him laid-bare, whatever secret-things they-carried.
Quae sibi percerte comperta satis placuere;
Which to-him very-surely learned much pleased;
moxque suae dulci narrabat voce sorori,
and-soon to-his with-sweet he-told voice sister,

exortans illam regi parere fideli,
exhorting her to-the-king to-obey faithful,
illam qui propriae proli voluit sociari.
her who to-own offspring wished to-be-joined.
Cumque suae monitis menti instillaret amicis
And-when to-her with-warnings mind he-instilled friendly
Oddonis dulcem, pueri regalis, amorem,
of-Otto the-sweet, of-the-boy royal, love,
collegit innumeras summo conamine gazas.
he-gathered countless with-highest effort treasures.
Ast ubi collecti visum fuerat satis ipsi,
But when of-the-gathered it-seemed had enough to-him,
praedictam sociis domnam comitantibus aptis
the-aforesaid with-companions the-lady accompanying fit
trans mare percerte summo direxit honore,
across the-sea very-surely with-highest he-directed honor,
condonans illi gazas nimium pretiosas;
granting to-her treasures very precious;
necnon germanam secum transmisit Adivam,
and-also the-sister with-her he-sent-across Adiva,
quae fuit aetatis meriti pariterque minoris:
who was of-age of-merit and-equally lesser:
quo sic maiorem prorsus conferret honorem
so-that thus greater wholly he-might-confer honor
Oddoni, nato famosi regis amando,
on-Otto, on-the-son of-the-famous king beloved,
egregiae binas stirpis mittendo puellas,
of-outstanding two stock by-sending girls,
ut sibi, quam vellet, sponsam licito sociaret.
that for-himself, whom he-wished, as-bride lawfully he-might-join.

Aspectu primo sed mox Eadit veneranda,
At-sight first but soon Edith venerable,
iure placens cunctis habitu summae bonitatis,
by-right pleasing to-all in-bearing of-highest goodness,
regali nato censetur congrue digna.
for-the-royal son is-judged fittingly worthy.

121–245 · OTTO'S REIGN AND THE FIRST REVOLT

Edith bears Liudolf. Henry dies and Otto is anointed. Eberhard seizes the young Henry at Belecke, and Otto rescues his brother and punishes the authors. Eberhard and Giselbert then persuade Henry to seek the crown, but God turns the plot on its authors.

Haec illi dulcem peperit clarissima prolem,
She to-him a-sweet bore most-famous offspring,
nomine Liudulfum, tantis genitoribus aptum;
by-name Liudolf, for-so-great parents fit;
quem populus merito dilexit amore tenello,
whom the-people deservedly loved with-love tender,
exoptans prolongari vitam satis ipsi.
longing to-be-prolonged life enough to-him.
Istis sic habitis, instabat denique finis
With-these thus held, pressed finally the-end
Henrici regis; cuius mortem gemit omnis
of-Henry the-king; whose death groans all
illius imperio populus iurique subactus.
to-his rule people and-to-right subjected.
Quo nam defuncto, regnum susceperat Oddo,
With-whom for dead, the-realm had-taken-up Otto,

eiusdem primogenitus regis venerandus;
of-the-same the-first-born king venerable;
et, voto cuncti iam respondente popelli,
and, with-the-wish of-all now answering of-the-little-people,
unguitur in regem, Christo praestante, potentem.
he-is-anointed as king, with-Christ granting, mighty.
Cui rex gratiolae caeli munuscula tantae
On-whom the-king of-grace of-heaven little-gifts so-great
contulit, ut digne cunctis celeberrimus ipse
conferred, that worthily to-all most-famous he
gestorum reges fama praecelleret omnes,
of-deeds the-kings in-fame should-surpass all,
oceanus refluis quos nam circumfluit undis.
the-ocean with-ebbing whom for flows-around waves.
Insuper e tantis ipsum sacra dextra potentis
Moreover from so-great him the-holy right-hand of-the-mighty-one
protegit insidiis occulta fraude paratis
protects ambushes by-hidden fraud prepared
et tam magnificis ornat persaepe triumphis,
and with-so magnificent adorns very-often triumphs,
ut credas regem David regnare fidelem
that you-would-believe king David to-reign faithful
iam nunc antiquis fulgentem rite triumphis;
already now with-ancient shining duly triumphs;
nec solum gentes frenis moderat bonitatis,
nor only the-peoples with-the-reins he-governs of-goodness,
quae prius imperio patris dederant sua colla,
which before to-the-rule of-the-father had-given their necks,
sed multo plures certe sibi vindicat ipse,
but many more surely for-himself claims he,

subdens gentiles Christi servis nationes,
subjecting the-gentile of-Christ to-the-servants nations,
quo pax ecclesiae fieret stabilita sacratae.
so-that the-peace of-the-church might-be established consecrated.
Ad bellum certe quoties processerat ipse,
To war surely as-often-as had-advanced he,
non fuerat populus, quamvis virtute superbus,
not there-had-been a-people, though in-valor proud,
laedere qui posset vel exsuperare valeret
to-harm which could or to-overcome might-avail
ipsum caelestis fultum solamine regis;
him of-the-heavenly propped by-the-solace king;
eius nec cessit telis exercitus ullis,
his nor yielded to-weapons the-army any,
ni sua spernendo forsan regalia iussa
unless his by-spurning perhaps royal commands
illic pugnaret, quo rex idem prohiberet.
there it-should-fight, where the-king the-same should-forbid.
At dux Henricus, frater regis venerandus,
But duke Henry, the-brother of-the-king venerable,
princeps in regno fuerat tunc nempe quieto
the-prince in the-realm had-been then indeed quiet
post regem, plebi merito venerabilis omni,
after the-king, to-the-commons deservedly venerable all,
qui sibi condigne legali iunxit amore
who to-himself fittingly with-lawful joined love
Arnulfi natam, ducis egregii, generosam,
of-Arnulf the-daughter, of-the-duke outstanding, noble,
nomine Iudittam, vultus splendore coruscam
by-name Judith, of-face in-splendor glittering

ac fulgore magis cunctae nitidam bonitatis.
and with-brightness more of-all shining goodness.
His ita digestis, fuerat pax undique nostris
With-these thus set-out, there-had-been peace on-all-sides for-ours
ad tempus modicum libitoque minus populorum,
for a-time short and-than-the-pleasure less of-the-peoples,
bellorum certe saevo clangore tacente.
of-wars surely with-the-savage clangor falling-silent.
O quam tranquillum ridens deduceret aevum
O how tranquil smiling would-lead-on an-age
fortunata satis nostrae res publica gentis,
fortunate enough our the-thing public of-people,
quae nimis imperio regis regitur sapientis,
which very by-the-rule of-the-king is-ruled wise,
si non antiqui mala calliditas inimici
if not of-the-ancient the-evil cunning enemy
turbaret nostrum secreta fraude serenum!
should-disturb our with-secret fraud serenity!
Denique, devictis aligenorum bene telis,
Finally, with-conquered of-the-foreigners well weapons,
exoritur nostris subito discordia fortis,
arises for-ours suddenly discord strong,
laeserat et plebem bellum civile fidelem
had-harmed also the-commons war civil faithful
plus quam bellorum structura frequens variorum.
more than of-wars the-structure frequent of-various.
Huius causa mali fuerat non parva dolendi,
Of-this the-cause evil had-been not small to-be-grieved,
denique conflictus quorundam non moderatus,
finally the-conflict of-some not moderated,

ex quibus Henrico quaedam pars mente benigna
from whom to-Henry a-certain part with-mind kindly
devovit regis fratri ius vernulitatis,
devoted of-the-king to-the-brother the-right of-house-servitude,
pars Evurhardo comiti studium famulandi.
part to-Eberhard the-count the-zeal of-serving.
At cum quisque sui peteret solamina domni,
But when each of-his sought the-solaces of-lord,
hinc gravior dominis discordia nascitur ipsis.
hence heavier for-the-lords discord is-born themselves.
Tandem percerte conflictu progrediente,
At-last very-surely with-the-conflict advancing,
praedictus praeses, male collectas legiones
the-aforesaid governor, badly gathered the-legions
mox ad castellum Baduliki capiendum
soon to the-castle Belecke to-be-taken
ex inproviso mittens sub nocte nigella,
from the-unforeseen sending under night black,
duxit captivum fratrem regis generosum
led captive the-brother of-the-king noble
Henricum, vinclis palmas stringendo cruentis
Henry, with-chains the-palms binding bloody
eius candidolas, ornamentis magis aptas;
his white, for-ornaments more fit;
atque suas gazas disperdens innumerosas,
and his treasures scattering countless,
ad sua mox prolem secum deduxit herilem,
to his-own soon the-offspring with-himself led of-the-master,
utitur ut servo proprii domini quoque nato.
he-uses as a-slave of-own lord also the-son.

Quo rex comperto, maerens sub corde secreto,
With-which the-king learned, mourning under heart secret,
deflevit tristis nimium miserabile factum;
bewailed sad very pitiable the-deed;
vix quoque germani damnum patiens grave cari,
scarcely also of-the-brother the-loss bearing heavy dear,
nobile mox Abrahae factum sequitur patriarchae,
the-noble soon of-Abraham deed he-follows the-patriarch,
quod miserans egit, dum Loth ex hoste redemit;
which pitying he-did, when Lot from the-enemy he-ransomed;
militibusque suis summo conamine lectis
and-with-soldiers his with-highest effort chosen
necnon inmodica tota de gente caterva,
and-also with-immoderate whole from people with-a-throng,
pompa regali pergit solamina fratri
with-pomp royal he-proceeds solaces to-the-brother
ferre sub ingenti cordis languore dolentis.
to-bring under huge of-heart with-languor grieving.
Nec mora, quem venit fratrem refovere, redemit
Nor delay, whom he-came the-brother to-cherish, he-redeemed
auctores tanti condempnavitque piacli,
the-authors of-so-great and-condemned crime,
suspendens quosdam ligno reprobis reparato,
hanging some on-wood for-the-wicked prepared,
quosdam de patria mandans discedere cara.
some from the-homeland commanding to-depart dear.
His bene dispositis regis iussu sapientis,
With-these well arranged of-the-king by-the-command wise,
protulit antiqui rursum mala fraus inimici
brought-forth of-the-ancient again the-evil fraud enemy

inventum sceleris primo mage deterioris,
a-device of-crime than-the-first more worse,
cunctis horrendum saeclis meritoque stupendum.
to-all dreadful ages and-deservedly astounding.
Denique, praedictus postquam rediens Evurhardus
Finally, the-aforesaid after returning Eberhard
praeses ab exilio patriam repedabat amandam,
the-governor from exile to-the-homeland returned to-be-loved,
hoc sibi gratiola regis praestante benigna,
this to-him with-the-grace of-the-king granting kindly,
Gislberhto comiti vinclis sociatus amoris
to-Giselbert the-count by-chains joined of-love
consilium dederat, (quod non tibi, Christe, placebat),
counsel had-given, (which not to-you, O-Christ, pleased),
ut caperent iustum regem, domini benedictum,
that they-should-capture the-just king, of-the-Lord the-blessed,
et quod, plus iusto, non iustam vim faciendo
and that, more than-just, not just force by-doing
illum mox proprio deprivarent male regno.
him soon of-own they-should-deprive wickedly realm.
Hoc quoque consilium perversa mente repertum
This also counsel with-perverse mind found
Henrico regis fratri suasere fidelis,
to-Henry of-the-king to-the-brother they-urged faithful,
mulcentes nimium verbis ipsum male blandis,
soothing very with-words him badly coaxing,
quo prius illatum nollet iam reddere damnum,
so-that before inflicted he-would-not-wish now to-return loss,
ipsorum votis sed plus parendo nefandis
to-their wishes but more by-obeying wicked

susciperet regnum, depulso fratre, regendum.
he-should-take-up the-realm, with-driven-out brother, to-be-ruled.
Qui, male blanditis tandem victus suadelis,
Who, by-badly coaxing at-last conquered persuasions,
(pro dolor) ipsorum se promisit fore promptum
(alas grief) to-their himself he-promised to-be-about-to-be ready
votis, ac firmis hoc confirmaverat orsis;
wishes, and with-firm this he-had-confirmed words;
sed spero certe non se sic corde tenere,
but I-hope surely not himself so in-heart to-hold,
illis consensum sed vi praebere coactum.
to-them consent but by-force to-offer compelled.
Qui, male namque spei vacuae solamine capti,
Who, badly for of-hope empty by-the-solace taken,
sperabant regem populos olim dominantem
hoped the-king over-the-peoples once ruling
ipsorum fragili citius subiungere iuri.
to-their frail more-quickly to-subject right.
Sed rex de caelis, iudex aequissimus orbis,
But the-king from the-heavens, the-judge most-fair of-the-world,
cunctorum solus qui cognoscit cogitatus
of-all alone who knows the-thoughts
vanaque mortalis potis est disperdere cordis,
and-the-vain of-mortal able is to-destroy heart,
commentum tanti sceleris virtute potentis
the-contrivance of-so-great crime by-the-power of-the-mighty
dextrae confregit, qua cuncta creata creavit:
right-hand broke, by-which all created-things he-created:
scilicet insidias christo domini reparatas
namely the-ambushes for-the-anointed of-the-Lord prepared

vertit in auctores tanti meritoque piacli;
he-turned against the-authors of-so-great and-deservedly crime;
quique suo laqueos domino tendere malignos,
and-who for-their snares lord to-stretch malicious,
ex ipsis ipsi primum sunt illaqueati.
from themselves they first are ensnared.
Non me plus licito tantae sophiae fore iacto,
Not myself more than-allowed of-so-great of-wisdom to-be do-I-boast,
ut sperem plene verbis edicere posse,
that I-should-hope fully in-words to-declare to-be-able,
quanta gratiolae Christus virtute supernae
with-how-great of-grace Christ power heavenly
saepius hunc ipsum regem digne benedictum
often this very king worthily blessed
fecit multiplices salvum percurrere fraudes
made manifold safe to-run-through frauds
necnon insidias hostili parte paratas;
and-also ambushes on-the-hostile side prepared;
sed nec hoc fragilis fas esse reor mulieris
but nor this of-a-frail lawful to-be I-reckon woman
inter coenobii positae secreta quieti,
amid of-the-monastery placed the-secrets quiet,
ut bellum dictet, quod nec cognoscere debet.
that war she-should-dictate, which nor to-know she-ought.

Otto, left with few men, prays like David, and Udo routs Eberhard and Giselbert, who drowns; Otto weeps rather than rejoices. A plot to kill the king at Easter is discovered. Henry comes barefoot at Christmas to beg pardon, and Otto forgives him and makes him duke of Bavaria.

Haec perfectorum sunt conservanda virorum
These-things of-perfect are to-be-kept men
sudori, quis posse dedit sapientia mentis
for-the-sweat, to-whom to-be-able gave the-wisdom of-mind
omnia compositis sapienter dicere verbis.
all-things in-composed wisely to-tell words.
Principium quod cunctarum, finis quoque, rerum,
The-beginning which of-all, the-end also, of-things,
hoc dico solum, (recte quod dicere possum):
this I-say only, (rightly which to-say I-can):
qui solus semper fecit miranda potenter
who alone always made wondrous-things mightily
quique, David regem toties de fraude fidelem
and-who, David the-king so-often from the-fraud faithful
eripiens Sauli, sceptrum regni dedit ipsi,
snatching of-Saul, the-scepter of-the-realm gave to-him,
hunc pariter regem David pietate sequentem
this-one equally the-king David in-piety following
protexit de millenis persaepe periclis.
protected from thousands very-often dangers.
Denique, cum solus, praepauco milite saeptus,
Finally, when alone, with-very-few soldiery hedged,
esset ab adversis circumdatus undique turmis,
he-was by hostile surrounded on-all-sides squadrons,

insuper atque fugam propriae partis male factam
moreover and the-flight of-his-own party badly made
pectore maerenti ferret nimiumque dolenti
with-breast grieving he-bore and-very sorrowing
credere nec paucis sese praesumeret ipsis,
to-trust nor to-the-few himself he-presumed those,
illum qui reliquis non deseruere relapsis,
him who with-the-rest not deserted having-fallen-away,
saepe ratus tantum se mox graviter moriturum:
often thinking only himself soon heavily about-to-die:
ocius auxilii fultus virtute superni,
quite-quickly of-help propped by-the-power heavenly,
miratur turbae se iam superare cruentae
he-wonders of-the-crowd himself now to-overcome bloody
tantas absque suae fraudes discrimine vitae.
so-great without of-his frauds danger life.
Et si forte suos, pugna crescente sinistra,
And if perhaps his-own, with-the-fight growing unlucky,
audivit socios letali vulnere laesos,
he-heard comrades by-deadly wound harmed,
praedicti regis lacrimans mox utitur orsis,
of-the-aforesaid king weeping soon he-uses words,
quae maerens dixit, tristi cum pectore sensit
which grieving he-said, sad with breast he-perceived
ictibus angelici populum gladii periturum:
by-the-blows of-the-angelic the-people sword about-to-perish:
'En, qui peccavi, dixit, facinusque peregi;
'Behold, who have-sinned, he-said, and-the-crime have-done;
hinc ego vindictae dignus sum denique tantae!
hence I of-vengeance worthy am finally so-great!

Hi quid fecerunt, damnum qui tale tulerunt?
These what have-done, the-loss who such have-borne?
Iam nunc, Christe, tuis parcens miserere redemptis,
Already now, O-Christ, to-your sparing have-pity redeemed,
ne premat insontes iusto plus vis inimica!' 275
lest press-on the-innocent than-just more force hostile!'
Has igitur preculas miserans divina potestas
These therefore little-prayers pitying the-divine power
parcebat regis solita pietate ministris
spared of-the-king with-wonted piety the-ministers
et dedit optatum miserans ex hoste triumphum,
and gave the-wished-for pitying over the-enemy triumph,
iusto praedictos comites examine perdens.
by-just the-aforesaid counts judgment destroying.
Ipso namque die, quo, decepti vacua spe, 280
On-that for day, on-which, deceived by-empty hope,
speravere suis constringendum fore vinclis
they-hoped by-their to-be-bound to-be chains
regem, qui merito tenuit regalia sceptra,
the-king, who deservedly held the-royal scepters,
ex inproviso praeses proruperat Udo,
from the-unforeseen the-governor had-burst-forth Udo,
adducendo quidem multam secum legionem,
bringing indeed much with-himself legion,
ac subiit validum forti luctamine bellum; 285
and underwent a-strong in-brave struggle war;
nec mora, percussus periit gladiis Evurhardus,
nor delay, struck perished by-swords Eberhard,
Gislberhtus saevis fugiens quoque mergitur undis.
Giselbert by-savage fleeing also is-drowned waves.

At rex interea nescit tam fortia bella,
But the-king meanwhile knows-not so brave wars,
averso quidni residens in litore Reni,
on-the-opposite indeed sitting on the-bank of-the-Rhine,
nec tunc auxilii scivit solamina tanti
nor then of-help he-knew the-solaces so-great
iam, miserante deo, subito casu sibi missa.
already, with-God pitying, by-sudden chance to-him sent.
Denique dum pugnae sensit discrimina tantae,
Finally when of-the-fight he-perceived the-dangers so-great,
haut gaudens inimicorum de morte suorum,
not rejoicing of-the-enemies about the-death of-his,
sed plus tantorum maerens de caede virorum,
but more of-so-great grieving about the-slaughter men,
sumpsit non modicum, Davidis more, lamentum,
he-took not moderate, of-David in-manner, lament,
qui super occisum doluit regem pie Saulum.
who over the-slain grieved king piously Saul.
Ast ubi victores laeti venere, videntes
But when the-victors glad came, seeing
illius fusis vultum lacrimis madefactum,
his with-poured face tears wet,
haut aptum tanto luctum dixere triumpho,
not fit for-so-great mourning they-said triumph,
sed reddi grates regi debere perenni,
but to-be-returned thanks to-the-king to-be-owed everlasting,
qui tunc impleri fecit pietate fideli,
who then to-be-fulfilled made by-piety faithful,
quod patet in libro regis scriptum Salomonis,
what lies-open in the-book of-the-king written of-Solomon,

dicentis iustum de tristitia liberandum
saying the-just from sadness to-be-freed
necnon iniustum pro iusto mox fore dandum.
and-also the-unjust for the-just soon to-be to-be-given.
His mentem regis demulcendo suadelis,
With-these the-mind of-the-king by-soothing persuasions,
ipsum tristitiam cogunt deponere tantam
him the-sadness they-compel to-lay-down so-great
et bene victrici congaudentem legioni
and well with-the-victorious rejoicing legion
se post bella suis blandum praebere ministris.
himself after the-wars to-his gentle to-show ministers.
Qui nam, laetitiam vultu monstrans moderatam,
Who for, gladness in-face showing moderate,
sed clam subtristem servans in corde dolorem,
but secretly somewhat-sad keeping in heart grief,
reddebat grates imo de pectore Christo,
returned thanks inmost from breast to-Christ,
non dederat propriis ipsum quia tunc inimicis
not he-had-given to-his-own him because then enemies
praedam, sed dextra protegit rite superna;
as-booty, but with-right-hand protects duly heavenly;
ipsius titulum tanti clarumque triumphi
of-him the-title of-so-great and-brilliant triumph
non sibi, sed Christi designavit pietati.
not to-himself, but of-Christ he-assigned to-the-piety.
His ita digestis, modicum tempus requievit
With-these thus set-out, a-moderate time rested
civilis belli populus luctamine lassus.
of-civil war the-people by-the-struggle weary.

Sed nec sic veteris finem sumpsit dolus hostis,
But nor thus of-the-old an-end took the-guile enemy,
qui semper fragiles temptat pervertere mentes,
who always the-frail tries to-pervert minds,
post factum facinus suadens superaddere peius.
after the-done crime urging to-add a-worse.
Fertur percerte quorundam pectora bile
It-is-said very-surely of-some the-breasts with-bile
tanto pestiferi tandem penetrare veneni,
so-great of-pestilent at-last to-penetrate poison,
ut mortem regi vellent inferre fideli
that death on-the-king they-wished to-bring faithful
ipsius et fratrem populo praeponere regem;
of-him and the-brother to-the-people to-set-before as-king;
nec timuere diem paschae sanctum maculare,
nor feared-they the-day of-Easter holy to-stain,
si posset fieri, fuso cum sanguine iusti.
if it-could be-done, poured with blood of-the-just.
Sed non consensit tanti commissa piacli
But not consented of-so-great the-committed-things crime
agnus paschalis, qui pro nobis redimendis
the-lamb paschal, who for us to-be-redeemed
se dedit electum patri moriens holocaustum:
himself gave chosen to-the-father dying a-holocaust:
sed mox consilium cunctis nudavit eorum,
but soon the-counsel to-all he-laid-bare their,
et sic insontis salvatus erat bene sanguis;
and thus of-the-innocent saved was well the-blood;
quique rei placiti sunt inventi scelerosi,
and-those-who guilty of-the-plot were found wicked,

pro modulo culpae poenis damnantur amaris:
according-to the-measure of-the-fault by-penalties are-condemned bitter:
quidam iudicio quidni dantur capitali,
some to-judgment indeed are-given capital,
quidam de patria longe pelluntur amanda.
some from the-homeland far are-driven to-be-loved.
Post haec Henricus, frater regis generosus,
After these-things Henry, the-brother of-the-king noble,
Christi gratiola tactus sub corde secreto,
of-Christ by-grace touched under heart secret,
secum tractavit summoque dolore revolvit,
with-himself treated and-with-highest grief turned-over,
contra iustitiam quicquid perfecerat unquam.
against justice whatever he-had-accomplished ever.
Hoc quoque deflevit nimiis persaepe lamentis,
This also he-bewailed with-excessive very-often laments,
quod male blanditis horum cessit suadelis,
that to-badly coaxing of-these he-yielded persuasions,
ipsum qui verbis corruperunt simulatis.
him who with-words corrupted feigned.
Sed quamvis talem ferret sub corde dolorem,
But although such he-bore under heart grief,
praesentare tamen spatii per tempora longi
to-present nevertheless of-space through times long
non se regali praesumebat faciei;
not himself to-the-royal did-he-presume face;
absens sed cordis studio florente dolentis
absent but of-heart with-zeal flourishing grieving
optabat veniae dari munus sibi dulce.
he-wished of-pardon to-be-given the-gift to-himself sweet.

Tandem percerte forti devictus amore,
At-last very-surely by-strong conquered love,
ilico poenalem proicit de corde timorem
at-once penal he-casts from heart fear
et, sub nocturnis nimium secreto tenebris
and, under nightly very secretly darkness
adveniens, in regalem se contulit urbem,
arriving, into the-royal himself betook city,
in qua natalem regis celebrare perennis
in which the-birthday of-the-king to-celebrate everlasting
rex pius obsequiis coepit sollempniter aptis.
the-king pious with-services began solemnly fitting.
Depositisque suis ornamentis pretiosis,
And-with-laid-down his ornaments precious,
simplicis et tenuis fruitur velamine vestis,
of-simple and thin he-enjoys the-covering garment,
inter sacratos noctis venerabilis hymnos
among the-consecrated of-the-night venerable hymns
intrans nudatis templi sacra limina plantis;
entering with-bared of-the-temple the-sacred thresholds soles;
nec horret hiemis saevum frigus furientis,
nor shudders-he of-winter the-savage cold raging,
sed prono sacram vultu prostratus ad aram
but with-prone holy face prostrate at altar
corpus frigoreae sociavit nobile terrae,
the-body to-the-cold joined noble earth,
sic sic maerentis toto conamine cordis
so so of-grieving with-whole effort heart
optans praestari veniae munus sibi dulce.
wishing to-be-granted of-pardon the-gift to-himself sweet.

Quo rex comperto, victus pietate benigna
With-which the-king learned, conquered by-piety kindly
instantisque memor festi cunctis venerandi,
and-of-the-pressing mindful feast to-all venerable,
in quo caelicolae pacem mundo cecinere,
on which the-heaven-dwellers peace to-the-world sang,
laeti rege suo tenera de virgine nato,
glad with-king their tender from virgin born,
ut pie salvaret mundum merito periturum,
that piously he-might-save the-world deservedly about-to-perish,
pro diei tantae pacem portantis honore
for of-the-day so-great peace bearing the-honor
condoluit miserans fratri commissa fatenti
he-grieved-with pitying with-the-brother the-committed-things confessing
atque suam pie gratiolam concessit habendam
and his piously grace granted to-be-held
illi cum veniae dilecto munere plenae;
to-him with of-pardon beloved gift full;
necnon post aliquot spatii tempuscula parvi
and-also after some of-space little-times small
ipsius iuri proceres subiunxerat omnes
to-his right the-nobles he-had-subjected all
famosae nimium gentis Baioariorum,
of-famous very people of-the-Bavarians,
ipsum nempe ducem merito faciendo potentem:
him indeed duke deservedly making mighty:
et post haec ultra fuerat discordia nulla
and after these-things further there-had-been discord none
inter eos, animis fraterno foedere iunctis.
between them, with-minds by-brotherly treaty joined.

Duke Henry defeats the Hungarians again and again and carries the war into their land. Edith dies, mourned by all, and Liudolf and Liutgard are honored. Liudolf marries Ida. In Italy Lothar dies, and Berengar seizes the realm, strips Queen Adelheid of her treasure, and imprisons her.

Avaresque per hunc saevi saepissime victi
And-the-Avars through this-one savage very-often conquered
post haec Ottonis regnum regis spatiosum
after these-things of-Otto the-realm of-the-king spacious
non laedunt telis consueto more cruentis
not harm with-weapons in-wonted manner bloody
tangere nec contingentes audent nationes,
to-touch nor bordering dare nations,
ex terrore ducis tanti nimium tremefacti;
from terror of-the-duke so-great very trembling;
hic quia, prudentis functus valitudine mentis,
he because, of-prudent having-used the-strength of-mind,
his hominum monstris bellis obstans iteratis
to-these of-men monsters in-wars standing-against repeated
ad nos pergendi calles secluserat omnes.
to us of-proceeding the-paths had-shut-off all.
Insuper et primus, Christi munimine tutus,
Moreover also first, of-Christ by-defense safe,
audenter cum subiectae plebis legione
boldly with of-the-subject commons a-legion
eiusdem populi patriam petiit scelerosi,
of-the-same people the-homeland sought wicked,
inpugnans gentem cunctis retro namque rebellem;
attacking a-people to-all before for rebellious;

scilicet et spoliis rerum captis variarum,
namely and with-spoils of-things captured various,
quas sibi communes collegerunt prius hostes
which for-themselves common had-gathered before the-enemies
orbis perplures devastantes regiones,
of-the-world very-many laying-waste regions,
uxores procerum soboles rapuit quoque dulces:
the-wives of-the-nobles the-offspring he-seized also sweet:
et sic prostratis rediit gaudens inimicis.
and thus with-laid-low he-returned rejoicing enemies.
Istis sic habitis, properata diecula tristis
With-these thus held, hastened little-day sad
venerat, ingentem nostris augendo dolorem,
had-come, huge for-ours by-increasing grief,
in qua praefulgens meritis regina supremis
on which shining-out in-merits the-queen highest
Aedit praesentis vitae discessit ab horis,
Edith of-the-present life departed from the-hours,
ipsius imperio genti faciens famulanti
of-her to-rule for-the-people making serving
tristitiam necnon nimium cordis cruciatum
sadness and-also very of-heart torment
eius in abscessu; magno quam denique luctu,
her at departure; with-great whom finally mourning,
et non inmerito, flevit plebecula cuncta,
and not undeservedly, wept the-little-people all,
quam plus maternae fovit pietatis amore,
which more of-maternal she-cherished of-piety with-love,
quam dominatricis iussis confringeret artis.
than of-a-mistress with-commands she-would-break art.

Cui licet a Christo requiem sine fine perennem
To-whom although by Christ rest without end everlasting
necnon laetitiam iustis retro reparatam
and-also gladness for-the-just before prepared
praestari citius iam non dubitaverit ullus,
to-be-granted more-quickly already not would-have-doubted anyone,
qui meritum vitae scivit laudabile castae
who the-merit of-life knew praiseworthy chaste
ipsius ac mitem, gessit quam denique, mentem:
her and mild, she-bore which finally, mind:
attamen humanae pro consuetudine causae
nevertheless of-human for the-custom cause
non mirum, populus planctum si sumpsit amarum,
not wonder, the-people lament if it-took bitter,
dum sibi tam subito fuerat spes tanta retracta
while from-itself so suddenly had-been hope so-great withdrawn
et facies domnae nimium regalis amandae
and the-face of-the-lady very royal to-be-loved
necnon subiecti praefulgens gloria regni
and-also of-the-subject shining glory realm
mandatur terrae, gremio servanda sub amplo,
is-entrusted to-the-earth, in-the-lap to-be-kept under ample,
donec assurgat non corruptumque resumat,
until it-rise-up not and-corrupted resume,
quod nunc includit tumulus, praenobile corpus.
what now encloses the-tomb, the-very-noble body.
Haec igitur puerum supra paucis memoratum
She therefore the-boy above in-few recalled
acriter orbatum dimittebat Liudulfum
sharply bereaved left Liudolf

feminei dulcem sexus unam quoque prolem,
of-the-female sweet sex one also offspring,
nomine Liudgardam, summa bonitate coruscam,
by-name Liutgard, with-highest goodness glittering,
moribus et facie similem matri venerandae.
in-manners and in-face like to-the-mother venerable.
In quas percerte soboles mox stirpis amandae
Toward which very-surely offspring soon of-stock to-be-loved
affectu cordis populus deducitur omnis
with-affection of-heart the-people is-drawn all
magno, pro meritis summis utriusque parentis.
great, for the-merits highest of-each parent.
Sed magis, ac iuste, dulci fervebat amore
But more, and justly, with-sweet it-burned love
erga regalem puerum domnum Liudulfum,
toward the-royal boy lord Liudolf,
ipsum spe mentis tota complexus amantis.
him with-hope of-mind whole having-embraced loving.
Hicque, sibi naturales imitans bene mores,
And-he, for-himself natural imitating well manners,
extiterat cunctis blandus dulcedine mentis,
had-stood-out to-all gentle in-sweetness of-mind,
mansuetus, clemens, humilis nimiumque fidelis;
gentle, merciful, humble and-very faithful;
hinc quoque gratiolam, Christo praestante benigno,
hence also grace, with-Christ granting kindly,
tantam promeruit, meritam digneque recepit,
so-great he-earned, deserved and-worthily received,
gentibus in cunctis patris imperio religatis,
the-peoples in all of-the-father to-rule bound,

ut, quicumque suae saltim praepaucula famae
that, whoever his at-least very-few of-fame
verbula conciperet latebris propensius auris,
little-words should-conceive in-the-hiding-places more-readily of-the-ear,
ipsius in dulcem totus raperetur amorem,
his into sweet whole he-would-be-snatched love,
absentem venerans animis dominum studiosis.
the-absent revering with-minds lord zealous.
Quem pater egregius, rex et senior venerandus,
Whom the-father outstanding, king and lord venerable,
dilectae matris mortem graviter patientem,
of-the-beloved mother the-death heavily bearing,
affectu patrio necnon pietate benigna
with-affection paternal and-also with-piety kindly
digno percerte iam sublimavit honore,
with-worthy very-surely now raised honor,
subiecti faciens regni digne dominari.
of-the-subject making realm worthily to-rule.
Necnon Liudgardam simili causa venerandam,
And-also Liutgard for-like cause venerable,
unica feminei quae spes sexus fuit illi,
the-only of-the-female who hope sex was to-him,
gratiola parili coluit, provexit, amavit.
with-grace equal he-cultivated, advanced, loved.
Hanc quoque Conrado vinclis sociavit amoris,
Her also to-Conrad by-chains he-joined of-love,
egregio strenuoque duci nimium quoque forti,
to-the-outstanding and-vigorous duke very also brave,
munere qui talis dignus constabat honoris.
of-the-gift who such worthy stood of-honor.

Utque suo subdi nato faceret Liudulfo
And-that to-his to-be-subjected son he-might-make Liudolf
multum devotae perfecto mentis amore
very devoted with-perfect of-mind love
Francorum gentis dominos praenobilis almos
of-the-Franks of-the-people the-lords very-noble kindly
necnon primates Suevorum scilicet omnes,
and-also the-chief-men of-the-Swabians namely all,
ipsi legali praepulchram foedere iungi
to-him by-lawful very-beautiful treaty to-be-joined
Idam iussit, Herimanni natam ducis almi,
Ida he-ordered, of-Hermann the-daughter of-the-duke kindly,
qui fuit illustris princeps in partibus illis.
who was the-illustrious prince in parts those.
Haec quoque regalis fuerat consortia prolis
She also of-the-royal had-been the-partnership offspring
pro meritis propriae probitatis digna subire
for the-merits of-own uprightness worthy to-undergo
ac vice reginae summo veneratur honore,
and in-place of-the-queen with-highest is-venerated honor,
rege iubente quidem per consuetam pietatem;
with-the-king ordering indeed through wonted piety;
illam nec habitare locis voluit segregatis
her nor to-dwell in-places wished separated
rex idem, nati digne succensus amore,
the-king the-same, of-the-son worthily kindled with-love,
sed ceu reginam regnum transire per amplum,
but like a-queen the-realm to-pass through ample,
quo sic dilectus sentiret filius eius
so-that thus beloved might-feel son his

dulcia gratiolae semper munuscula magnae,
sweet of-grace always little-gifts great,
ipsi cum sponsa regi sociatus in aula.
to-him with bride to-the-king joined in the-hall.
Interea rex Italicus gravido Hlotharius
Meanwhile the-king Italian with-heavy Lothar
infectus morbo, mundo discessit ab isto,
infected sickness, from-the-world departed from this,
Italiae regnum linquens merito retinendum
of-Italy the-realm leaving deservedly to-be-retained
summae reginae, sibi quam sociavit amore.
to-the-highest queen, to-himself whom he-joined in-love.
Regis Rothulfi fuerat quae filia magni,
Of-king Rudolf she-had-been who the-daughter great,
edita magnorum longo de stemmate regum;
born of-great long from lineage of-kings;
cui nomen clarum dictavit summa parentum
to-whom a-name famous dictated the-highest of-the-parents
nobilitas, illam digne vocitans Æthelheitham.
nobility, her worthily calling Adelheid.
Haec quoque regalis formae praeclara decore
She also of-royal form brilliant with-beauty
atque suae causis personae sedula dignis
and of-her for-the-causes person zealous worthy
factis regali respondit nobilitati:
with-deeds to-the-royal answered nobility:
scilicet ingenio fuerat praelucida tanto,
namely in-wit she-had-been very-bright so-great,
ut posset regnum digne rexisse relictum,
that she-could the-realm worthily have-ruled left,

si gens ipsa dolum mox non dictaret amarum.
if the-people itself guile soon not dictated bitter.

Denique defuncto, quem praedixi, Hluthario,
Finally with-dead, whom I-mentioned-before, Lothar,

pars quaedam plebis fuerat, quae, retro rebellis
part a-certain of-the-commons there-was, which, before rebellious

menteque perversa propriis dominis inimica,
and-with-mind perverse to-own lords hostile,

restituit Beringarii regnum ditioni,
restored of-Berengar the-realm to-the-dominion,

quod, patre defuncto, raptum violenter ab illo,
which, with-the-father dead, snatched violently by him,

olim per manus regis.... Hugonis.
once through the-hands of-king of-Hugh.

Optato certe qui sublimatus honore
With-wished-for surely who raised with-honor

detegit, invidii quicquid sub pectore tristi
uncovers, of-envy whatever under breast sad

gessit, dum regni deflevit damna paterni;
he-bore, while of-the-realm he-bewailed the-losses paternal;

felleque plus iusto cordis succensus amaro,
and-with-gall more than-just of-heart kindled bitter,

fudit in insontem concretum quippe furorem,
poured upon the-innocent congealed indeed fury,

iniustam vim reginae faciens Æthelheithae,
unjust force on-the-queen making Adelheid,

quae regnans illi damnum non fecerat ullum.
who reigning to-him loss not had-done any.

Nec solum celsae solium sibi proripit aulae,
Nor only of-the-lofty the-throne for-himself he-snatches hall,

sed simul, aerarii claustris eius reseratis,
but together, of-the-treasury with-the-bars her unbarred,
omne, quod invenit, dextra tollebat avara,
all, which he-found, with-right-hand took greedy,
aurum cum gemmis varii generis quoque gazis
gold with gems of-various kind also treasures
necnon regalis sertum praenobile frontis,
and-also of-the-royal the-garland very-noble brow,
ornatus nec particulam dimiserat ullam;
of-adornment nor a-particle had-he-let-go any;
nec timuit propriis illam spoliare ministris
nor feared-he of-own her to-despoil ministers
obsequiis quoque personis regalibus aptis
of-services also of-persons royal fit
regalique potentatu (miserabile dictu);
and-of-royal power (pitiable to-say);
postremo quoque pergendi pariterque manendi,
at-last also of-proceeding and-equally of-remaining,
quo vellet, libertatem male denegat omnem,
where she-wished, liberty badly he-denies all,
solam cum sola committens namque puella
alone with one committing for girl
servandam cuidam comiti sua iussa sequenti.
to-be-kept to-a-certain count his commands following.

Bishop Adalhard urges Adelheid to flee; she, her maid, and a priest dig a tunnel and escape by night, hiding in caves and fields of grain, where Berengar passes over her. Adalhard receives her. Otto hears of her virtues, Liudolf goes ahead into Italy, and Otto crosses the Alps.

Qui, iussis captus regis non iusta iubentis,
Who, by-the-commands taken of-the-king not just-things ordering,
non metuit propriam culpae sine crimine domnam
not feared own of-fault without crime lady
clausam carcerei claustris servare cubilis,
shut-in of-a-prison-like with-the-bars to-keep chamber,
circumdiffusis custodum denique turmis,
with-spread-around of-guards finally squadrons,
ut mos personas est servari scelerosas.
as custom persons is to-be-kept wicked.
Sed, qui de vinclis Petrum tollebat Herodis,
But, he-who from the-chains Peter took of-Herod,
hanc, quando voluit, miti pietate redemit.
her, when he-wished, with-mild piety redeemed.
Certe dum variis animo foret anxia curis
Surely while with-various in-mind she-was anxious cares
nullaque spes sibimet certi solaminis esset,
and-no hope for-herself of-sure solace was,
praesul Adhelhardus, factum deflens miserandum
the-bishop Adalhard, the-deed bewailing pitiable
vixque suae damnum carae patiens grave domnae,
and-scarcely of-his the-loss dear bearing heavy of-lady,
illi transmisit missum mox namque secretum,
to-her sent-across a-messenger soon for secret,

utque fugam caperet, monitis suasit studiosis,
and-that flight she-should-take, with-warnings he-urged zealous,
ac peteret muris urbem structam bene firmis,
and should-seek with-walls the-city built well firm,
quae caput ipsius constabat pontificatus;
which the-head of-his stood bishopric;
hic loca praesidii mandans tutissima certi
here the-places of-defense promising most-safe of-sure
illi, condignum quoque praeberi famulatum.
to-her, fitting also to-be-offered service.
His nam regales monitis pulsantibus aures,
With-these for the-royal warnings striking ears,
inclita de mandatelis regina benignis
the-famous at the-messages queen kindly
laetior exoptat vinclis absolvier artis;
gladder longs from-chains to-be-loosed tight;
quid faceret, tamen ignorat, quia nulla patebat
what she-should-do, nevertheless she-knows-not, because no lay-open
ianua, quae somno pressis custodibus alto
door, which with-sleep pressed the-guards deep
illam nocturnis pateretur abire sub horis.
her nightly would-allow to-go-away under hours.
Sed nec personam causa famulaminis ullam
But nor a-person for-the-sake of-service any
subiectam sibi carcereis possedit in antris,
subject to-herself prison-like she-possessed in caves,
ipsius implendis esset quae sedula iussis,
her to-be-fulfilled might-be who zealous commands,
ni supradictam solummodo namque puellam
except the-aforesaid only for girl

necnon presbiterum vitae laudabilis unum.
and-also a-priest of-life praiseworthy one.
His ubi continuis narraret cuncta lamentis,
To-these when with-continual she-told all-things laments,
quae maerens animo multum volvebat amaro,
which grieving in-mind much she-turned bitter,
voti communis placito visum fuit illis,
of-wish common by-the-pleasure seemed it-has to-them,
res melius verti, studio si forte latenti
the-thing better to-be-turned, with-zeal if perhaps hidden
sub terra foveam facerent fodiendo secretam,
under the-earth a-pit they-should-make by-digging secret,
per quam de vinclis possent evadere duris.
through which from chains they-could escape hard.
Haec ita percerte constat completa fuisse
These-things so very-surely it-is-agreed completed to-have-been
ocius, auxilio Christi praesente benigni.
quite-quickly, with-the-help of-Christ present kindly.
Nam caute fovea iuxta placitum reparata,
For carefully with-the-pit according-to the-plan prepared,
advenit libertati nox apta recenti,
arrived for-liberty night fit fresh,
in qua, dum somnus plebis perserperet artus,
in which, while sleep of-the-commons crept-through the-limbs,
tantum cum sociis regina piissima binis
only with companions the-queen most-pious two
custodum fraudes fugiens evaserat omnes
of-the-guards the-frauds fleeing had-escaped all
atque viae spatium noctis sub tempore tantum
and of-the-way the-space of-the-night under the-time as-much

pertransit, plantis quantum valet ergo tenellis.
passes-through, with-soles as-much-as is-able therefore tender.
Sed, mox ut scissis cessit nox furva tenebris
But, soon as with-torn yielded night dark darkness
atque polus radiis coepit pallescere solis,
and the-sky with-the-rays began to-grow-pale of-the-sun,
abscondens in secretis se cautius antris,
hiding in secret herself more-cautiously caves,
nunc vagat in silvis, latitat nunc denique sulcis
now she-wanders in woods, lies-hidden now finally in-furrows
inter maturas Cereris crescentis aristas;
among ripe of-Ceres growing ears;
donec nox, solitis rediens induta tenebris,
until night, wonted returning clad-in darkness,
obtegit rursum nebulo terram tenebroso:
covers again with-cloud the-earth dark:
tunc iterato viam studuit percurrere coeptam.
then repeated the-way she-strove to-run-through begun.
Denique custodes, illam non invenientes,
Finally the-guards, her not finding,
narrabant factum comiti nimium tremefacti,
told the-deed to-the-count very trembling,
cura cui conservandae fuit indita domnae.
the-care to-whom of-keeping was put-on of-the-lady.
Qui, terrore gravis percussus corde timoris,
Who, by-terror heavy struck in-heart of-fear,
pergit cum sociis illam perquirere multis;
proceeds with companions her to-search-for many;
et cum deficeret nec iam dinoscere posset,
and when he-failed nor now to-discern could,

quo regina suum tulerit clarissima gressum,
where the-queen her had-borne most-famous step,
detulit ad regem Beringarium timidus rem.
he-carried to the-king Berengar fearful the-thing.
Hic quoque, continuo nimiam conversus in iram,
He also, at-once excessive turned into anger,
circumquaque suos subito mittebat alumnos,
round-about his suddenly sent followers,
praecipiens illos nullum transire locellum,
ordering them no to-pass-by little-place,
sed caute cunctas iam perlustrare latebras,
but carefully all now to-search hiding-places,
si forsan latebris regina lateret in ullis.
if perhaps hiding-places the-queen should-lie-hidden in any.
Ipseque cum fortis sequitur turba legionis,
And-he with brave follows the-crowd of-the-legion,
ceu qui vult hostes bello superare feroces,
like one-who wishes the-enemies in-war to-overcome fierce,
et rapido segetem cursu peragravit eandem,
and with-swift the-crop course traversed the-same,
in cuius sulcis latuit tunc domna recurvis
in whose furrows lay-hidden then the-lady curved
haec, quam quaerebat, Cereris contecta sub alis;
this-one, whom he-sought, of-Ceres covered under the-wings;
sed, licet huc illucque locum percurreret ipsum,
but, though hither and-thither the-place he-ran-through itself,
in quo non parvo iacuit terrore gravata,
in which with-not small she-lay terror weighed-down,
et quamvis circumpositos disiungere culmos
and although the-placed-around to-part stalks

nisibus extenta cunctis temptaverit hasta,
with-efforts stretched with-all he-tried with-the-spear,
non tamen invenit, Christi quam gratia texit.
not nevertheless he-found, of-Christ whom the-grace covered.
Ast ubi confusus rediit nimium quoque lassus,
But when confounded he-returned very also weary,
praesul Adelhardus mox advenit venerandus
the-bishop Adalhard soon arrived venerable
induxitque suam gaudenti pectore domnam
and-led his with-rejoicing breast lady
intra namque suae muros urbis bene firmos;
within for of-his the-walls city well firm;
hicque sibi digne toto servivit honore,
and-here to-her worthily with-whole he-served honor,
donec maiorem Christo miserante decorem
until greater with-Christ pitying glory
regni suscepit, pridem quam maesta reliquit.
of-the-realm she-received, long-ago which sad she-left.
Denique nostrates quidam, tunc experientes
Finally our-countrymen some, then experiencing
reginam domino desolatam fore caro,
the-queen of-lord desolate to-be dear,
cuius praedulcem gustaverunt pietatem,
whose very-sweet they-tasted piety,
quando per Italiam coeperunt pergere Romam,
when through Italy they-began to-proceed to-Rome,
eius multiplicem recitati sunt pietatem
her manifold recounted have piety
crebrius Ottoni, magno tunc denique regi,
more-often to-Otto, to-the-great then finally king,

augusto sed Romani nunc denique regni,
to-the-august but of-the-Roman now finally realm,
nullam dicentes aliam consistere dignam
no saying other to-stand worthy
tecta sub ipsius thalami regalia duci
roofs under of-his chamber royal to-be-led
post obitum domnae flendum cunctis Eadithae.
after the-death of-the-lady to-be-wept to-all Edith.
Et rex laetatus tantae dulcedine famae,
And the-king gladdened of-so-great by-the-sweetness of-report,
pectore volvebat tacito per tempora longa,
in-breast turned silent through times long,
quo pacto sibi reginam coniungeret istam,
on-what terms to-himself the-queen he-might-join this,
quae fuit insidiis regis circumdata tantis;
who had-been by-the-ambushes of-the-king surrounded so-great;
venit et in mentem praedictum denique regem,
came also into mind the-aforesaid finally king,
qui quondam patriis fuerat depulsus ab arvis
who once from-the-paternal had-been driven from fields
eius et auxilio citius miserante reductus,
his and by-help more-quickly pitying brought-back,
ingratum fore nunc donis tantae pietatis.
ungrateful to-be-about-to-be now to-the-gifts of-so-great piety.
Hinc quoque mox aditum sibimet providerat aptum
Hence also soon an-approach for-himself he-had-foreseen fit
ipsius Italicum iuri subiungere regnum.
to-his the-Italian right to-subject realm.
Hoc ubi colloquio sensit narrante paterno,
This when by-colloquy he-perceived recounting paternal,

patris amor verus, spes et gentis, Liudulfus,
of-the-father the-love true, the-hope also of-the-people, Liudolf,
non sua sollicitans, patris sed commoda tractans,
not his-own soliciting, of-the-father but the-advantages handling,
praepaucis secum sociis secreto resumptis,
with-very-few with-himself companions secretly taken-again,
Italiam petiit fortique manu penetravit,
Italy sought and-with-brave hand penetrated,
exortans patris imperio populum dare colla;
exhorting of-the-father rule the-people to-give necks;
moxque redit, clarum referens sine marte triumphum.
and-soon returns, a-famous bringing-back without war triumph.
Quo rex comperto populis narrantibus Otto
With-which the-king learned with-the-peoples recounting Otto
corde super natum laeto plaudebat amandum,
in-heart over the-son glad applauded to-be-loved,
ipsius causa qui nam discrimina tanta
of-him for-the-sake who for dangers so-great
audacter subiit, gentem turbando ferocem.
boldly underwent, the-people by-disturbing fierce.
Utque labor talis non frustraretur amoris,
And-that labor such not should-be-frustrated of-love,
ipse quidem gentem festinus adivit eandem,
he indeed the-people hastening approached the-same,
plebis non parva propriae comitante caterva;
of-the-commons with-not small own accompanying throng;
regalis pompae vario comptusque decore
of-royal pomp with-various and-adorned glory
Alpibus accinctas altis intraverat horas.
by-the-Alps girded high he-had-entered shores.

His Beringarius compertis obstupefactus,
With-these Berengar learned astounded,
non bellum movit, regi non obvius exit,
not war moved, to-the-king not meeting goes-out,
sed se salvandum castello protinus apto
but himself to-be-saved into-a-castle straightway fit
intulit, in tutis posito firmisque locellis.
carried, in safe placed and-firm little-places.

628–747 · THE MARRIAGE AND LIUDOLF'S GRIEF

Otto takes Pavia and sends for Adelheid, whom Henry escorts; she becomes his queen. Liudolf goes home to govern. Berengar submits and is restored, then oppresses his people again. Liudolf, seeing the queen's love for Henry, grieves for his dead mother and fears to lose his place.

At rex famosus noster, virtute superbus,
But the-king famous our, in-valor proud,
audacter satis ignotas pertransiit horas
boldly enough unknown passed-through shores
Italici Papiam regni cepit quoque domnam.
of-the-Italian Pavia realm took also the-lady.
Qua certe capta, cuncti velut agmine facto
With-which surely taken, all as-if with-column made
quaerentes regem proceres venere recentem
seeking the-king the-nobles came fresh
certabantque suo iuri se subdere magno.
and-vied to-his right themselves to-subject great.
Quos nam more suo suscepit mente benigna,
Whom for in-manner his he-received with-mind kindly,

promittens ipsis eius munus pietatis,
promising to-them his the-gift of-piety,
si post haec illi servirent mente fideli.
if after these-things him they-served with-mind faithful.
Istis sic habitis, crebro tractamine cordis
With-these thus held, with-frequent handling of-heart
reginae satis egregiae memor est Ædelheithae,
of-the-queen very outstanding mindful is-he of-Adelheid,
regalem certe cupiens quandoque videre
royal surely desiring sometime to-see
ipsius faciem, cuius didicit bonitatem.
her face, whose he-had-learned goodness.
Unde quidem, mandatelis secretius actis,
Whence indeed, with-messages more-secretly done,
quae fuerant pacis necnon praedulcis amoris,
which had-been of-peace and-also of-very-sweet love,
sub signo fidei firmae mandaverat illi,
under the-sign of-faith firm he-had-sent-word to-her,
hoc quoque suadelis exhortabatur amicis,
this also with-persuasions he-exhorted friendly,
ut celeri Papiam cursu peteret, populosam
that by-swift Pavia course she-should-seek, the-populous
urbem, quam cum tristitia dimisit amara,
city, which with sadness she-left bitter,
quo, praestante sacra regis pietate perennis,
so-that, with-granting holy of-the-king piety everlasting,
hic modo sublimem gaudens captaret honorem,
here now lofty rejoicing she-might-catch honor,
quo prius ingentem fuerat perpessa dolorem.
where before huge had endured grief.

His mandatelis cessit regina benignis
To-these messages yielded the-queen kindly
et, quo iussa fuit, pariter comitantibus ivit
and, where ordered she-was, equally accompanying she-went
permultis subiectorum cuneis populorum.
very-many of-subject troops peoples.
Ut rex hoc sensit, cuius mandamine venit,
When the-king this perceived, whose by-command she-came,
ipsius Henricum fratrem praecepit amandum
his Henry brother he-ordered to-be-loved
huius in occursum regredi trans litora Padi,
to-her to the-meeting to-go-back across the-shores of-the-Po,
ut sublimandam regni splendoribus heram
that the-to-be-exalted of-the-realm with-the-splendors mistress
tanti compositus ducis ornaret famulatus.
of-so-great composed of-the-duke might-adorn the-service.
Qui, studio mentis praecepta sequens senioris,
Who, with-zeal of-mind the-precepts following of-the-lord,
egreditur certe cum regali legione
goes-out surely with royal legion
castraque reginae gaudens petiit venerandae,
and-the-camp of-the-queen rejoicing sought venerable,
in quis cum sociis residebat denique multis,
in which with companions she-resided finally many,
illam condigne summo comitatus honore,
her fittingly with-highest having-accompanied honor,
donec regali praesentaret faciei.
until to-the-royal he-presented face.
Quae merito regi statim placuit satis ipsi
Who deservedly to-the-king at-once pleased much to-him

eligiturque sui consors dignissima regni.
and-is-chosen of-his the-consort most-worthy realm.
Tunc rex se novitate rei cernens retineri,
Then the-king himself by-the-newness of-the-thing seeing to-be-held,
tempore ne patrias instante rediret ad oras,
with-time lest paternal pressing he-should-return to shores,
Liudulfum placuit carum praemittere natum,
Liudolf it-pleased dear to-send-ahead son,
ut gens Saxonum fortis volitaret ad illum
that the-people of-the-Saxons brave might-fly to him
et regnum sub patrono staret bene tanto.
and the-realm under patron should-stand well so-great.
Qui, parens iussis devota mente parentis,
Who, obeying the-commands with-devoted mind of-the-parent,
ad patriam rediit curam regnique recepit,
to the-homeland returned the-care and-of-the-realm received,
omnia prudenter necnon nimium sapienter
all-things prudently and-also very wisely
complens, in patria quae tunc fuerant facienda.
completing, in the-homeland which then had-been to-be-done.
Interea dux Henricus, regis venerandus
Meanwhile duke Henry, of-the-king the-venerable
frater, in Italia cordis conamine summo
brother, in Italy of-heart with-effort highest
obsequiis operam gessit regalibus aptam,
in-services effort bore royal fit,
officium non germani solummodo cari,
the-office not of-brother only dear,
sed mage ius servi studio complendo benigno.
but more the-right of-a-servant by-zeal fulfilling kindly.

Hinc non inmerito regi placuit satis ipsi,
Hence not undeservedly to-the-king he-pleased much to-him,
est quoque reginae fraterno iunctus amore
is also to-the-queen by-brotherly joined love
affectuque pio fuerat dilectus ab illa.
and-by-affection pious had-been beloved by her.
Tunc rex Italicum peragraverat undique regnum,
Then the-king the-Italian had-traversed on-all-sides realm,
primates regni propriae subdens ditioni.
the-chief-men of-the-realm to-own subjecting dominion.
His quoque completis iuxta votumque locatis,
With-these also completed according-to and-the-wish placed,
ne Beringarius regnum raperet sibi rursum,
lest Berengar the-realm should-seize for-himself again,
Conradum cum non paucis ex agmine lectis
Conrad with not few from the-column chosen
in Papia residere ducem iussit sapientem,
in Pavia to-reside the-duke he-ordered wise,
cui veneranda suae dederat consortia natae;
to-whom the-venerable of-his had-given partnership daughter;
ipseque continuo rediit cum coniuge clara,
and-he at-once returned with wife famous,
intendens patriae sedem festinus adire.
intending of-the-homeland the-seat hastening to-approach.
Quem gavisa quidem plebs suscepit venientem,
Whom glad indeed the-commons received coming,
altithrono grates spargens super aethera dulces,
to-the-high-throned thanks scattering above the-ether sweet,
qui, miserando suae plebis solita pietate,
who, by-pitying of-his commons with-wonted piety,

quem pius elegit, regem cum pace reduxit.
whom piously he-chose, the-king with peace led-back.
Hac ita laetitia dignis rebus celebrata,
With-this thus gladness by-worthy things celebrated,
advenit dux Conradus cum pace reversus,
arrives duke Conrad with peace returned,
adducens Beringarium supra memoratum
bringing Berengar above recalled
ipsius ingenii captum sic arte profundi,
of-his wit taken thus by-the-art deep,
gratis ut Ottoni venit se subdere regi.
freely that to-Otto he-came himself to-subject the-king.
Tunc idem rex, qui semper fecit sapienter,
Then the-same king, who always acted wisely,
hunc regem certe digno suscepit honore,
this king surely with-worthy received honor,
restituens illi sublati culmina regni —
restoring to-him of-the-taken-away the-heights realm,—
ista percerte tantum sub conditione,
this very-surely only under condition,
ut post haec causis non contradiceret ullis
that after these-things in-causes not he-should-contradict any
ipsius imperio multis longe metuendo,
his to-rule to-many far to-be-feared,
sed ceu subiectus iussis esset studiosus;
but like a-subject to-the-commands he-should-be zealous;
hoc quoque sollicitis decrevit maxime dictis,
this also with-anxious he-decreed most words,
ut post haec populum regeret clementius ipsum,
that after these-things the-people he-should-rule more-mercifully itself,

quem prius imperio nimium †corripuit amaro.
which before by-rule very rebuked bitter.
Qui, se complendis simulans promptum fore iussis,
Who, himself for-fulfilling feigning ready to-be the-commands,
ocius abscessit patriam laetusque petivit.
more-quickly withdrew the-homeland and-glad sought.
Ast ubi sublimem regni possederat arcem,
But when the-lofty of-the-realm he-had-possessed citadel,
laesus suadelis quorundam namque sinistris,
harmed by-the-persuasions of-some for sinister,
mox infelici graviora quidem iuga genti
soon on-the-unhappy heavier indeed yokes people
infert vi magna pro despectu sibi facto,
he-brings with-force great for the-contempt to-himself done,
se regnum pretio contestans emere magno
himself the-realm for-a-price attesting to-buy great
nec fore culpandum, si ius fregisset avorum,
nor to-be to-be-blamed, if the-right he-had-broken of-ancestors,
sed magis Ottoni culpae meritum reputari,
but more to-Otto of-the-fault the-merit to-be-reckoned,
ipsi primates plebis qui venderet omnes.
to-him the-chief-men of-the-commons who should-sell all.
Haec res ad regem mox ut pervenit eundem,
This thing to the-king soon as reached the-same,
in Beringarium iusta succenditur ira,
against Berengar with-just is-kindled anger,
corde super populi damnis maerens miserandi,
in-heart over of-the-people the-losses grieving pitiable,
in meliusque statum studuit convertere rerum.
into and-better the-state he-strove to-turn of-things.

Et faceret citius, Christi munimine fultus,
And he-would-have-done more-quickly, of-Christ by-the-defense propped,
si non fortunae restaret causa sinistrae.
if not of-fortune remained a-cause sinister.
Namque decore sui florente per omnia regni,
For with-the-glory of-his flourishing through all-things realm,
cum se gauderet cunctis fulgere secundis,
when himself he-rejoiced in-all to-shine prosperous-things,
protulit antiqui renovata lues inimici
brought-forth of-the-ancient the-renewed plague enemy
fraudis commentum cunctis per saecla dolendum,
of-fraud a-contrivance for-all through the-ages to-be-grieved,
iam tunc pacificum temptans confundere regnum;
already then the-peaceful trying to-confound realm;
hoc ut quantocius posset patrare malignus,
this that as-quickly-as-possible he-could accomplish the-malicious-one,
regni rectores primum turbaverat omnes,
of-the-realm the-rulers first he-had-disturbed all,
sperans interitum plebis mox esse futurum.
hoping the-destruction of-the-commons soon to-be about-to-be.
Denique famosi natus regis Liudulfus,
Finally of-the-famous the-son king Liudolf,
ut cognovit amicitiae signis satis aptis,
when he-learned of-friendship by-signs very fit,
quanto perfectae fidei dilexit amore
with-how-great of-perfect faith loved love
Henricum regis fratrem regina fidelis,
Henry of-the-king the-brother the-queen faithful,
quodque suae fidei studio se subdidit omni,
and-that to-his faith with-zeal herself she-subjected all,

tangitur interni iaculis secreto doloris,
is-touched of-inner by-the-darts secretly grief,
haut ira fervens, odii nec felle tabescens,
not with-anger boiling, of-hatred nor with-gall wasting,
sed super amisso (carae genitricis) amore
but over lost (of-dear mother) love
ex aegri latebris ducens suspiria cordis;
from of-sick the-hiding-places drawing sighs heart;
deceptusque malis permultorum suadelis,
and-deceived by-evil of-very-many persuasions,
pertimuit fragilis pro consuetudine mentis,
he-feared of-frail according-to the-custom mind,
quod post non uti donis deberet honoris
that afterward not to-use the-gifts he-ought of-honor
condigni, sed forte locum subire secundum.
fitting, but perhaps the-place to-undergo second.

748–1517 · THE FRAGMENTS AND THE CLOSE

The text breaks off as men deceived by the serpent's fraud work on the saddened Liudolf. After the lost leaves Otto praises his son's loyalty, and after a second gap Adelheid is crowned with Otto. Hrotsvitha ends: his later deeds, Berengar's fall, a pope deposed, and the coronation of Otto II, need a nobler pen.

(Quod fieri Christus numquam permitteret aequus,
(Which to-happen Christ never would-allow fair,
si staret regnum iusta sub pace quietum.)
if should-stand the-realm just under peace quiet.)
ast ubi subtristi vultu saepissime patri
but when with-somewhat-sad face very-often to-the-father

monstratur maestus, solito nec more serenus,
he-is-shown sorrowful, in-wonted nor manner serene,
sunt qui decepti serpentis fraude dolosi
there-are who deceived of-the-serpent by-the-fraud guileful
* * *
(lacuna)
* * *
(lacuna)
Sed quo regalem patris hinc augeret honorem.
But so-that the-royal of-the-father hence he-might-increase honor.
His rex compertis, ex prosperitate fidelis
With-these the-king learned, from the-prosperity of-faithful
laetatus prolis, tota dulcedine mentis
gladdened offspring, with-whole sweetness of-mind
haec illi mandat scriptis extimplo remissis:
these-things to-him sends-word in-writings at-once sent-back:
'In saeclum saecli maneat laus omnipotenti,
'Into the-age of-the-age may-remain praise to-the-almighty,
qui dedit in tantis temet gaudere secundis,
who gave in so-great you to-rejoice prosperous-things,
grates atque tibi dentur, karissime fili,
thanks and to-you be-given, dearest son,
quem constare quidem penitus cognosco fidelem,
whom to-stand indeed wholly I-know faithful,
haut obscura tuae fidei quia signa dedisti,
not obscure of-your faith because signs you-have-given,
cum per te regnum cupiens augescere nostrum
when through you the-realm desiring to-grow our
signasti nobis proprii decus omne laboris.
you-have-marked for-us of-own the-glory all labor.

Hinc ego gratanter, quae fecisti sapienter,
Hence I thankfully, what you-have-done wisely,
accipiens, vice conversa condigna rependo
receiving, in-turn reversed worthy-things I-repay
hoc ipsumque tibi regnum committo regendum,
this and-very to-you realm I-commit to-be-ruled,
imperio subdi nostro quod constituisti;
to-the-rule to-be-subjected our which you-have-established;
praecipioque tibi iussis, dilecte, paternis,
and-I-order you by-the-commands, beloved, paternal,
ut, quem victrici populum dextra superasti,
that, whom with-victorious the-people right-hand you-have-overcome,
absque mora tecum facias firmare tenendum
without delay with-you you-make to-confirm to-be-held
foedus, cum iuramento structum metuendo.'
a-treaty, with oath built to-be-feared.'
Haec dux Liudulfus decreta legens venerandus,
These duke Liudolf decrees reading venerable,
laetior ex mandatelis tantae pietatis,
gladder from the-messages of-so-great piety,
iussus cum iuramento religat sibi firmo
as-ordered with oath binds to-himself firm
ad patris obsequium populum digne moderandum.
to of-the-father the-service the-people worthily to-be-governed.
His bene dispositis, summo cum foedere pacis
With-these well arranged, with-highest with treaty of-peace
ardens absentis faciem meruisse parentis,
burning of-the-absent the-face to-have-earned parent,
coniugis et karae dulci devictus amore
of-wife and dear by-sweet conquered love

ac prolis geminae longe pos terga relictae,
and of-offspring twin far behind backs left,
posthabitae fines patriae placuit repedare,
of-the-set-aside the-borders of-homeland it-pleased to-return,
quo post exilii pondus nimium grave duri
so-that after of-exile the-weight very heavy hard
posset quandoquidem patriae captare quietem.
he-could since of-the-homeland to-catch the-quiet.
Utque celer morulis haec impleret sine cunctis,
And-that swift delays these-things he-might-fulfill without all,
non iter optatum pondus tardaverit ullum,
not the-journey wished-for weight should-delay any,
collectim proprias iussit praemittere gazas,
gathered-together own he-ordered to-send-ahead treasures,
ipsius et faciem turbam praecedere totam,
his and the-face the-crowd to-go-before whole,
quam belli causa secum deduxerat illo,
which of-war for-the-sake with-himself he-had-led thither,
promittens ipsum, vita comitante, futurum
promising himself, with-life accompanying, to-be-about-to-be
ad fines patriae spatii post tempora parvi.
at the-borders of-the-homeland of-space after times short.
Hoc quoque melliflui verbis signaverat oris,
This also of-honey-flowing with-the-words he-had-marked of-mouth,
in quis castellis, in quis voluitque locellis
in which castles, in which and-he-wished little-places
sumptus hospitii dignos sibimet reparari.
expenses of-hospitality worthy for-himself to-be-prepared.
Hac moti fama nostrates desiderata,
By-this moved report ours longed-for,

affectu cordis gaudebant interioris;
with-the-affection of-heart rejoiced inner;
omneque maeroris pondus cunctique doloris,
and-all of-grief the-weight and-of-all grief,
quod prius absentis causa tulerant senioris,
which before of-the-absent for-the-sake they-had-borne of-the-lord,
ex animo deponentes, communiter omnes
from mind laying-down, in-common all
causam laetitiae duxerunt esse supremae,
the-cause of-gladness reckoned to-be highest,
si post paucorum meruissent ergo dierum
if after of-few they-had-earned therefore days
cursus, promissi iuxta praeconia laeti
the-course, of-the-promised according-to the-proclamations glad
* * *
(lacuna)
* * *
(lacuna)
Aeque ferens sceptrum, capitis diademaque pulchrum
Equally bearing the-scepter, of-the-head and-the-diadem beautiful
atque sui cultus omnes regalis amictus.
and of-his attire all royal of-garment.
Ornatus sed maioris suscepit honoris
The-adornment but of-greater received honor
augusto summo pariter mox conbenedicta.
with-the-august highest equally soon co-blessed.
Actenus Oddonis famosi denique regis
Thus-far of-Otto famous finally king
gesta, licet tenui Musa, cecini modulando.
the-deeds, though with-thin Muse, I-have-sung by-setting-to-measure.

Nunc scribenda quidem constant, quae fecerat idem
Now to-be-written indeed stand, what had-done the-same
augustus solium retinens in vertice rerum. —
august the-throne holding at the-peak of-things.—
Tangere quae vereor, quia femineo prohibebor
To-touch which I-fear, because by-the-female I-shall-be-forbidden
sexu, nec vili debent sermone revolvi:
sex, nor with-cheap ought speech to-be-turned-over:
qualiter invicti duro luctamine belli
how of-unconquered by-hard struggle war
obtinuit constructa locis castella marinis,
he-obtained built in-places castles sea,
quae Beringarius coniunx possedit et eius,
which Berengar the-wife possessed and his,
ac illum, iuramento cogente peracto,
and him, with-oath compelling completed,
misit in exilium misera cum coniuge Willa;
sent into exile with-wretched with wife Willa;
qualiter et recti conpunctus acumine zeli
how also of-right pricked by-the-sharpness of-zeal
summum pontificem, quaedam perversa patrantem
the-highest pontiff, certain perverse-things perpetrating
eius nec monitis dignantem cedere crebris,
his nor to-warnings deigning to-yield frequent,
sedis apostolicae fraudari fecit honore,
of-the-see apostolic to-be-cheated made of-the-honor,
constituens alium rectoris nomine dignum;
setting-up another of-ruler in-name worthy;
qualiter et regno tranquilla pace quieto
how also with-the-realm with-tranquil peace quiet

nostrates adiens, illic iterumque revertens,
ours approaching, there and-again returning,
necnon amborum retinens decus imperiorum,
and-also of-both holding the-glory empires,
ipsius prolem post illum iam venientem,
his offspring after him now coming,
scilicet Oddonem, nutricis ab ubere regem,
namely Otto, of-the-nurse from the-breast king,
ad fasces augustalis provexit honoris
to the-fasces of-august he-advanced honor
exemploque sui digne fecit benedici;
and-by-the-example of-himself worthily made to-be-blessed;
haec igitur nostris nequeunt exponier orsis,
these-things therefore by-our cannot be-set-out words,
sed quaerunt seriem longe sibi nobiliorem.
but seek a-series far for-themselves nobler.
Hinc ego, tantarum prohibente gravedine rerum,
Hence I, of-so-great forbidding with-the-weight things,
ultra non tendo, finem sed provide pono,
further not I-stretch, an-end but providently I-set,
post haec in coepto ne succumbam male victa.
after these-things in the-begun lest I-succumb badly conquered.
His ita finitis et summatim replicatis,
With-these thus ended and summarily unfolded,
est ingens regis pietas oranda perennis,
is the-huge of-the-king piety to-be-prayed everlasting,
quo pius augustos praestet deducere nostros
that pious the-augusts he-may-grant to-lead-on our
instantis vitae tempus feliciter omne,
of-the-pressing life the-time happily all,

et, fultos semper cunctis ad vota secundis,
and, propped always by-all to wishes prosperous-things,
ecclesiae multos custodes servet in annos,
of-the-church many as-guardians may-he-keep for years,
nobis solamen dantes clementius. Amen.
to-us solace giving more-mercifully. Amen.

HROTSVITHA OF GANDERSHEIM

Primordia Coenobii Gandeshemensis

The Founding of Gandersheim

PROLOGUE

Hrotsvitha offers to tell the beginnings of Gandersheim, founded by the Saxon dukes Liudolf and his son Otto.

Ecce meae supplex humilis devotio mentis
Behold of-my suppliant humble the-devotion of-mind
gliscit, felicis primordia Gandeshemensis
swells, of-happy the-beginnings of-Gandersheim
pandere coenobii, quod cura non pigritanti
to-lay-open of-the-monastery, which with-care not slothful
construxere duces Saxonum iure potentes,
built the-dukes of-the-Saxons by-right mighty,
Liudulfus magnus clarus quoque filius eius
Liudolf great famous also the-son his
Oddo, qui coeptum perfecit opus memoratum.
Otto, who the-begun completed work recalled.

Liudolf marries Oda, daughter of Billung and Aeda. John the Baptist appears to Aeda and promises that her descendants will found a convent and hold the empire. Liudolf and Oda gather nuns by the Gande, send their daughter Hathumoda to Herford to be trained, and travel to Rome.

Ordo nunc rerum deposcit debitus harum,
The-order now of-things demands due of-these,
ut prius illustris constructio Gandeshemensis
that first of-illustrious the-building of-Gandersheim
apto coenobii recinatur carmine nostri.
in-fit of-the-monastery be-resung song our.
Quod nam construxisse ducem reverenter eundem
Which for to-have-built the-duke reverently the-same
constat Saxonum, quem praedixi, Liudulfum.
it-is-agreed of-the-Saxons, whom I-foretold, Liudolf.
Hic, praenobilium natus de stirpe parentum,
He, of-very-noble born from the-stock parents,
ortus atque sui respondens nobilitati
risen and to-his answering nobility
moribus egregiis usuque suae probitatis,
by-manners outstanding and-by-the-practice of-his uprightness,
inter Saxones crevit laudabilis omnes;
among the-Saxons grew praiseworthy all;
namque fuit strenuus, forma nimiumque decorus,
for he-was vigorous, in-form and-very comely,
prudens in verbis, in cunctis cautus agendis,
prudent in words, in all cautious things-to-be-done,
atque sui generis solus spes et decus omnis.
and of-his race alone the-hope and glory all.

Hinc nam Francorum magni regis Hludowici
Hence for of-the-Franks of-the-great king Louis
militiae primis adscriptus paene sub annis,
to-the-soldiery in-first enrolled almost under years,
ex ipso digne summo sublatus honore,
by him worthily with-highest raised honor,
gentis Saxonum mox suscepit comitatum;
of-the-people of-the-Saxons soon received the-county;
ac cito maioris donatus munere iuris,
and quickly of-greater presented gift of-right,
principibus fit par, ducibus sed nec fuit impar,
to-the-princes becomes equal, to-the-dukes but nor was-he unequal,
quique suos omnes vicit pietate parentes,
and-who his all surpassed in-piety parents,
non minus insignis pompa vincebat honoris.
no less notable in-pomp surpassed of-honor.
Cui coniunx ergo fuerat praenobilis Oda,
To-whom as-wife therefore had-been very-noble Oda,
edita Francorum clara de stirpe potentum,
born of-the-Franks famous from stock mighty,
filia Billungi, cuiusdam principis almi,
the-daughter of-Billung, a-certain prince kindly,
atque bonae famae generosae scilicet Aedae.
and of-good fame noble namely Aeda.
Haec igitur crebro precibus consueverat Aeda
She therefore frequently in-prayers had-been-wont Aeda
se totamque suam domino committere vitam,
herself and-whole her to-the-Lord to-commit life,
saepius atque piis insistens sedula factis
quite-often and in-pious pressing zealous deeds

promeruit, bene promissis edocta supernis,
earned, well by-promises taught heavenly,
discere, baptista Christi referente beato,
to-learn, with-the-baptist of-Christ relating blessed,
quod sua progenies saeclis quandoque futuris
that her progeny in-ages sometime future
possessura foret iuris decus imperialis.
about-to-possess would-be of-right the-glory imperial.
Ergo nocturnas quondam scindente tenebras
Therefore the-nightly once cleaving darkness
aurora lucis splendore suae rutilantis,
the-dawn of-light with-the-splendor of-its glowing,
haec prostrata sacram solito iacuit secus aram
she prostrate the-holy as-wont lay beside altar
sacratam sub baptistae Iohannis honore,
consecrated under of-the-baptist John the-honor,
oratu pulsando iugi penetralia caeli.
by-prayer striking continual the-inner-parts of-heaven.
Cumque piam studiis mentem laxavit in illis,
And-when the-pious with-zeal mind she-relaxed in those,
vidit prona pedes hominis propius sibi stantis;
she-saw prone the-feet of-a-man nearer to-herself standing;
ac, commota parum, volvebat pectore multum,
and, moved a-little, she-turned in-breast much,
quis foret ille, suum qui conturbare secretum
who might-be he, her who to-disturb secret
praesumpsisset in hac hora precibus satis apta.
had-presumed in this hour for-prayers very fit.
Fronteque de terra, modicum conversa, levato
And-with-brow from the-earth, a-little turned, raised

aspexit iuvenem miro splendore micantem,
she-beheld a-youth with-wondrous splendor glittering,
indutum vestis velamine flavicomantis,
clothed of-a-garment with-the-covering yellow-haired,
ceu foret e pilis curvi contexta cameli;
as-if it-were from the-hairs of-the-curved woven camel;
cuius candori nimio pulchrae faciei
whose to-whiteness excessive of-beautiful face
barbula parva, nigris sociata colore capillis,
the-little-beard small, to-black joined in-color hairs,
quoddam splendentis praestabat stemma nitoris.
a-certain of-shining offered garland brightness.
Quem matrona videns nec mortalem fore credens,
Whom the-matron seeing nor mortal to-be believing,
obstupuit mentis iuxta morem muliebris,
was-astounded of-mind according-to the-manner womanly,
procumbens subito magno terrore coacta.
falling-down suddenly by-great terror compelled.
Ille sed affatu blando trepidam refovendo
He but with-address gentle the-trembling-one by-cherishing
inquit: ‘Ne trepides nec perturbata pavescas;
says: ‘Do-not tremble nor disturbed be-afraid;
sed cognosce, gravis pulso terrore timoris,
but recognize, heavy with-driven-off terror of-fear,
quis sim: magna tibi portans solamina veni.
who I-am: great to-you bringing solaces I-have-come.
Nam sum Iohannes, liquidis qui tinguere lymphis
For I-am John, with-clear who to-dip waters
Christum promerui. Quia nos crebro coluisti,
Christ earned. Because us often you-have-worshiped,

nuntio, virginibus sacris tua clara propago
I-announce, for-virgins holy your famous offspring
instituet claustrum, pacem regnique triumphum,
will-establish a-cloister, peace and-of-the-realm triumph,
dum sua religio studio steterit bene firmo.
while its religion with-zeal shall-have-stood well firm.
Hinc tua progenies saeclis quandoque futuris
Hence your progeny in-ages sometime future
culmine pollentis tanto clarescet honoris,
with-the-height of-mighty so-great will-shine-forth honor,
ut terrenorum nullus tunc tempore regum
that of-earthly-ones none then in-time of-kings
iure potentatus illi valeat similari.'
by-right of-power to-him may-be-able to-be-likened.'
Dixerat, et subito rediens penetraverat aethra,
He-had-said, and suddenly returning had-penetrated the-ether,
linquens matronae solamen dulce benignae.
leaving to-the-matron a-solace sweet kindly.
Huius magnifici decoris promissio grandis
Of-this magnificent glory the-promise great
progeniem domnae claram specialiter Odae
the-progeny of-the-lady famous specially of-Oda
signavit: de qua natus dux inclitus Oddo
marked: from whom born the-duke famous Otto
sceptris Henricum regem genuit satis aptum;
for-the-scepters Henry the-king begot very fit;
qui pater augusti fuit Oddonis venerandi,
who the-father of-the-august was of-Otto venerable,
eius, qui, regis fultus virtute perennis,
of-him, who, of-the-king propped by-the-power everlasting,

postquam Saxonum rexit patris vice regnum,
after of-the-Saxons he-ruled of-the-father in-place the-realm,
nutu divino benedictus namque secundo,
by-nod divine blessed for second,
imperii sedem Romani dignus eandem
of-the-empire the-seat Roman worthy the-same
ac sceptrum iuris susceperat imperialis,
and the-scepter of-right had-received imperial,
aequivocumque sui natum pariter benedictum,
and-namesake his the-son equally blessed,
disponente pia regis bonitate perennis,
with-arranging pious of-the-king the-goodness everlasting,
imperii sedem conscendere fecit eandem
of-the-empire the-seat to-mount made the-same
atque pari similis splendore frui ditionis.
and with-equal like splendor to-enjoy dominion.
Haec igitur modici demonstrat pagina libri
These-things therefore of-modest shows the-page of-a-book
plenius, e causis rerum quem scripsimus harum.
more-fully, from the-causes of-things which we-have-written of-these.
Nunc ad opus coeptum devote perficiendum
Now to the-work begun devoutly to-be-completed
est convertendus stilus noster studiosus. —
is to-be-turned pen our zealous.—
Ast ubi Liudulfo fuerat venerabilis Oda
But when to-Liudolf had-been the-venerable Oda
foedere legali coniuncta, suo seniori,
by-treaty lawful joined, to-her lord,
inter nostrates celebris profecerat omnes
among ours famous she-had-advanced all

moribus et factis, callem gradiens pietatis;
in-manners and deeds, the-path walking of-piety;
exemploque suae vivens matris venerandae,
and-by-the-example of-her living mother venerable,
se totam domino commendabat prece sacra,
herself whole to-the-Lord she-commended by-prayer holy,
corde tenens matris monitum claustri faciendi.
in-heart holding of-the-mother the-warning of-a-cloister to-be-made.
Hinc nam legalem non raro sui seniorem
Hence for lawful not rarely her lord
exhortabatur blandis nimium suadelis,
she-exhorted with-gentle very persuasions,
ut de gazarum construxisset propriarum
that from of-treasures he-should-have-built own
sumptu coenobium divinis laudibus aptum,
at-the-expense a-monastery for-divine praises fit,
in quo sacrandae domino velamine sacro
in which to-be-consecrated to-the-Lord with-the-veil holy
finetenus castae possent habitare puellae
to-the-end chaste could dwell girls
atque vacare sui sancti famulamine sponsi.
and be-free of-their holy for-the-service bridegroom.
His ergo monitis vir concedendo fidelis
To-these therefore warnings the-man by-yielding faithful
coniugis electae precibus consenserat apte;
of-the-wife chosen to-the-prayers had-consented fitly;
ac sic communi similis conamine voti
and thus with-common like effort of-vow
deservire deo coeperunt protinus ambo.
to-serve God began at-once both.

Quis fuit ecclesiae possessio denique parvae
To-whom was of-the-church the-possession finally small
trans ripas Gandae supra montana locatae,
across the-banks of-the-Gande above the-mountains placed,
unde locum celebrem vocitabant Gandeshemensem.
whence the-place famous they-called of-Gandersheim.
Illic, obsequio domini digne celebrando
There, to-the-service of-the-Lord worthily to-be-celebrated
dum locus investigari posset magis aptus,
while a-place to-be-sought-out could more fit,
communi multas vita iunxere puellas;
to-common many life they-joined girls;
atque sui natam decreverunt Hathumodam
and their daughter they-decided Hathumoda
his habitu similem fieri sociamque perennem,
to-these in-habit like to-become and-companion everlasting,
utque puellaris rectrix fore posset ovilis,
and-that of-the-girlish ruler to-be could sheepfold,
primitus hanc ipsam reverenter ad instituendam
first her herself reverently for being-trained
tradebant abbatissae cuidam venerandae,
they-handed to-an-abbess a-certain venerable,
quae, praelatarum vice succedendo priorum,
who, of-the-prelates in-the-place succeeding former,
tunc Herifordensem sortita fuit sibi sedem.
then of-Herford allotted was for-herself the-seat.
Tali divinum meditati sunt famulatum
With-such the-divine meditated have service
nisu Liudulfus coniunx insignis et eius.
effort Liudolf the-spouse notable and his.

Post haec acceptis proprii scriptis senioris,
After these-things with-received of-own writings of-lord,
scilicet almifici regisque pii Hludowici,
namely of-the-kindly and-king pious Louis,
eius permissu cum non modico comitatu
his by-permission with not moderate retinue
Romam pergebant sanctique patris visitabant
to-Rome they-proceeded and-of-the-holy father visited
sedem muneribus dignis precibusque benignis,
the-see with-gifts worthy and-prayers kindly,
ipsius auxilio deposcentes sua vota
his by-help asking their vows
iuxta velle dei sese persolvere posse.
according-to the-will of-God themselves to-pay to-be-able.

125–247 · RELICS FROM ROME AND THE LIGHTS IN THE WOOD

Pope Sergius gives them relics of Anastasius and Innocent on their oath to honor them with hymns and lights, and takes the convent under the apostolic see, as Liudolf asked. Swineherds see lights burning in a wood two nights before All Saints, and Liudolf sees them himself; he clears the valley, haunted by fauns, and begins a church. Hathumoda prays for building stone.

Isdem temporibus possedit papa beatus
In-the-same times possessed the-pope blessed
Sergius ecclesiae primatum namque regendae.
Sergius of-the-church the-primacy for to-be-ruled.
Hic ubi perlegit cartas regis sibi missas,
He when he-read-through the-charters of-the-king to-himself sent,
sensit honore ducem summo dignum venientem;
perceived with-honor the-duke highest worthy coming;

et perquirendo causam, qua venerat illo,
and by-searching-out the-cause, for-which he-had-come thither,
affatu miti blandum se praebuit illi.
with-address mild gentle himself he-showed to-him.
Quem ceu pontificem summum merito venerandum
Whom like a-pontiff highest deservedly to-be-venerated
exorans dux Liudulfus cum coniuge pronus,
beseeching duke Liudolf with wife prone,
utitur his verbis tota dulcedine mixtis:
uses these words with-whole sweetness mixed:
'Inclite papa tuis ne sis durus peregrinis,
'Famous pope to-your not be hard pilgrims,
qui de longinquis terrarum venimus oris
who from distant of-lands we-have-come shores
muneribus nostri famulatus te venerari.
with-gifts of-our service you to-venerate.
Nitimur ardentis toto conamine mentis
We-strive of-burning with-whole effort mind
condere coenobium domini sub honore sacrandum;
to-found a-monastery of-the-Lord under honor to-be-consecrated;
unde quidem visum nobis est maxime iustum,
whence indeed it-seemed to-us is most just,
a te consilii solamen quaerere certi
from you of-counsel the-solace to-seek sure
et studium nostri tibi rite precando fateri,
and the-zeal our to-you duly by-praying to-confess,
qui caput ecclesiae toto dominaris in orbe;
who as-head of-the-church whole rule in world;
quo, si forte tibi placeat devotio nostri,
so-that, if perhaps to-you please the-devotion our,

auxilium praebente tua pietate paterna,
help with-granting your piety paternal,
quod votis gerimus, factis bene perficiamus.
what in-vows we-bear, in-deeds well we-may-complete.
Ac tu, consilium cuius merito flagitamus,
And you, the-counsel whose deservedly we-demand,
susceptis donis clementi pectore nostris,
with-received gifts with-merciful breast our,
scilicet et regis compulsus amore perennis,
namely and of-the-king compelled by-the-love everlasting,
praesta sanctorum nobis sacra pignora, quorum
grant of-saints to-us the-holy pledges, of-whom
omnis coenobii constructio possit honori
all of-the-monastery the-building could to-the-honor
apte signari sacris meritisque tueri.
fitly be-marked by-holy and-merits be-protected.
Utque sit absque iugo regum per saecla potentum
And-that it-be without the-yoke of-kings through the-ages mighty
nec terrenorum patiatur vim dominorum,
nor of-earthly suffer the-force lords,
hoc rectoris apostolici solum ditioni
this of-the-ruler apostolic alone to-the-dominion
tradimus ad defendendum pariterque regendum.'
we-hand-over for defending and-equally ruling.'
Haec dux. At summus praesul sic Sergius orsus
These-things the-duke. But the-highest bishop thus Sergius having-begun
inquit: 'Te miti complector pectore, fili,
says: 'You with-mild I-embrace breast, son,
consortemque tuam pariter complector amandam,
and-the-consort your equally I-embrace to-be-loved,

atque piis studiis gaudens congaudeo vestris,
and in-pious zeals rejoicing I-rejoice-with your,
nec vobis credo fas esse negare petita.
nor to-you I-believe lawful to-be to-deny the-things-sought.
Hic duo rectores fuerant aliquando potentes,
Here two rulers had-been once mighty,
praesul Anastasius sedis sanctissimus huius
the-bishop Anastasius of-see most-holy this
et coapostolicus sacer Innocentius eius,
and fellow-apostolic holy Innocent his,
qui post pastorem Petrum Paulumque magistrum
who after the-shepherd Peter and-Paul the-master
ecclesiae meritis celebres fulsere supremis;
of-the-church in-merits famous shone highest;
quorum tam magna servantur corpora cura
whose with-so great are-kept the-bodies care
hactenus a cunctis huius rectoribus urbis,
hitherto by all of-this the-rulers city,
ut nec particulam quisquam subtraxerat umquam,
that nor a-particle anyone had-taken-away ever,
pleno membrorum numero remanente sacrorum.
with-full of-the-limbs number remaining holy.
Sed quia iure piis concedere debeo votis,
But because by-right to-pious to-grant I-ought vows,
amborum vobis donabo pignora gratis,
of-both to-you I-shall-give the-pledges freely,
corporibus sacris abscisa patenter ab ipsis,
from-the-bodies holy cut openly from those-very,
si sacramento confirmatis mihi facto
if by-oath you-confirm to-me made

haec in coenobii venerari iam memorati
these in of-the-monastery to-venerate now recalled
finetenus templo vestri munimine facto,
to-the-end in-the-temple of-you by-defense made,
nocte dieque sacris illic resonantibus hymnis
by-night and-day with-holy there resounding hymns
necnon accenso praeclaro lumine semper;
and-also with-kindled brilliant light always;
hoc et apostolici iuris, sicut et petiistis,
this also of-apostolic right, as also you-have-asked,
coenobium nostri designamus ditioni,
monastery to-our we-assign dominion,
ut terrenorum sit securum dominorum.'
that of-earthly it-be safe lords.'
His dux promissis laetatus corde verendis,
By-these the-duke promises gladdened in-heart venerable,
mandatis se pontificis summi fore sacris
to-the-commands himself of-the-pontiff highest to-be holy
mox responsurum factis, inquit, studiosis,
soon about-to-answer with-deeds, he-says, zealous,
* * *
(lacuna)
Qui foret ecclesia dignus mox aedificanda.
Who would-be for-a-church worthy soon to-be-built.
Ut fert multorum sententia vere scientum,
As reports of-many the-opinion truly knowing,
proxima coenobio fuerat tunc silvula, cincta
nearest to-the-monastery had-been then a-little-wood, girded
collibus umbrosis, quibus et nos cingimur ipsis;
by-hills shady, by-which also we are-girded those-very;

necnon in silva fuerat sita parvula villa,
and-also in the-wood had-been placed a-little estate,
in qua Liudulfi soliti stabulare subulci
in which of-Liudolf wont to-stable the-swineherds
intra saepta viri cuiusdam lassa quieti
within the-fences of-a-man a-certain weary for-rest
corpora nocturnis sua composuere sub horis,
bodies nightly their composed under hours,
dum sibi commissos debebant pascere porcos.
while for-themselves entrusted they-had-to feed pigs.
Hic quondam, cum sanctorum venerabile festum
Here once, when of-the-saints the-venerable feast
esset cunctorum mox post biduum celebrandum,
was of-all soon after two-days to-be-celebrated,
sub noctis claras tenebris ardere lucernas
under of-night bright the-darkness to-burn lamps
in silva multas ipsi videre subulci.
in the-wood many they saw the-swineherds.
His visis, cuncti mirabantur stupefacti,
With-these seen, all wondered astounded,
quid nova splendentis vellet sibi visio lucis,
what the-new of-shining meant for-itself vision light,
miro nocturnas scindens splendore tenebras;
with-wondrous the-nightly cleaving splendor darkness;
hocque domus patri narraverunt tremefacti,
and-this of-the-house to-the-father they-told trembling,
demonstrando locum, quem lux perfuderat, ipsum.
by-showing the-place, which the-light had-flooded, itself.
Qui visu clare cupiens audita probare,
Who by-sight clearly desiring the-heard-things to-test,

extra tecta domus illis habitans sociatus,
outside the-roofs of-the-house with-them dwelling joined,
insomnem coepit noctem servare sequentem,
sleepless began the-night to-keep following,
non claudens oculos somno suadente gravatos,
not closing the-eyes by-sleep urging weighed-down,
donec accensas rursum rutilare lucernas
until kindled again to-glow lamps
aucto vincentes numero videre priores
in-increased surpassing number they-saw the-former
ipso quippe loco, sed prisca, qua prius, hora.
in-the-very indeed place, but at-the-old, at-which before, hour.
Ominis hoc signum felicis namque serenum,
Of-omen this sign of-happy for serene,
ut Phoebus radios spargebat ab aethere primos,
as Phoebus rays scattered from the-ether first,
fit notum, fama cunctis prodente iocunda;
becomes known, with-report to-all betraying pleasant;
nec latuisse ducem dignum potuit Liudulfum,
nor to-have-lain-hidden-from the-duke worthy could Liudolf,
aures sed citius dicto pulsaverat eius.
the-ears but more-quickly than-said it-had-struck his.
Ipseque sacrata festi mox nocte futuri,
And-he on-the-consecrated of-the-feast soon night future,
observans caute, si quicquam postea tale
watching carefully, if anything afterward such
caelitus ostensi monstraret visio signi,
from-heaven of-the-shown would-show the-vision sign,
cum multis silvam pernox conspexerat ipsam.
with many the-wood through-the-night had-watched itself.

Nec mora, cum nebula terras nox texerat atra,
Nor delay, when with-cloud the-lands night had-covered black,
undique silvestris per gyrum denique vallis,
on-all-sides of-the-woodland through the-circle finally valley,
in qua fundandum fuerat praenobile templum,
in which to-be-founded had-been the-very-noble temple,
ordine disposito cernuntur lumina plura;
in-order arranged are-seen lights many;
quae simul arboreas umbras noctisque tenebras
which together the-tree-like shadows and-of-night darkness
clare pollentis scindebant luce nitoris.
clearly of-strong cleaved with-the-light brightness.
Hinc simul astantes, domino laudem referentes,
Hence together the-bystanders, to-the-Lord praise returning,
omnes esse locum firmabant sanctificandum
all to-be the-place affirmed to-be-sanctified
eius ad obsequium, qui luce repleverat illum.
for his service, who with-light had-filled it.
At dux, caelesti non ingratus pietati,
But the-duke, to-heavenly not ungrateful piety,
consensuque suae dilectae coniugis Odae,
and-with-the-consent of-his beloved wife Oda,
arboribus mox succisis spinisque resectis
with-trees soon cut and-thorns cut-back
omnino vallem mundari iussit eandem;
wholly the-valley to-be-cleansed ordered the-same;
silvestremque locum, Faunis monstrisque repletum,
and-the-woodland place, with-Fauns and-monsters filled,
fecit mundatum divinis laudibus aptum.
made cleansed for-divine praises fit.

Hinc, quos poscit opus, prius acquirens sibi sumptus,
Hence, which demands the-work, first acquiring for-himself the-expenses,
protinus ecclesiae construxit moenia pulchrae
straightway of-the-church he-built the-walls beautiful
* * *
(lacuna)
* * *
(lacuna)
Quae splendor lucis designavit rutilantis.
Which the-splendor of-light marked glowing.
Hac igitur causa fuerat iam coepta secundo
By-this therefore cause had-been already begun with-favorable-omen
coenobii sub honore dei constructio nostri.
of-the-monastery under the-honor of-God the-building our.
Interea lapides structurae convenientes
Meanwhile stones for-the-structure suitable
non potuere locis nancisci prorsus in illis;
not could in-places be-found wholly in those;
unde moram templi patitur perfectio coepti.
whence delay of-the-temple suffers the-completion begun.
Abbatissa sed a domino sperans Hathumoda
The-abbess but from the-Lord hoping Hathumoda
impetrare fide credentes omnia posse,
to-obtain by-faith the-believing all-things to-be-able,
frangebat sese nimio persaepe labore,
broke herself with-excessive very-often labor,
nocte dieque deo sacris studiis famulando;
by-night and-day to-God in-holy zeals serving;
et, subiectarum multis illi sociatis,
and, of-the-subject with-many to-her joined,

caelitus auxilii petiit solamina ferri,
from-heaven of-help sought the-solaces to-be-brought,
ne non perfectum remaneret opus bene coeptum.
lest not completed should-remain the-work well begun.

248–374 · THE DOVE AND THE STONE

A voice bids Hathumoda follow a dove, which strikes the earth where great stones lie hidden. Liudolf dies before the church is finished. His daughter Liutgard marries King Louis and enriches the house. Hathumoda dies and leaves the flock to Gerberga, who, betrothed to Bernrad, has secretly taken the veil; he swears to wed her on his return and falls in battle. Duke Bruno dies fighting the Hungarians, and Otto completes the convent.

Nec mora, caelestem, quam quaerebat, pietatem
Nor delay, the-heavenly, which she-sought, piety
sensit adesse sui votis promptam misereri.
she-perceived to-be-present to-her vows ready to-have-pity.
Nam, ieiunando sacris precibusque vacando
For, by-fasting to-holy and-prayers being-free
cum prostrata die quadam iacuit secus aram,
when prostrate on-day a-certain she-lay beside the-altar,
vocis mansuetae ⟨monitis compellitur ire⟩
of-a-voice gentle ⟨by-the-warnings she-is-compelled to-go⟩
atque sequi volucrem, quem iam progressa sedentem
and to-follow a-bird, which now having-gone-forth sitting
cerneret in saxi cuiusdam vertice magni.
she-might-see on of-a-rock certain the-top great.
Ipsaque, complectens animo praecepta parato,
And-she, embracing with-mind the-precepts ready,

egreditur, dictis credens ex corde iubentis;
goes-out, the-words trusting from heart of-the-one-ordering;
ac, cementariis secum sumptis bene gnaris,
and, with-masons with-her taken well skilled,
perrexit citius, quo duxit spiritus almus,
proceeded more-quickly, where led the-spirit kindly,
donec ad coeptum pervenit nobile templum.
until to the-begun she-came noble temple.
Illic candidulam vidit residere columbam
There a-little-white she-saw to-sit dove
in designati praecelso vertice saxi.
on of-the-marked very-high the-top rock.
Quae mox expansis volitans praecesserat alis,
Which soon with-spread flying had-gone-before wings,
temperat atque suum non sueto more volatum,
tempers and its not in-wonted manner flight,
posset ut aereos directo tramite sulcos
could that the-airy by-direct path furrows
cum sociis gradiendo sequi virguncula Christi.
with companions by-walking follow the-little-virgin of-Christ.
Cumque columba locum volitans venisset ad illum,
And-when the-dove the-place flying had-come to that,
quem nunc non sterilem magnis scimus fore petris,
which now not barren of-great we-know to-be stones,
descendens terram rostro percusserat illam,
descending the-earth with-the-beak had-struck that,
sub cuius lapides latuerunt aggere plures.
under whose stones lay-hidden mound very-many.
Quo certe viso Christi dignissima virgo
With-which surely seen of-Christ most-worthy the-virgin

emundare locum socios praeceperat ipsum
to-cleanse the-place the-companions had-ordered itself
tellurisque gravem fodiendo scindere molem.
and-of-the-earth heavy by-digging to-cleave the-mass.
Quo facto, praestante pia bonitate superna,
With-which done, with-granting pious the-goodness heavenly,
copia magnarum monstratur multa petrarum,
abundance of-great is-shown much stones,
unde monasterii cum templo moenia coepti
whence of-the-monastery with the-temple the-walls begun
omnia materiam possent traxisse petrinam.
all material could to-have-drawn stony.
Hinc magis atque magis toto conamine mentis
Hence more and more with-whole effort of-mind
factores templi domini sub honore sacrandi
the-makers of-the-temple of-the-Lord under honor to-be-consecrated
instabant operi mox nocte dieque recenti.
pressed on-the-work soon by-night and-day fresh.
Sed dux Liudulfus, primus qui conditor eius
But duke Liudolf, first who founder its
extitit et cura cuius processit origo
stood-out and by-the-care of-whom proceeded the-origin
omnis structurae, precibus poscentibus Odae,
of-all structure, with-prayers demanding of-Oda,
(pro dolor) ad summum non duxit opus studiosum,
(alas grief) to the-top not led the-work zealous,
sed, naturalis saeva tactus nece mortis,
but, of-natural savage touched by-the-slaughter of-death,
cogitur ante suum factori reddere flatum,
is-compelled before his to-the-maker to-return breath,

quam perfecta domus domini foret inclita prorsus;
than finished the-house of-the-Lord should-be famous wholly;
commisitque suae carae moriendo relictae
and-committed to-his dear by-dying left
atque suis natis, ducibus supra memoratis,
and to-his sons, the-dukes above recalled,
totius instantis pondus curamque laboris,
of-the-whole pressing the-weight and-care of-labor,
exorans votis, ut complerent, studiosis,
beseeching with-vows, that they-should-fulfill, zealous,
omnem coenobii structuram perficiendi.
all of-the-monastery the-structure of-completing.
Cuius in antiquo corpus venerabile templo
Whose in the-old body venerable temple
tunc gremio terrae commendatum fuit apte:
then to-the-lap of-the-earth entrusted was fitly:
ossa sed annorum post decursus aliquorum
the-bones but of-years after the-courses of-some
sunt hinc ecclesia translata locanda novella.
are hence to-the-church transferred to-be-placed new.
Forsan ad hoc illum mundo deus abstulit isto,
Perhaps for this him from-the-world God took-away this,
dum vix aetatis febres tetigit mediocris,
while scarcely of-age the-fevers he-touched middling,
illustris domnae post haec ut plenius Odae
of-illustrious lady after this that more-fully of-Oda
mens, intenta deo, posset tractare superna,
the-mind, intent on-God, could handle heavenly-things,
expers carnalis totius prorsus amoris.
free of-carnal whole wholly love.

Nec tamen auxilii solamen denegat illi,
Nor nevertheless of-help the-solace he-denies to-her,
sed praestabat opem solita pietate recentem,
but offered aid with-wonted piety fresh,
qua suffulta suas posset ditescere nonnas
by-which propped her could enrich nuns
omnibus his rebus, noster quibus indiget usus.
with-all these things, our which needs use.
Ergo sui natam, Liutgard de nomine dictam,
Therefore her daughter, Liutgard by name called,
nutu clementis regis praestante perennis,
with-the-nod of-the-merciful king granting everlasting,
elegit clarus Francorum rex Hludowicus
chose famous of-the-Franks king Louis
regni consortem sibimet sociamque perennem,
of-the-realm as-consort for-himself and-companion everlasting,
filius illius, cuius dono Liudulfus
the-son of-that-one, whose by-gift Liudolf
suscepit primum propriae gentis dominatum.
received first of-own people the-lordship.
Quae, regina quidem nobis ad prosperitatem
Who, queen indeed for-us to prosperity
facta, suae dignum sanctae matri famulatum
made, to-her worthy holy mother service
⟨consensu⟩ regis praebens, proprii senioris,
⟨with-the-consent⟩ of-the-king offering, of-own of-lord,
⟨maxima⟩ coenobio permisit commoda nostro.
⟨greatest⟩ to-the-monastery allowed advantages our.
Interea Christi virgo felix Hathumoda,
Meanwhile of-Christ the-virgin happy Hathumoda,

cum gregis undenos curam bis gesserat annos,
when of-the-flock eleven the-care twice she-had-borne years,
ocius in Christo moriens transivit ad astra;
more-quickly in Christ dying passed to the-stars;
Gerbergae tenerum commisit ovile regendum.
to-Gerberga the-tender she-committed sheepfold to-be-ruled.
Haec fuit illustri cuidam nimiumque potenti
She was to-an-illustrious certain and-very mighty
desponsata viro, Bernrad de nomine dicto:
betrothed man, Bernrad by name called:
sed sese Christo clam consecraverat ipsa
but herself to-Christ secretly had-consecrated she
caelesti fera sponso velamine sacro,
to-the-heavenly bearing bridegroom the-veil holy,
omnino sponsum spernens animo moriturum.
wholly the-bridegroom spurning in-mind about-to-die.
Nec tamen extimplo, pro seditione cavenda,
Nor nevertheless at-once, for sedition to-be-avoided,
auro fulgentes potuit deponere vestes,
with-gold shining could-she lay-down the-clothes,
induitur solito sed vestitu pretioso.
she-is-clad in-wonted but dress precious.
Interea venit, quem sponsa dei reprobavit,
Meanwhile came, whom the-bride of-God rejected,
uti colloquiis eius quaerens manifestis;
to-use colloquies her seeking manifest;
audivit vero, votum quia fecerit ipsa
he-heard however, a-vow that had-made she
velle puellarem caste servare pudorem.
to-wish girlish chastely to-keep modesty.

Quae cum tardaret cito nec procedere vellet,
Who when she-delayed quickly nor to-come-forth wished,
quod prius audierat, verum fore valde timebat;
what before he-had-heard, true to-be very he-feared;
inpatiensque morae domnam precibus placat Odam,
and-impatient of-delay the-lady with-prayers he-appeases Oda,
donec ipsa suam iussit procedere natam,
until she her ordered to-come-forth daughter,
ornatam pulchre cultu vestis pretiosae
adorned beautifully with-the-attire of-garment precious
necnon gemmatis sponsarum more metallis.
and-also with-jeweled of-brides in-the-manner metals.
Ast ubi Bernradus vidit, quam desideravit,
But when Bernrad saw, whom he-desired,
his verbis caram causari fertur amicam:
with-these words the-dear to-complain-of is-said friend:
'Non raro didici, fama prodente sinistra,
'Not rarely I-have-learned, with-report betraying sinister,
quod tu nitaris nostrum disrumpere pactum
that you strive our to-break pact
et fidei foedus servandum solvere prorsus.
and of-faith the-treaty to-be-kept to-dissolve wholly.
At nunc ad bellum citius properare futurum
But now to war more-quickly to-hasten future
praecepto regis cogor, nostri senioris;
by-the-command of-the-king I-am-compelled, of-our of-lord;
hinc tempus quidni non est hoc discutiendi.
hence the-time indeed not is of-this of-discussing.
Si redeam certe sospes, comitante salute,
If I-return surely safe, with-accompanying safety,

scito procul dubio, quod te mihimet sociabo
know far-from doubt, that you to-myself I-shall-join
atque tui votum penitus pessumdabo vanum.'
and of-you the-vow wholly I-shall-ruin vain.'
Dixerat, et dextra, permotus mente, levata
He-had-said, and with-right-hand, moved in-mind, raised
iurat per gladium per candidulum quoque collum,
he-swears by the-sword by the-white also neck,
iuxta posse sui factis praedicta repleri.
according-to the-power of-himself with-deeds the-foretold-things to-be-fulfilled.
Respondens ergo Gerberg ait ore modesto:
Answering therefore Gerberga says with-mouth modest:
'Christo me totam committo meam quoque vitam,
'To-Christ myself wholly I-commit my also life,
utque fiat de me iuxta domini rogo velle.'
and-that it-be-done about me according-to of-the-Lord I-ask the-will.'
His ita colloquiis mutuo sermone peractis,
With-these thus colloquies with-mutual speech completed,
Bernrad mox abiit casuque suo cito sensit
Bernrad soon went-away and-by-fall his quickly felt
nil contra dominum quemcumque valere superbum,
nothing against the-Lord any to-avail proud,
et, quia plus iusto deliquit inania fando,
and, because more than-just he-offended empty-things by-speaking,
decidit in bello, victus virtute superna;
fell in war, conquered by-the-power heavenly;
ac Christi virgo sponsi caelestis amori
and of-Christ the-virgin of-the-bridegroom heavenly to-the-love
se mox coniunxit, quem caste semper amavit.
herself soon joined, whom chastely always she-loved.

Cuius primatus sexto, ni fallor, in anno
Of-whose primacy sixth, unless I-am-mistaken, in year
Brun dux, ecclesiam promptus defendere sanctam
Bruno the-duke, the-church ready to-defend holy
incursu de saevorum satis Ungariorum,
by-the-incursion from savage enough Hungarians,
(pro dolor) ex ipsis domini pravis inimicis
(alas grief) by those-very of-the-Lord wicked enemies
occiditur binis cum praesulibus venerandis
is-killed two with bishops venerable
omnibus atque viris propriae pariter legionis.
with-all and men of-own equally legion.
Quo mox occiso, iunior frater suus Oddo,
With-whom soon killed, younger brother his Otto,
dux factus populi dono regis Hludowici,
duke made of-the-people by-the-gift of-king Louis,
respondit factis sanctae voto genitricis,
answered with-deeds of-holy to-the-vow mother,
ac studio simili concordans nititur illi
and with-zeal like agreeing strives with-her
cultibus ecclesiam dignis ornare novellam,
with-worships the-church worthy to-adorn new,
quae post haec anno fuerat sacranda secundo,
which after this in-the-year had-been to-be-consecrated second,
moenia coenobii perfecit ⟨et⟩ omnia nostri,
the-walls of-the-monastery completed ⟨and⟩ all our,
commoda mansuris illic per saecla puellis.
advantages for-remaining there through the-ages girls.

Bishop Wigbert dedicates the church on All Saints' Day, 881. Oda watches over the nuns' life and urges her descendants to enrich them. King Louis and King Arnulf grant estates. Louis, Liutgard, and Gerberga die, and Christina, Oda's daughter, becomes abbess.

His bene perfectis iuxta praecepta parentis,
With-these well completed according-to the-precepts of-the-parent,
eligitur, domna poscente videlicet Oda,
is-chosen, with-the-lady demanding namely Oda,
ipsa dies templo condigne sanctificando,
the-very day for-the-temple fittingly to-be-sanctified,
in cuius noctis medio quam pluribus illo
in whose of-the-night in-the-middle very very-many there
tertio conspicuae quondam fulsere lucernae,
the-third-time conspicuous once shone lamps,
et quod cunctorum pariter venerabile festum
and because of-all equally the-venerable feast
sanctorum vasti fuerat per climata mundi
of-saints of-the-vast had-been through the-regions world
principio mensis celebrandum rite novembris.
at-the-beginning of-the-month to-be-celebrated duly November.
Hac fama templi passim resonante sacrandi,
With-this report of-the-temple everywhere resounding to-be-consecrated,
undique permultae mox confluxere catervae,
from-everywhere very-many soon flowed-together throngs,
optantes diei praesentes esse celebri.
wishing at-the-day present to-be famous.
Scilicet aurorae primo candore micante,
Namely of-dawn at-the-first whiteness glittering,

omnis nostrarum collectim turba sororum,
all of-our gathered the-crowd sisters,
susceptis patronorum gratulando piorum
with-received of-the-patrons by-rejoicing pious
corporibus sacris, pergit resonantibus hymnis
bodies holy, proceeds with-resounding hymns
ad loca coenobii summo conamine structi.
to the-places of-the-monastery with-highest effort built.
Tunc tandem, cunctis ad cultum rite paratis
Then at-last, with-all for the-worship duly prepared
festi, Wicberhtus praesul domini benedictus
of-the-feast, Wigbert the-bishop of-the-Lord blessed
dedicat hoc templum domini sub honore decorum
dedicates this temple of-the-Lord under honor comely
omnibus ad laudem sanctis per saecla perennem,
to-all for praise saints through the-ages everlasting,
quorum tunc festum digne fuerat celebrandum.
whose then the-feast worthily had-been to-be-celebrated.
Hoc nam facta fuit clari sacratio templi
This for made was of-the-famous the-consecration temple
centum mansurnis octo vicibus revolutis
hundred with-years eight times turned-around
octonis denis, uno pariter superaucto,
eight ten, with-one equally added-over,
postquam virgo puellaris sine sorde pudoris
after a-virgin girlish without stain of-modesty
saeclorum regem peperit propriumque parentem.
of-the-ages the-king bore and-own parent.
Tunc coepere locis primum silvestribus illis
Then began in-places first woodland those

carmina divinae laudis clare resonare.
songs of-divine praise clearly to-resound.
Exin et illius nostri collectio coetus
Thenceforth also of-that our the-gathering company
illic permansit domino iugiter famulando.
there remained to-the-Lord continually serving.
Et, licet abbatissa gregem Gerberga recentem
And, though the-abbess the-flock Gerberga recent
caute servaret crebris monitisque doceret
carefully kept and-with-frequent warnings taught
conservare, suae fuerant quae congrua vitae,
to-keep, to-their had-been which fitting life,
contra propositum nec quid patrare profanum,
against the-purpose nor anything to-do profane,
domna tamen conversando venerabilis Oda
the-lady nevertheless by-living-with venerable Oda
intra claustra monasterii cura vigilanti
within the-cloisters of-the-monastery with-care watchful
scrutatur coniunctarum persaepe sororum
searches of-the-joined very-often sisters
actus et studium, mores, vitae quoque cursum,
the-acts and zeal, manners, of-life also the-course,
ne vel contempta maiorum lege sequenda
lest either with-scorned of-the-elders the-law to-be-followed
vivere lege sua reprobe praesumeret ulla,
to-live by-law her-own wickedly should-presume any,
vel locus illiciti foret ullius peragendi,
or a-place of-unlawful should-be of-anything to-be-done,
exemploque suo praemonstravit facienda.
and-by-example her-own she-showed-beforehand the-things-to-be-done.

Et, ceu prudentis dulcis dilectio matris
And, like of-prudent the-sweet love mother
nunc terrore suas prohibet delinquere natas,
now by-terror her forbids to-offend daughters,
nunc etiam monitis bona velle suadet amicis,
now also with-warnings good-things to-wish urges friendly,
sic haec sancta suas caras instruxit alumnas,
so this holy-woman her dear instructed nurslings,
nunc dominatricis mandando iure potentis,
now of-a-mistress by-commanding with-right mighty,
nunc etiam matris mulcendo more suavis,
now also of-a-mother by-soothing in-the-manner sweet,
quo vita simili cunctae communiter uni
so-that with-life like all in-common one
servirent regi, iubilant cui sidera caeli.
should-serve king, rejoice to-whom the-stars of-heaven.
Praeterea, quas maternae pietatis amore
Besides, those-whom of-maternal piety with-love
nutrivit, vere magno veneratur honore,
she-nourished, truly with-great she-venerates honor,
has ipsas vocitando suas saepissime domnas.
them these by-calling her very-often ladies.
Nam quoties neptes eius proceresque nepotes,
For as-often-as the-granddaughters her and-noble grandsons,
quos praepollentis decus extollebat honoris,
whom of-very-mighty the-glory raised honor,
eius ad implendum convenerunt famulatum,
her to fulfill gathered the-service,
certantes donis illam donare coruscis
vying with-gifts her to-present glittering

regis ut illustrem socrum propriamque parentem,
of-the-king as the-illustrious mother-in-law and-own parent,
illos mox verbis affari dicitur istis:
them soon with-words to-address is-said these:
'Exhortans moneo vos, o mea pignora cara,
'Exhorting I-warn you, O my pledges dear,
ut maturetis condignis primule vestris
that you-hasten worthy first your
muneribus nostras large ditescere domnas,
with-gifts our generously to-enrich ladies,
hic servire piis debent quae sedulo nostris
here to-serve pious ought who diligently our
patronis, quorum meritis, precibus quoque sacris
patrons, whose by-merits, by-prayers also holy
successus nobis optatae prosperitatis
the-success to-us of-wished-for prosperity
necnon regalis decus accedebat honoris.'
and-also royal the-glory came of-honor.'
Hac ratione suam stirpem persuaserat omnem
By-this reason her stock she-had-persuaded all
erga coenobii cultum pie sollicitari;
toward of-the-monastery the-worship piously to-be-solicitous;
et loca, quae generi dono regis Hludowici
and the-places, which of-the-son-in-law by-the-gift of-king Louis
possessura quidem proprium suscepit in usum,
about-to-possess indeed own she-received for use,
permittente sua pariter pietate benigna,
with-permitting her equally piety kindly,
ecclesiae tradi faciebat Gandeshemensi.
to-the-church to-be-handed she-made of-Gandersheim.

Nec rex ipse locum sublimavit minus illum,
Nor the-king himself the-place raised less that,
Liudgardis pie reginae bonitate precante;
of-Liutgard piously of-the-queen goodness praying;
sed tradens illi largitur praedia multa
but handing to-it he-bestows estates many
in ius Gerbergae, nostrae rectricis amandae,
into the-right of-Gerberga, our ruler to-be-loved,
ipsius illustris reginae namque sororis.
of-the-very illustrious queen for sister.
Quae rex Arnulfus, successor scilicet huius,
Which king Arnulf, the-successor namely of-this-one,
post haec per scriptum regali iure statutum
after this through writing by-royal right established
firmat, vinetis eius dono superauctis.
confirms, with-vineyards his by-gift added-over.
Ac sic coenobio succedunt prospere plura,
And thus to-the-monastery succeed prosperously more-things,
summorum meritis intercedentibus almis
of-the-highest with-the-merits interceding kindly
pontificum, quorum constat sub honore dicatum.
pontiffs, whose it-is-agreed under honor dedicated.
Sed ne plus iusto fragiles extollere mentes
But lest more than-just the-frail to-lift minds
suaderet talis successus prosperitatis,
should-urge such success of-prosperity,
utque probaretur felix nostri dominatrix,
and-that might-be-proved happy our mistress,
vere iudicii salubris censura superni
truly of-judgment wholesome the-censure heavenly

perplures horum mundo subtraxerat isto,
very-many of-these from-the-world had-withdrawn this,
quorum coenobium fuerat solamine fultum.
whose the-monastery had-been by-solace propped.
Ergo rege pio iam defuncto Hludowico,
Therefore with-king pious now dead Louis,
qui regum primus nostros tradebat in usus
who of-kings first our handed into uses
regali prius obsequio loca debita multa,
by-royal before service places owed many,
necnon cyrographis eius sub nomine scriptis
and-also with-charters his under name written
iura monasterii firmaverat omnia nostri,
the-rights of-the-monastery had-confirmed all our,
eius post annos discessus denique paucos
of-his after years departure finally few
Liudgardis regina, sui dignissima regni
Liutgard the-queen, of-his most-worthy realm
consors, tantorum quae nobis causa bonorum
consort, of-so-great who to-us the-cause of-goods
extitit, e mundo discessit (pro dolor) isto
stood-out, from the-world departed (alas grief) this
non sine nostrarum magno rerum detrimento.
not without of-our great things loss.
Cui nam consimilis successit causa doloris,
To-which for a-very-like succeeded cause of-grief,
abbatissa bonis Gerberg quia dedita curis,
the-abbess to-good Gerberga because devoted cares,
quae praedictorum suffulta iuvamine regum
who of-the-aforesaid propped by-the-help kings

necnon reginae germano foedere iunctae
and-also of-the-queen by-sisterly treaty joined
coenobium donis ornavit saepe coruscis
the-monastery with-gifts adorned often glittering
usibus et quaestum nostris superaddidit amplum,
to-uses and income our added ample,
postquam bis denos binos quoque praefuit annos,
after twice ten two also she-presided years,
officio vice rectricis perfuncta prioris,
the-office in-place of-the-ruler having-performed former,
deposito fragilis mortali pondere carnis
with-laid-down of-frail mortal weight flesh
factori flatum reddebat ab aethre receptum;
to-the-maker the-breath returned from the-ether received;
orbatumque sui dimisit ovile sorori
and-bereaved her she-left the-sheepfold to-the-sister
Christinae procurandum sancteque tuendum.
to-Christina to-be-managed and-holily to-be-protected.
Quae, praefatarum mores sectando sororum
Who, of-the-aforesaid the-manners by-following sisters
atque sui vitam bene praemeditando gerendam,
and her life well by-premeditating to-be-led,
illis fit similis magnae fama probitatis,
to-them becomes like of-great in-fame uprightness,
quis fuit aequalis provectu nobilitatis.
to-whom she-was equal in-advancement of-nobility.
Mater et illius, stabilem corrumpere cuius
The-mother also of-her, the-stable to-corrupt whose
mentem nullarum potuit mutatio rerum,
mind of-no could the-change things,

quominus obsequio domini fieret studiosa,
that-less to-the-service of-the-Lord she-should-become zealous,
provocat exemplis illam, monitis quoque crebris,
provokes by-examples her, by-warnings also frequent,
ut, sese semper circumspiciens sapienter,
that, herself always looking-around wisely,
commissum caute sibimet servaret ovile
the-entrusted carefully to-herself she-should-keep sheepfold
necnon factorum iuxta meritum variorum
and-also of-deeds according-to the-merit various
nunc pie subiectas monitis mulceret amicis,
now piously the-subject with-warnings she-should-soothe friendly,
nunc etiam verbis iuste terreret acerbis,
now also with-words justly should-terrify bitter,
ne quem divini ritum cultus violari
lest any of-divine the-rite worship to-be-violated
torpens affectus cordis permitteret eius.
sluggish affection of-heart should-allow her.

Duke Otto protects the convent and dies, mourned three days by the nuns. His grandson Otto is born. Oda dies at a hundred and seven, Christina six years after, and the poem breaks off in a prayer.

Ipsaque domna sui studio laudabilis Oda,
And-she the-lady of-her zeal praiseworthy Oda,
quae, claris splendens radiis mirae bonitatis,
who, with-bright shining rays of-wondrous goodness,
sat dilecta deo fuerat, celebris quoque mundo,
enough beloved to-God had-been, famous also to-the-world,
semper maternae solito pietatis amore
always maternal with-wonted of-piety love
eius adoptivis studuit conquirere natis,
for-her adoptive strove to-acquire daughters,
quicquid nonnarum deposcere sciverat usum;
whatever of-the-nuns to-demand she-had-known the-use;
Oddonisque ducis clari devotio grandis,
and-of-Otto the-duke famous the-devotion great,
concordando suae votis carae genitricis,
by-agreeing to-his vows dear mother,
auxilio regum, quibus exhibuit famulatum,
by-the-help of-kings, to-whom he-showed service,
ipsum virgineum coetum Christi famularum
the-very virgin company of-Christ of-the-handmaids
fovit clementer necnon provexit amanter.
cherished mercifully and-also advanced lovingly.
Nec propriae vitae compelli quivit amore,
Nor of-own life to-be-compelled could-he by-love,

ut vel eas damno laedendo tangeret ullo,
that either them with-loss by-harming he-should-touch any,
vel minus impleret, quae mater digna iuberet.
or less should-fulfill, what the-mother worthy should-order.
Ac sic concessae sibimet per tempora vitae
And thus of-granted to-himself through the-times life
omni ferventis studuit conamine mentis
with-all of-fervent he-strove effort mind
coenobio patronorum praebere suorum
to-the-monastery of-the-patrons to-offer his
ipsius auxilii semper tutamina certi;
of-his help always the-protections sure;
nec vice terribilis metui petiit senioris,
nor in-the-place of-terrible to-be-feared sought-he lord,
sed bene mansueti genitoris ad instar amari:
but well of-gentle father in the-likeness to-be-loved:
unde loco non inmerito permansit in illo
whence in-the-place not undeservedly remained in that
hactenus insignis laus illius pietatis.
hitherto notable the-praise of-his piety.
Nos quoque permotae tantae dulcedine famae,
We also moved of-so-great by-the-sweetness of-report,
necdum maternis quae tunc prorupimus alvis,
not-yet from-maternal who then we-burst-forth wombs,
sed fuimus vere longo post tempore natae,
but were truly long after time born,
haut minus illius constanter amore flagramus,
not less his constantly with-love we-burn,
quam quae praesentem contemplabantur eundem
than those-who present beheld the-same

atque suae donis ditabantur pietatis.
and of-his with-gifts were-enriched of-piety.
Hic igitur talis praeclarae vir pietatis,
This therefore such of-brilliant man piety,
qui pius urbicolis tribuit bona talia nostris,
who piously to-the-city-dwellers bestowed good-things such our,
morte sui matrem nostri domnamque potentem
by-death his the-mother of-our and-lady mighty
praeveniendo prior, vetiti pro crimine pomi,
by-forestalling prior, of-the-forbidden for the-crime apple,
quod protoplastes degustavere parentes,
which the-first-formed tasted parents,
exuitur membris limoso stamine textis
is-stripped of-limbs of-muddy thread woven
(pro dolor) atque seris clausit sua lumina mortis,
(alas grief) and with-the-bolts closed his eyes of-death,
coetu nostrarum circumvallante sororum
with-the-company of-our surrounding sisters
pernimio domni fletu lectum morituri.
with-very-excessive of-the-lord weeping the-bed of-the-about-to-die.
Cuius ad exequias summo nisu celebrandas
Whose for exequies with-highest effort to-be-celebrated
undique nostrates confluxerunt lacrimantes,
from-everywhere ours flowed-together weeping,
atque sui loetum cari senioris amarum
and of-their the-death dear lord bitter
omnes inmodicis pariter flevere lamentis.
all with-immoderate equally wept laments.
Sed luctum procerum vulgi pariterque lamentum
But the-mourning of-the-nobles of-the-commons and-equally the-lament

vicit nonnarum miseranda querela suarum;
conquered of-the-nuns the-pitiable complaint his;
quae, pro defectu mentis solito muliebris
who, for the-weakness of-mind wonted womanly
vivere spernentes citiusque mori cupientes,
to-live spurning and-more-quickly to-die desiring,
in lacrimando modum voluerunt ponere nullum.
in weeping a-measure wished to-set none.
Hinc patris eiusdem cari domnique benigni
Hence of-the-father the-same dear and-of-the-lord kindly
corpus per triduum conservabant inhumatum,
the-body through three-days they-kept unburied,
ceu sese lacrimis sperarent posse refusis
as-if themselves with-tears they-hoped to-be-able poured-out
extincti flatum citius revocare reductum.
of-the-dead-one the-breath more-quickly to-recall brought-back.
Tandem concilium sapiens satis advenientum
At-last the-council wise enough of-those-arriving
decernens, vanae spei debere reniti,
deciding, to-vain hope to-be-bound to-resist,
ocius in tumulo non absque dolore parato,
more-quickly in a-tomb not without grief prepared,
sed luctu nimio circumstantum madefacto,
but with-mourning excessive of-the-bystanders wet,
membra ducis tanti digne servanda locari
the-limbs of-the-duke so-great worthily to-be-kept to-be-placed
fecit in ecclesiae medio, quam struxerat ipse.
made in of-the-church the-middle, which had-built he.
Illic nostrarum studio certante sororum
There of-our with-zeal vying sisters

continuis precibus dilectus spiritus eius
with-continual prayers the-beloved spirit his
semper celsithroni commendatur pietati,
always of-the-high-throned is-commended to-the-piety,
quo det ei requiem clemens sine fine perennem.
that he-may-give to-him rest merciful without end everlasting.
Scilicet ante dies octo totidem quoque noctes,
Namely before days eight as-many also nights,
quam ducis occasus miserabilis accidit huius,
than of-the-duke the-death pitiable happened of-this,
ipsius nato, regi quandoque futuro,
to-his son, king sometime future,
nascitur Henrico famosus filius Oddo,
is-born to-Henry the-famous son Otto,
qui fuit electus regis pietate perennis
who was chosen of-the-king by-the-piety everlasting
primus Saxonum rex post patrem strenuorum,
first of-the-Saxons king after the-father vigorous,
augustus Romanorum pariterque potentum.
august of-the-Romans and-equally mighty.
Mensibus hinc senis cursu volitante peractis,
With-months hence six with-course flying completed,
dum decus hoc tanti clarum generis fuit ortum,
while glory this of-so-great famous race was risen,
in quo laeta procul dubio promissa repleta
in which glad far-from doubt the-promises fulfilled
Christi baptistae creduntur primitus esse,
of-Christ the-baptist are-believed first to-be,
istius exiguae quae mox in vertice Musae
of-this slight which soon at the-top of-the-Muse

Aedae namque suae memini fore dicta parenti,
to-Aeda for her I-remember to-have-been said parent,
Oda nimis felix, nostri spes et dominatrix,
Oda very happy, our hope and mistress,
cum decies denos septem quoque vixerat annos,
when ten-times ten seven also she-had-lived years,
vitam fine bono consummans transit ad astra,
life by-end good completing passes to the-stars,
expectans spe felici tempus redeundi
awaiting with-hope happy the-time of-returning
flatus atque resurgendi de pulvere pleni
of-the-breath and of-rising from the-dust of-the-full
corporis, in tumulo quod nunc sub tegmine duro
body, in a-tomb which now under covering hard
iuxta natarum requiescit busta suarum.
beside of-daughters rests the-tombs her.
Nec Christina, suis quae sola remansit alumnis,
Nor Christina, to-her who alone remained nurslings,
iam tunc instantis grandis dulcedo doloris,
already then of-pressing great sweetness grief,
plus quam bis ternos post matrem vixerat annos,
more than twice three after the-mother had-lived years,
sed reddens animam, factore vocante, beatam,
but returning the-soul, with-the-maker calling, blessed,
iungitur in lucis patria pacisque perennis
is-joined in of-light the-homeland and-of-peace everlasting
eius germanis, quarum pollebat honoris
to-her sisters, of-whose she-was-strong honor
heres et sanctae sectatrix inclita vitae.
heir and of-holy follower famous life.

Quas matri cunctas in caelo consociatas,
Whom to-the-mother all in heaven joined,
alme pater, tecum praesta gaudere per aevum
kindly father, with-you grant to-rejoice through the-age
illius et regni mercede perenniter uti,
of-that and realm with-the-reward everlastingly to-enjoy,
quod retro cuncta tuis servasti saecula caris,
which before all to-your you-have-kept ages dear-ones,
quo, te cum nato necnon cum flamine sacro
where, you with the-son and-also with the-spirit holy
solum rectorem caelestibus imperitantem
alone ruler over-the-heavenly-ones commanding
dulci laetitiae laudantes voce iocundae
with-sweet of-gladness praising voice pleasant
* * *
(lacuna)